GENERAL
ECONOMIC HISTORY
General Economic History

BY

MAX WEBER

Translated by
FRANK H. KNIGHT, PH. D.

THE FREE PRESS
GLENCOE, ILLINOIS
CONTENTS

PART ONE

HOUSEHOLD, CLAN, VILLAGE AND MANOR

CHAPTER I. AGRICULTURAL ORGANIZATION AND THE PROBLEM OF AGRARIAN COMMUNISM . . . . 3

The German agrarian organization, 3.—Settlement relations, 4.—Property relations, 7.—Class relationships in the peasantry, 8.—Spread of the Germanic settlement form, 10.—Westphalia, 11.—Alpine economy, 11.
—The Zadruga, 12.—Vestiges of Roman field divisions, 12.—Origin and dissolution of the Germanic agrarian system, 12.—The Celtic agrarian organization, 15.—The Russian Mir, its effects on economic life and its origin, 17.—The Dutch-East-Indian field system, 21.—Chinese agrarian organization, 22.—Indian agrarian organization, 22.—The German Gehöferschaft, 23.—The theory of primitive agrarian communism, 24.—Primitive agriculture, 24.

CHAPTER II. PROPERTY SYSTEMS AND SOCIAL GROUPS . . 26

(A) Forms of Appropriation . . . . . . . . . 26

(B) The House Community and the Clan . . . . 28

The small-family, 28.—The socialistic theory of the origin of marriage, 28.—Prostitution, 30.—Sexual freedom and its forms, 33.—Other historical stages of sexual life in the socialistic theory, 34.—Legitimate marriage under patriarchal law and its contrasts, 36.

(C) The Evolution of the Family as Conditioned by Economic and non-Economic Factors . . . . 37

Primitive economic life; the theory of the three economic stages, 37.—Division of labor between the sexes and types of communalization, 38.—The men's house, 39.—The struggle between patriarchal and matriarchal law, 41.—Group marriage, 43.—Patriarchal authority of the man, 43.
CONTENTS

(D) The Evolution of the Clan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of clans, 43.</th>
<th>Organized and unorganized clans,</th>
<th>43</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>History of the clan, 44.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Prophecy and the clan,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bureaucracy and the clan, 46.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(E) Evolution of the House Community

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The primitive house community and property relations,</th>
<th>46</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>46. Development into other forms of economic organization,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. The patriarchal house community, 47.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Its dissolution, 48.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monogamy as the exclusive marriage form, 49.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHAPTER III. THE ORIGIN OF SEIGNIORIAL PROPRIETORSHIP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The small-family as point of departure, 51.</th>
<th>Roots of seigniorial proprietorship: Chieftainship, 51.</th>
<th>51</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Conquest of hostile populations, commendation, seigniorial land-settlement and leasing, 52.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Magical charm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Individual trade.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>Fiscal roots of seigniorial proprietorship, various forms, 56.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Individual trade of princes, irrigation culture of the modern orient, 56.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Oikos-economy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Taxation systems of princes, 58.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Methods of exploiting the taxing power, 59.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Delegation of taxation to chieftain or landed proprietor, 60.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Seigniorial proprietorship in colonial regions, 61.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>The occidental, Japanese and Russian feudal systems, 62.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHAPTER IV. THE MANOR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions back of the development of the manor, 65.</th>
<th>Precaria and beneficium, 66.</th>
<th>65</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>The manorial holding (Fronhof), 67.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>political (“sacage”) district (Bannbezirk) and manorial law, 68.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>Freedom and unfreedom of the peasant, 69.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>Exploitation of the peasant by rent exactions, forms of these, 72.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHAPTER V. THE POSITION OF THE PEASANTS IN VARIOUS WESTERN COUNTRIES BEFORE THE ENTRANCE OF CAPITALISM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>France, 74.</th>
<th>Italy, Germany, 75.</th>
<th>74</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>England, 77.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHAPTER VI. CAPITALISTIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE MANOR

(A) The Plantation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of plantations, 79.</th>
<th>Plantations in antiquity, 80.</th>
<th>79</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The southern states of the U. S. A., 82.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(B) Estate Economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of estates, 84.</th>
<th>Stock raising without capital or with little capital, 84.</th>
<th>84</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intensive capitalistic pas-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS

Cereal production in England, 85. — Russia, 86. — Germany, the west, 87. — the east and "hereditary dependency," 89. — Organization of an east-Elbe estate, 90. — Poland and White Russia, 92.

(C) The Dissolution of the Manorial System . . . 92

Causes and Processes of liberation of land and peasants, 92. — Various countries: China, 95; — India, the near east, 96; Japan, 96; — Greece and Rome, 96; — England, 98; — France, 98; — South and west Germany, 99; — East Germany, Austria, 100; — Prussia, 103; — Russia, 106. The present agrarian organization, 108. — Inheritance law, primogeniture, 108; — fidei-commissa and entail, 109. — Political results of the break-up of feudalism, landed aristocracies, 110. — Private property in land, 111.

PART TWO

INDUSTRY AND MINING DOWN TO THE BEGINNING OF THE CAPITALISTIC DEVELOPMENT

CHAPTER VII. PRINCIPAL FORMS OF THE ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF INDUSTRY . . . . 115

Scope of the concept of industry, 115. — Types of raw-material transformation, 115. — Industry in the house community, division of labor between the sexes, 116. — Specialization and communal labor, 117. — Skilled trades, 117. — Relation of the worker to the market, 118 — to the job, 118 — to the place of work, 119 — to the fixed investment, 120.

CHAPTER VIII. STAGES IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTRY AND MINING . . . . . . . . 122

House industry and tribal industry, 122. — Types of inter-group specialization, castes, 123. — Local specialization, demigurical labor, 124. — Specialization in village industry and on the feudal manor (Fronhof), 124. On the estate or oikos, 124. — Transition to production to order and for the market, the worker as labor power or as rent-payer, 126. — Shop industry and ergasterion, 126. — Differences in the labor organization of antiquity and of the middle ages, slavery, 130. — Medieval craftsmen and the town, 133 — and industrial organizations, 134.
CONTENTS

CHAPTER IX. THE CRAFT GUILDS . . . . . . 136
The nature of the guild, 136.—Unfree guilds, 136.—Ritualistic guilds, 137.—Guild policy, internal, 138.—external, 141.—Later products of guild policy, 142.

CHAPTER X. THE ORIGIN OF THE EUROPEAN GUILDS . . . 144
The manorial law theory, 144.—criticized, 145.—Production of skilled craftsmen by the feudal manor, 146.—Free and unfree craftsmen, 147.—Guild, town and town lord, 147.—Livelihood policy of the guilds, 149.—Guild struggles, with rural workers, laborers, merchants, 150.—Guild wars, 151.

CHAPTER XI. DISINTEGRATION OF THE GUILDS AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE DOMESTIC SYSTEM . . . 153
Displacement of the guild, rise of craftsmen to position of merchant and factor, 153.—Subdivision and fusion of guilds, 154.—Relation to importer and exporter, 154.—Domestic industry, its varying development in European countries, 155.—Stages in the development of the domestic or putting-out system, 159.—Domestic industry over the world, 160.

CHAPTER XII. SHOP PRODUCTION. THE FACTORY AND ITS FORE-RUNNERS . . . . . . . . . . 162
Forms of shop production, factory and manufactory, 162.—Prerequisites of the factory, steady, mass demand and efficient technology, 163.—Supply of free labor, 164.—Fore-runners of the factory in the west, communal establishments, 165.—private establishments (early English factories), 167.—New developments through the interaction of specialization and combination of labor and application of non-human power, 169.—The market of the specialized large industry, political demand, luxury demand and substitute luxuries, 169.—Monopoly and state concession as basis of older large-scale industry, 171.—Relation between factory, craft work, domestic industry and machinery, 173.—Results of factory industry for entrepreneur and laborer, 174.—Obstacles to development of shop industry into the modern factory in various countries, 175.

CHAPTER XIII. MINING PRIOR TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF MODERN CAPITALISM . . . . . . 178
Mining the first field industrialized, 178.—Legal problems, 178.—History of mining law and of mining, earliest mining outside the occident, 179.—Greece, 180—
PART THREE

COMMERCETHE AND EXCHANGE IN THE PRE-CAPITALISTIC AGE

CHAPTER XIV. POINTS OF DEPARTURE IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF COMMERCE . . . . . . . . 195

Oldest trade that between ethnic groups, 195.—Peddling, 195.—Trading castes, 195.—The Jews as an outcast commercial class, 196.—Seigniorial trade and its varieties, 196.—Gift trade and trade of princes, 197.

CHAPTER XV. TECHNICAL REQUISITES FOR THE TRANSPORTATION OF GOODS . . . . . . . 199


CHAPTER XVI. FORMS OF ORGANIZATION OF TRANSPORTATION AND OF COMMERCE . . . . 202

(A) The Alien Trader . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 202

Ocean commerce and piracy, 202.—Merchant shipping of princes and private persons in the ancient world, 202.—Roman conditions, 202.—Shipping and mercantile organization in Greece and Rome, 203.—Legal forms of commerce, 204.—Sea loans in antiquity, 204.—Medieval conditions, 205.—Shipping partnerships and sea loans, 205.—Commenda and societas maris, 206.—The turnover of medieval sea trade, 207.—Land commerce, means of transport, 208.—Turnover, duration of voyage and commercial organization, 209.—Inland shipping in the middle ages, 211.—Protection of the merchant, safe conduct, 212.—Legal protection, reprisal, proxenia, hostage, the hanse, 212.—Settlements of merchants, 213.—Market organization, 214.
CONTENTS

(B) The Resident Trader . . . . . . . . 215
Town origin of the resident merchant, 215.—Stages in
the development, 215.—Retail trade dominant in me-
dieval commerce, 216.—Struggles of the resident trader
for monopoly of the town market, 216,—for internal
equality of opportunity, 218, prohibition of forestalling,
right of sharing, 218.—Street and staple compulsion,
219.—Struggles with consumers, 220.—Beginnings of
wholesale trade, 220.

(C) The Trade of the Fairs . . . . . . . . 220
Nature of the fair, 220.—The fairs of Champagne, 220.
—Other fairs, 222.

CHAPTER XVII. FORMS OF COMMERCIAL ENTERPRISE . . 223
Calculability and association of interest, 223.—Position
numerals, accounting and the trading company, 223.
—the commenda as occasional enterprise, 225.—Origi-
ner of permanent organization for commercial enter-
bise, 226.—Credit and the means of guaranteeing it,
house-community and joint liability, 226.—Separation
of the property of the company, 228.—The commandite,
229.—Hanseatic company forms, 229.

CHAPTER XVIII. MERCANTILE GUILDS . . . . . . . 230
Nature of the mercantile guild, 230.—Local guilds of
foreigners in the west, the hannes, 230.—Guilds of resi-
dent traders in China and India, 230,—in the west, 232.
—History of the occidental guilds, 233.—Commercial
policies of guilds, especially the German Hanse, 234.

CHAPTER XIX. MONEY AND MONETARY HISTORY . . 236
Money and private property, 236.—The functions of
money, money as means of payment only, domestic
money, 236.—Money as means of accumulation and
mark of class distinction, 237.—Money as a general me-
dium of exchange, 238.—Varieties of money, 238.—
Valuation of different forms, 239.—The precious metals
as the basis of the monetary system, 241.—Coinage,
241.—Technique of coining, 242.—Metallic standards,
243.—History of gold and silver values, eastern Asia
and the ancient east, 244.—Rome and the middle ages,
244.—Coinage debasement in the middle ages, 247.—
Free coinage, 248.—Increase in overseas production of
the precious metals from the 16th century, 248.—Ob-
stacles to the rationalization of money, 250.—Modern
monetary policies, 251.
CONTENTS

CHAPTER XX. BANKING AND DEALINGS IN MONEY IN THE PRE-CAPITALISTIC AGE . . . . . 254
Character of the oldest banking transactions, 254.—Banking in Rome, 256.—Temple banks and state monopolization of banking in antiquity, 256.—Functions of the medieval bank, 258.—Liquidity, establishment of banking monopolies, 260.—The bill of exchange, 261.—Banking in England, the Bank of England, 263.—Banking outside of Europe, China and India, 265.

CHAPTER XXI. INTERESTS IN THE PRE-CAPITALISTIC PERIOD 267
Absence or prohibition of interest in early society, 267.—Evasion of the prohibition, the chattel loan, 268.—Medieval methods of meeting the need for credit, ecclesiastical prohibition of interest, 269.—The role of the Jews, 270.—of Protestantism, 271.

PART FOUR

THE ORIGIN OF MODERN CAPITALISM

CHAPTER XXII. THE MEANING AND PRESUPPOSITIONS OF MODERN CAPITALISM . . . . . 275
Capitalism a method of provision for want satisfaction, 275.—Capitalistic supply of everyday requirements peculiar to the occident, 276.—General requisites for the existence of capitalism, 276.—Calculable law, 277.

CHAPTER XXIII. THE EXTERNAL FACTS IN THE EVOLUTION OF CAPITALISM . . . . . 279
Commercialization, 279.—The stock company, war-loans, 279.—Financing of commercial undertakings, the regulated company, 280.—The great colonial companies, 281.—Financing by the state, administration without a budget, tax farming, 282.—The exchequer, the special-levy system, 283.—Monopolies, 284.

CHAPTER XXIV. THE FIRST GREAT SPECULATIVE CRISSES . 286
Speculation and Crises, 286.—The tulip craze, 286.—John Law, 286.—England, the South Sea Company, 288. Later speculative crises, 290.—Capital creation, the age of iron, 290.
CHAPTER XXV. FREE WHOLESALE TRADE . . . . 292
Separation of wholesale from retail trade in the 18th century, forms of wholesale organization, 292.—The fair and the exchange, 293.—News service and the wholesale trade, 294.—Commercial organization and transportation, 296.

CHAPTER XXVI. COLONIAL POLICY FROM THE SIXTEENTH TO THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY . . . 298
Accumulation of wealth through colonial exploitation, 298.—Slavery and the slave trade, 299.—Colonial trade and capitalism, 300.—The end of capitalistic exploitation of colonies with abolition of slavery, 300.

CHAPTER XXVII. THE DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTRIAL TECHNIQUE . . . . . . . . . . . 302
Factory, machine and apparatus, 302.—The earliest true factory in England, 302.—Cotton manufacture crucial in the rationalization and mechanization of work, 303.—Primary role of coal and iron, 304.—Results, liberation of production from the limitations of organic materials and of labor, and from tradition, 305.—The recruiting of the labor force, 306.—The market of the factory, the military demand, 307.—The luxury demand, 309.—Mass demand, 310.—The price revolution of the 16th and 17th centuries, 311.—Inventions, 311.—Characteristics and causes of western capitalism, 312.—Historical conditions of its development, 313.

CHAPTER XXVIII. CITIZENSHIP . . . . . . . . . . . 315
Citizenship as an economic, political, and social-class concept, 315.—Contributions of the city in various fields of culture, 316.—Various meanings of the term city, 317.—City as a unitary community peculiar to the occident, reasons for this, 318.—Origin in oath of brotherhood, 319.—Rise of cities in the east prevented by peculiarities of military organization, 320.—Irrigation culture and administrative organization, 321.—Obstacles in ideas of magic, 322.—Similarities between cities of antiquity and of the middle ages, 323.—Between classical and medieval democracy, 324.—Contrasts between classical and medieval democracy, absence of the guild and guild policy in the former, 326.—Antiquity characterized instead by conflict between landowners and landless, 328.—and by increasing sharpness of class distinctions with growth of democracy, 329.—The ancient city as a political guild with military acquisitive interests, and chronic war as its
normal condition, 331.—Contrasts in urban development between south and north in medieval Europe, 332.—The city and capitalism, irrational capitalism, 334.—Rational capitalism a product of the occident since the close of the middle ages, 334.—In antiquity the cities lose their freedom to the bureaucratically organized state and world-empire, which throttled capitalism with compulsory contributions and services, 336.—In modern times they lose it to competing national states which are forced into alliance with capitalism, 336.

CHAPTER XXIX. THE RATIONAL STATE . . . . . . . 338

(A) The State Itself; Law and Officialdom . . . . 338
The rational state peculiar to the occident, 338.—Administration by specialists and rational law, 339.—Roman law, rationalization of procedure through interaction with canon law, 340.—Revival of Roman law and capitalism, 341.—Historical descent of characteristic institutions of capitalism, 342.—Formalistic law and capitalism, 342.

(B) The Economic Policy of the Rational State . . . 343
Fiscal interests and public welfare the two types of state economic policy before the development of mercantilism, 343.—Obstruction of deliberate economic policy in the east by ritualism, caste, and clan, 344.—The occident, beginnings of economic policy on the part of rulers under the Carolingians, 345.—Economic policy of the Church, especially of the monasteries, 345.—The Emperor and the territorial princes, 346.—England, 347.

(C) Mercantilism . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 347

CHAPTER XXX. THE EVOLUTION OF THE CAPITALISTIC SPIRIT . . . . . . . . 352
Neither population growth nor importation of precious metals crucial in creating western capitalism, 352.—External conditions of its development, 354.—Rationalistic economic ethic decisive, 354.—History of economic ethics; at the beginning, traditionalism, stereotyping
CONTENTS

of conduct, 354.—Intensification of traditionalism by material interests and by magic, 355.—Traditionalism not overcome by the economic impulse alone, 355.—Breakdown of opposition of internal and external ethics, 356.—Capitalism necessarily arises in a region with an ethical theory hostile to it, 357.—Economic ethics of the Church, 357.—The Jews had no part in the creation of modern capitalism, 358.—Judaism gave Christianity its hostility to magic, 360.—Overthrow of magic by rational prophecy, 362.—Prophecy absent in China, in India created a religious aristocracy, 362.—Judaism and Christianity plebeian religions, 363.—Significance of asceticism for rationalization of life, Tibet, medieval monasticism, 364.—Diffusion of the old religious asceticism over the worldly life by the Reformation, 365.—The Protestant conception of the calling, and capitalism, 367.—Protestant-ascetic economic ethics stripped of its religious import by the Enlightenment; social consequences, 368.

NOTES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 371

INDEX OF NAMES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 383

SUBJECT INDEX . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 385
TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE

Max Weber is probably the most outstanding name in German social thought since Schmoller, and a recent survey finds him the most quoted sociologist in Germany. (See American Journal of Sociology, November, 1926, p. 464.) At a time when the main emphasis in English, and particularly American, economic thought has shifted from general deductive theory to the other two corners of the methodological triangle, namely, psychological and historical interpretation on the one hand and statistical study on the other, there is abundant reason for making available to English readers this last product of Weber's thought, his economic history. Though Weber was not, as the German editors of the work observe, a specialist in this field, the preparation of a course of lectures on general economic history offered an exceptional opportunity for bringing together and presenting in moderate compass the leading ideas interpretive of economic life and change for which he was already famous in other lands as well as his own.

In preparing this English version, intended for students of the social sciences and the general reader, anything of the nature of re-editing the text has been expressly avoided, but a few departures from the German edition have seemed advisable. The highly technical introduction on "Definitions of Concepts" (Begriffliche Vorbemerkung) prepared by the German editors has been omitted. In several places, especially in the first chapter, matter has been transferred from foot-notes to the body of the text. Other foot-notes have been omitted or condensed,
and the extensive bibliographic references, consisting largely of German books and articles, have been reduced to titles in English, references to Max Weber’s other writings, and a few general works in German and French; all retained notes are grouped at the end of the volume.

It is perhaps fair to remark to the critical reader that the translation of a work surveying so large a field of knowledge with so much learning and yet so briefly, has presented problems. In places, notably in the sections dealing with medieval institutions, historical exactness would in any case be impossible without vastly greater length of treatment, and the shade and scope of meaning of many expressions in the original is not clear. Moreover, many of the facts dealt with have no close parallel in English history and many terms have no close equivalent in English usage. Especially since the significance of the book lies in its interpretive brilliancy rather than accuracy of detail, it was clearly preferable to use broad terms giving the general sense and not to enter upon explanations or comparisons which would grow to undue length. On several points of usage, my former teacher in the field of economic history, Professor A. P. Usher, has kindly answered questions and given valuable advice and suggestions.—Finally, it may be a hint useful to some readers to say that both the intrinsic interest of the material and the significance of what the author has to say increase progressively through the book, to the very last chapter, which summarizes Weber’s famous discussion of the relation of religion to the cultural history of capitalism.

F. H. K.
FROM THE PREFACE BY THE GERMAN EDITORS

Max Weber delivered the lectures which are here given to the public, under the title "Outlines of Universal Social and Economic History," in the winter semester of 1919-20. In doing so, he yielded unwillingly to the pressing solicitation of the students, for his interest was entirely centered on the great sociological labors which he had taken up. But after he had given his consent he threw himself into them with that unreserved devotion of his whole power and personality which was characteristic of him. It was the last class which he was allowed to complete; in the middle of his next course, on politics and the general theory of the state, which he began in the summer semester of 1920, he was removed by death.

Even if Weber had lived longer he would not have given his Economic History to the public, at least not in the form in which we have it here. Utterances of his prove that he regarded the work as an improvisation with a thousand defects, which had been forced upon him, and, like every great scholar, he was his own most exacting critic. The question thus put up to Frau Weber and the editors selected by her, as to whether publication was at all permissible, has been answered by them, after much hesitation, in the affirmative. They are convinced that science has a claim to this work of Max Weber. The significance of the work lies, not in the detailed content—Max Weber was not a specialist, and specialists will find enough in the book to take exception to—but in the penetration of the conception according to which a scheme of analysis of economic life is fitted to the exposition of the preparation for and develop-
PREFACE BY THE GERMAN EDITORS

ment of modern capitalism, and in the masterly skill with which the results of the investigation are utilized in the service of this idea.

The situation just pictured set the task of the editors and made it a difficult one. No manuscript or even coherent outlines by Weber himself were available. There were found in his papers only a bundle of sheets with notes little more than catchwords set down in a handwriting hardly legible even to those accustomed to it. Consequently, the text had to be restored from notes by students, who willingly made their notebooks available for several months. For the possibility of giving to the world an economic history under Max Weber’s name, thanks are due in the first place to them. The editors hope to have succeeded by this means in restoring the course of the argument. Unfortunately the forceful, dramatic mode of expression has been almost entirely lost as it could only appear in an incomplete and unclear form in the notes, and defied all effort at restoration. As it was impossible to avoid taking some hand in the form of the work, the editors have thought that a somewhat fuller organization and connection of the different parts into paragraphs and subheads would facilitate reading and understanding it. Here, however, their work stopped, with what is essentially only a linguistically conservative mission. It could not be their task to take any position in regard to the material presented by the author, to enter into controversy or attempt to remove in advance doubts such as were certain to arise in regard to his argument. Only in a few places, and then only occasionally and briefly, have they felt permitted to correct an obvious error of the author or essay to complete his statements.

S. HELLMANN.
M. PALLY.

Munich and Berlin, April, 1923.
PART ONE

HOUSEHOLD, CLAN, VILLAGE AND MANOR

(The Agrarian Organization)

1 See notes at the end of the volume.
CHAPTER I

THE AGRICULTURAL ORGANIZATION AND THE PROBLEM OF AGRARIAN COMMUNISM

The idea of a primitive agrarian communism at the beginning of all economic evolution was first suggested by investigations into the ancient German economic organization, especially by Hanssen and von Maurer. These men originated the theory of the ancient German agrarian communism, which became the common property of scholarship. Analogies from other lands to the ancient German rural organization led finally to the theory of an agrarian communism as the uniform beginning of all economic development, the theory developed especially by E. de Laveleye. Such analogies came from Russia and from Asia, especially India. Recently, however, a strong tendency has set in to assume private property in land and a manorial type of development for the most ancient periods accessible to us, whether in Germany or in other economic systems.

If we consider first the German national agricultural organization as it presents itself to us in the eighteenth century, and go back from it to older conditions poorly and scantily illuminated by the sources, we must begin by restricting ourselves to regions originally settled by the Teutons. Thus we exclude, first, the previously Slavic region east of the Elbe and Saal; second, the region formerly Roman, that is, the Rhine region, Hessa, and South Germany generally south of a line drawn roughly from the
Hessian boundary to the vicinity of Regensburg; and finally, the region originally settled by Celts, to the left of the Weser.

The land settlement in this originally German region had the village form, not that of the isolated farmstead.

Connecting roads between the villages were originally quite absent as each village was economically independent and had no need of connections with its neighbors. Even later the roads were not laid out systematically but were broken by traffic according to need and disappeared from one year to the next until gradually in the course of centuries an obligation to maintain them was established, resting upon the individual holding of land. Thus the General Staff maps of this region today give the impres-
sion of an irregular network whose knots are the villages.

In the sketch, the first or innermost zone contains the dwelling lots, placed quite irregularly. Zone Two contains the fenced garden land (Wurt), in as many parts as there were originally dwelling lots in the village. Zone Three is the arable (see below), and Zone Four pasture ("Almende"). Each household has the right to herd an equal number of livestock on the pasture area, which, however, is not communal but appropriated in fixed shares. The same is true of the wood (Zone Five) which incidentally does not uniformly belong to the village; here also the rights to wood cutting, to bedding, mast, etc., are divided equally among the inhabitants of the village. House, dwelling lot, and the share of the individual in the garden land, arable (see below), pasture and forest, together constitute the hide (German Hufe, cognate with "have.")

The arable is divided into a number of parts called fields (Gewanne); these again are laid off in strips which are not always uniform in breadth and are often extremely narrow. Each peasant of the village possesses one such strip in each field, so that the shares in the arable are originally equal in extent. The basis of this division into fields is found in the effort to have the members of the community share equally in the various qualities of the land in different locations. The intermixed holdings which thus arose brought the further advantage that all the villagers were equally affected by catastrophes such as hailstorms, and the risks of the individual were reduced.

The division into strips, in contrast with the Roman custom, where squares predominate, is connected with the peculiarities of the German plow. The plow is universally, to begin with, a hoe-like instrument wielded by the hands
or drawn by animals, which merely scratches the soil and makes grooves in the surface. All peoples which did not get beyond this hoe-plow were compelled to plow the fields back and forth in order to loosen up the soil. The most suitable division of the surface for this purpose was the square, as we find it in Italy from Cæsar’s time on, and as the general staff maps of the Campagna and the outer boundary marks between the individual land holdings still show it. In contrast, the German plow consisted, as far as we can tell, of a knife which cut the earth vertically, a share which cut it horizontally, and finally, at the right, a moldboard which turned it over. This plow made the criss-cross plowing unnecessary, and for its use the division into long strips was most appropriate. The size of the separate strips was usually determined in this connection, by the amount which an ox could plow in a day without giving out—hence the German names “Morgen” (English, “morning” but equivalent to acre) or “Tagwerk” (English, day’s work). In the course of time these divisions underwent much confusion, since the plow, with its moldboard on the right, had a tendency to work over to the left. Hence the furrows became uneven, and since there were no balks, originally at least, between the separate strips, only boundary furrows being drawn, strips of land belonging to another were often plowed up. The original arrangement would be restored by “field juries” with the rod or later the so-called spring circle.

As there are no roads between the single allotments, tillage operations can only be carried on according to a common plan and at the same time for all. This was normally done according to the three field system, which is the most general though by no means the oldest type of husbandry in Germany. Its introduction must be set back at least to the eighth century, since it is assumed as
THE AGRICULTURAL ORGANIZATION

a matter of course in a document of the Rhenish monastery of Lorsch of about the year 770.

The three-field husbandry means that in the first place the whole arable area is divided into three tracts, of which at any one time the first is sown to a winter grain and the second to a summer grain, while the third is left fallow and, at least in historical time, is manured. Each year the fields are changed in rotation, so that the one sown with winter grain is the next year put to summer grain and in the year following left fallow, and the others correspondingly. There is stall feeding of livestock in the winter, while in summer they run on the pasture. Under such a system of husbandry it was impossible for any individual to use methods different in any way from those of the rest of the community; he was bound to the group in all his acts. The reeve of the village determined when sowing and reaping were to be done, and ordered the parts of the arable which were sown with grain fenced off from the fallow land. As soon as harvest was over, the fences were torn down; anyone who had not harvested on the common harvest day must expect the cattle, which would be driven on to the stubble, to trample his grain.

The hide belonged to the individual and was hereditary. It could be of varying size and was different in nearly every village. Frequently, as a sort of norm, an extent of 40 acres was taken as the amount of land necessary to support a typical family. The part of the holding consisting of dwelling lot and garden land was subject to free individual use. The house sheltered a family in the narrow sense of parents and children, often including grown sons. The share in the arable was also individually appropriated, while the rest of the cleared land belonged to the community of hide-men or peasant holders (Hüfner), that is, of the members in full standing or freemen of the village.
GENERAL ECONOMIC HISTORY

These included only those who held title to some share in each of the three fields of arable. One who had no land or did not have a share in every field did not count as a hide-man.

To a still larger group than the village belonged the common "mark" which included wood and waste land and is to be distinguished from the almen or pasture. This larger group was made up of several villages. The beginnings and original form of the mark association (Markgenossenschaft) are lost in obscurity. In any case it goes back before the political division of the land into districts by the Carolingians, and yet it is not identical with the hundred. Within the common mark there existed, joined in inheritance with a certain farm, a "head official" of the mark (Obermärkeramt), an office which had usually been pre-empted by the king or feudal lord, and in addition a "wood court," and an assembly of deputies of the hide-men of the villages belonging to the mark.

Originally there was in theory strict equality among the members in this economic organization. But such an equality broke down in consequence of differences in the number of children among whom the inheritance was divided and there arose alongside the hide-men half and quarter hide-men. Moreover, the hide-men were not the only inhabitants of the village. There were in addition other sections of the population. First, younger sons who did not succeed to holdings. These were allowed to go and settle on the outskirts of the holdings on still uncleared land and received the right of pasture, for a payment in both cases (Hufengeld, Weidegeld). The father could also give them, out of his garden allotment, land on which to build a house. From the outside came hand workers and other neighbors who stood without the organization of associated hide-men. Thus there arose a division between the peasants and
THE AGRICULTURAL ORGANIZATION

another class of village dwellers, called in South Germany hirelings or cottagers (Seldner, Häusler), and in the north "Brinksitzer" or "Kossäten." These latter belonged to the village only on the strength of their ownership of a house but had no share in the arable. However, they could acquire such a share if some peasant, with the consent of the village reeve or of the overlord (originally the clan) sold them a part of his share or if the village leased them a piece of the almend. Such parcels were called "rolling holdings" (walzende Äcker); they were not subject to the special obligations of the hide holding or to the jurisdiction of the manorial court, and were freely transferable. On the other hand their holders had no share in the rights of the hide-man. The number of these people of reduced legal status was not small; it happened that villages transformed up to half of their arable into such rolling holdings.

As a result the peasant population became divided into two strata as regards land ownership, the hide-men with their different subclasses on the one hand, and on the other those who stood outside the hide organization. But there was also formed above the hide-men a special economic stratum who with their land holdings also stood outside the main village organization. In the beginning of the German agricultural system, as long as there was unclaimed land available, an individual could clear land and fence it; so long as he tilled it, this so-called "Bifang" was reserved to him; otherwise it reverted to the common mark. Acquisition of such "bifangs" presupposed considerable possessions in cattle and slaves and in consequence was ordinarily possible only for the king, princes, and overlords. In addition to this procedure, the king would grant land out of the possessions of marks, the supreme authority over which he had assumed for himself. But this granting took
place under other conditions than the allotment of hide land. In this case the allotment affected forest area with definite boundaries, which had first to be rendered tillable, and was subject to more favorable legal relations by being free from the open field obligations. In measuring off these grants a definite area came into use called the royal hide, a rectangle of 40 or 50 hectares (1 hectare = 2 1/2 acres, nearly).

The old German settlement form with the hide system spread out beyond the region between the Elbe and the Weser. Countries into which it made its way include, first, Scandinavia—Norway as far as Bergen, Sweden up to the river Dalelf, the Danish Islands and Jutland; second, England, after the invasions of the Anglo-Saxons and Danes (the open field system); third, almost all northern France, and a large part of Belgium, as far as Brabant, while North-Belgium, Flanders and a part of Holland belonged to the realm of the Salic Franks with a different settlement form; fourth, in south Germany, the region between the Danube and Iller and Lech, including parts of Baden and Wurtemberg, as well as upper Bavaria or the region around Munich, especially the vicinity of Aibling. With German colonization, the old German form of settlement also spread over the Elbe eastward, though in a somewhat rationalized form, since the aim of making the country take up the largest number of settlers led to the establishment of "street villages" with favorable property institutions and with the greatest possible freedom of economic life. The house lots lay not in irregular groups but to the right and left along the village street, each one on its own allotment or hide, which allotments lay adjoining each other in long strips: but here also the divisions into fields and the compulsory common tillage were retained.

With the expansion of the German land settlement sys-
tem beyond its original home, notable distinctions arose. This was especially true in Westphalia, which is divided by the river Weser into regions sharply distinct as regards the mode of settlement. At the river the Germanic settlement form stops suddenly and on the left begins the region of settlement in isolated farmsteads. There is no village or common (Almend), and mixed holdings occur only to a limited extent. The separate farms are cut out of the common mark which is originally uncultivated land. By clearing, new field areas are made which are allotted to the members of the community, called "Erbexen." Moreover, by the process of division other settlers were admitted to the mark, corresponding more or less to the "Kossäten" farther east—craftsmen, small peasants and laborers who stand in the relation of renters to the erbexen, or are dependent upon them as wage workers. The Westphalian erbex or farmer is in possession of land to the extent on the average of 200 acres, a result of the mode of settlement, and is in a much more independent position than a peasant with intermixed holdings. The individual farmstead system dominates from the Weser to the Dutch coast and thus embraces the main territory of the Salic Franks.

In the southeast the German settlement region abuts on that of Alpine husbandry and on the territory of the South Slavs. The Alpine husbandry is based entirely on cattle raising and grazing, and the common pasture or almend is of predominant importance. All economic regulations are therefore derived from the necessity of "stooling" (Schatzung, Seyung), that is, the control of opportunity for sharing the utilization of the pasture by those entitled to it. Stooling involves division of the pasture into a number of "strikes" (Stösze), a strike being the amount of pasture necessary to support one head of stock through the year.

The economic unit of the South Slavs in Servia, in the
Banat and also in Croatia, is in historical times not the village but the house community or zadruga, the age of which is a disputed point. The zadruga is an expanded family living under the leadership of a male head of the house and including all his descendants, often with married couples numbering up to forty or eighty persons, and carrying on economic life on a communistic basis. They do not indeed ordinarily live under a single roof, but in production and consumption they act as a single household using the "common kettle."

In the southwest the Germanic rural organization came in contact with the remains of the Roman method of distributing the land, in which we have the seigniorial estate in the midst of small dependent establishments of colonists. In lower Bavaria, Baden, and Württemberg there came to be a considerable mixture of these two systems, and especially in the upland and hilly districts the Germanic system tends to disappear. There are mixed holdings but on the other hand it also happens that the cleared land of the village falls into unified sections in which the possessions of the individual lie in divisions without there being any effort at equality in sharing or any discoverable principle of division. The origin of this "hamlet distribution," as Meitzen calls it, is uncertain; it may have originated through the granting of land to unfree persons.

The origin of the specifically Germanic agricultural system is obscure. In the time of the Carolingians it is already present, but the division of the open field into equal strips is too systematic to be primitive. Meitzen has shown that it was preceded by another system, a division into so-called Lagemorgen ("locus acres"). The Lagemorgen designates that quantity of land, varying widely according to the quality of the soil, the "lie" of the field, distance from the dwelling lot, etc., around which a peasant could
plow with a yoke of oxen in a forenoon. The Lagemorgen thus forms the basis of the open field or Gewann, which always shows this irregular form wherever the old division has survived, in contrast with the geometrical form given to it by later division into strips of equal size.

This view rejects the recent attempt of Rietschel to prove a military origin for the German land and tillage system. According to this theory, the system developed out of the organization into "hundreds." It holds that the hundred was at the same time a tactical unit and a political grouping of about a hundred hide-men, whose holdings must have been at least four times as large as the later community hide. The central figure of the organization would be available for military service, since they lived on an income derived from the labor of their serfs and could be spared from the community. Thus the hide (Hufe), like the later Anglo-Saxon hyde, was an ideal unit, suitable for carrying the burden of supporting a full-armed mounted warrior. Out of a hide organization of this sort, it is argued, grew the community hide by a process of rationalization, through the division of the holdings of the great hidemen into four, eight or ten parts. It is decidedly against this theory that the field divisions of the German hide organization did not originate by any rational process, but grew out of the Lagemorgen. On the other hand, there remains the difficulty that in northern France the hide organization arose only in the territory over which the Salic Franks extended their conquests, and not in the territory which belonged to them originally.

The original German settlement form no longer survives. Its disintegration began rather early, and not as a result of steps taken by the peasants, who were not in a position to make such changes, but through interference from above. The peasant very early fell into a position of dependence
upon a political superior or feudal overlord; as a community hide-man (Volkshufner) he was weaker in an economic and military sense than the royal hide-man. After the establishment of permanent peace, the nobility took an increasing interest in economic affairs. It was the managerial activity of a portion of the nobility which destroyed the rural organization, especially in south Germany. The imperial abbey of Kempten, for example, began in the 16th century the so-called "enclosures" ("Vereinödungen") which were continued into the 18th century. The cleared land was re-distributed and the peasant placed upon his compacted and enclosed farm (the so-called Einödhof) and as nearly as practicable in the center of it. In north Germany the state set aside the old distribution of land in the 19th century, in Prussia by the ruthless use of force. The "Gemeinheitsteilungsordnung" or Decree for the Division of Communities, of 1821, which was intended to force the transition to an exchange economy, was issued under the influence of liberal ideas opposed to mixed holdings, and the common mark, and pasture. The community with mixed holdings was set aside by compulsory unification and the common pasture or almed distributed. Thus the peasant was forced into an individualistic economic life. In south Germany the authorities were content with the so-called "purification" of the common field system. To begin with, a network of roads was laid out between the different field divisions. As a result there were many exchanges among individual holdings looking toward consolidation. The almed remained, but as winter feeding of stock was introduced, it was extensively transformed into arable, which served as a source of supplementary income for individual villagers or as provision for old age. In Baden especially, this development was characteristic. Here the aim towards secure provision for the population
THE AGRICULTURAL ORGANIZATION

was persistently dominant and led to an especially dense settlement. Bounties on emigration even had to be granted, and finally in places the situation gave rise to attempts to separate old settlers and place those later admitted to rights of common in special almend communities within the village community.

Many students have seen in the German rural organization the echo of an original agrarian communism uniformly valid for all peoples, and have sought elsewhere for examples which would permit them as far as possible to reason back beyond the German system to stages no longer historically accessible. In this effort they have thought to find in the Scotch agricultural system down to the time of the battle of Culloden (1746)—the "runridge system"—a resemblance to the German system which would permit of inferences as to primitive stages. It is true that in Scotland the arable was divided into strips, and holdings intermingled; there was also the common pasture; thus far there is real resemblance to Germany. But these strips were re-distributed by lot annually or at definite times, so that a diluted village communism arose. All this was excluded in the German Lagemorgen, which lies at the basis of the oldest German field division accessible to us. Along with this arrangement, and frequently as a part of it, there arose in the Gaelic and Scotch regions the "cyvvar," the custom of communal plowing. Land which had been in grass for a considerable time was broken up with a heavy plow drawn by eight oxen. For this purpose the owner of the oxen and the owner of a heavy plow, generally the village smith, came together and plowed as a unit, with one to guide the plow and one to drive the oxen. The division of the crop took place either before the harvest or after a joint harvest.

The Scotch system of husbandry was distinguished from
the German by the further fact that the zone of arable was divided into two sub-zones. Of these the inner was manured and tilled according to a three-field rotation, while the outer was divided into from five to seven parts, only one of which was put under the plow in any one year, while the remaining ones were in grass and served as pasture. The character of this "wild field grass" husbandry explains the development at the time, of plow associations, while inside the inner zone the individual Scotchman farmed on his own account like the German peasant.

The Scotch agricultural system is very recent and indicates a high development of tillage; for the original Celtic system, we must go to Ireland. Here agriculture was originally based entirely on cattle raising, due to the fact that, thanks to the climatic conditions, cattle could remain in the open throughout the year. The pasture land is allotted to the house community ("tate") the head of which ordinarily owns from 300 upward head of stock. About the year 600, agriculture declined in Ireland and the economic organization underwent a change. As before, however, the land was not permanently assigned, but for a lifetime at the longest. Redistributions were made by the chieftain (tanaist) down as late as the 11th century.

Since the oldest form of Celtic economy of which we know anything is exclusively connected with cattle raising, little conclusion can be drawn from it, or from the Scotch cyvvars, in regard to the primitive stages of Germanic husbandry. The typical German agricultural system, as known to us, must have originated in a period when the need for tillage and for stock raising were approximately equal. Perhaps it was just coming into being at Cæsar's time, and apparently at Tacitus' time wild field grass husbandry predominated. However, it is difficult to work with the statements of either of these Roman writ-
ers, of whom Tacitus especially arouses suspicions by his rhetorical embellishment.

In sharp contrast with the German land system is that of the Russian mir (opschtschina). This dominated in Great Russia, but only in the inner political districts, while it was absent in the Ukraine and in White Russia. The village of the Russian mir is a street village, often of remarkable extent, including up to three or five thousand inhabitants. Garden and field lie behind the dwelling lot. Newly founded families settle at the end of the row of allotments. Besides the arable there is utilization of a common pasture. The arable is divided into fields and these again into strips. In contrast with the German land system these are not in Russia rigidly assigned to the single dwelling, but the allotment takes into account how many mouths or how much labor force a dwelling musters. According to the number of these, strips in proportion are assigned, and hence the assignment cannot be final but only temporary. The law contemplated a twelve year interval of redivision but in fact it usually took place oftener, every one, three, or six years. The right to the land (nadyel) pertained to the individual soul and related not to the house community but to the village. It was perpetual; even the factory worker whose forefathers had emigrated from the mir generations before might come back and assert the right. Conversely, no one could leave the community without its consent. The nadyel found expression in the right to a periodical redivision. However, the equality of all members of the village usually existed on paper only, as the majority required for a redistribution was almost never obtainable. In favor of redivision was every family which had increased in a large ratio; but there were other interests arrayed against them. The decision of the mir was only nominally democratic; in reality it was
often capitalistically determined. In consequence of the need for provisions the single households were usually to a varying extent in debt to the village bourgeoisie or "kulaks," who held the mass of the propertyless in their power through money lending. According to whether they were interested in keeping their debtors poor or allowing them to acquire more land, they controlled the decision of the village when redivision was in question.

Concerning the economic workings of the mir there were two opinions down to the dissolution of the system in Russia. One view saw in it, as contrasted with an individualistic rural organization, the salvation of economic life. It regarded the right of each emigrant worker to return to the village and demand his portion as the solution of the social question. Holders of this view admitted that obstacles were opposed to progress in agricultural methods, and otherwise, but asserted that the right of the nadyel compelled the inclusion of everyone in an advance. Their opponents regarded the mir as a hindrance to progress unconditionally, and the strongest support of reactionary czaristic policies.

The threatening growth in power of the social revolutionaries at the beginning of the 20th century led to the destruction of the mir. In his agrarian reform legislation of 1906–07, Stolypin gave the peasants the right to withdraw from the mir under specified conditions and to demand that their portion be granted them free from liability to later re-apportionment. The share of a withdrawing member had to be in unified form, a single piece of land, so that, similar in principle to the enclosures of Allgau, the farmers were scattered, each individual being placed in the midst of his holding to carry on individually. Thus came to pass the result which Count Witte as minister had demanded, namely, the destruction of the mir. The liberal
parties had never dared to go so far, or, like the Cadets, had believed in the possibility of reforming it. The immediate result of Stolypin’s agrarian reform was to make the more well-to-do peasants, those in possession of considerable capital, and those who had relatively much land in proportion to the members of the family, withdraw from the mir, and the Russian peasantry was split into two halves. One half, a class of wealthy large farmers, withdrew and went over to a system of individual farms; the other, much more numerous, which was left behind, already possessed too little land and found itself robbed of the right of redistribution and hopelessly given over to the status of a rural proletariat. The second class hated the first as violators of the divine law of the mir; the latter was driven over to unconditional support of the existing regime, and if the World War had not intervened would have furnished a new support and “cudgel guard” for czarism.

Russian scholarship is divided in regard to the origin of the mir. According to the most generally accepted view, however, it was not a primitive institution but a product of the taxation system and of serfdom. Until 1907 the individual member of the mir not only held against the village his nadyel right, but the village reciprocally held an unquestionable claim to his labor power. Even when he had gone away with the permission of the headman of the village, and taken up an entirely different calling, the village could call him back at any time to impose upon him his share of the common burdens. These burdens arose especially in connection with the amortization of the indemnity for the release from serfdom and the purchase price of freedom from taxation. On good land the peasant would obtain a surplus above the share of these burdens falling to him; consequently the town laborer not infrequently found it to his interest to return unsolicited to
the village, and the mir often paid, in such cases, an indemnity for relinquishment of the nadyel. But where taxes were too high and indicated a possibility of higher earnings elsewhere, the tax burden was increased for those who remained behind, since it was a joint obligation. In this case the mir would force its members to return and take up their life as peasants. Consequently, the solidarity limited the individual member’s freedom of movement and amounted merely to a continuation through the mir of the serfdom which had been abolished; the peasant was no longer a serf of the lord but a serf of the mir.

Russian serfdom was unusually harsh. The peasants were subject to torture; an inspector every year joined pairs of marriageable age together and outfitted them with land. In relation to the overlord there were only traditional rights, no enforceable law; he could undo the arrangement at any time. In the period of serfdom the redivision was carried out, either, in the case of poor land, according to the number of workers in the individual peasant’s household, or in the case of good land, according to the number of mouths. The obligation to the land dominated over the right to the land, while in the one case as in the other the community was held jointly for the payments to the overlord. At the same time the Russian manor exploited the peasants down to the present day to the extent that the overlords furnished almost nothing, but tilled the land with the capital and horses of the peasant. The land was either leased to the peasants or tilled under the direction of the lord’s bailiff with forced labor by the peasants and their teams.

Joint liability to the overlord, and serfdom, have existed only since the 16th and 17th centuries. Out of them developed the custom of redividing the land. The custom of redivision did not arise in the Ukraine and those parts of
Russia, especially in the west, which were not brought under Muscovite domination in the 16th and 17th centuries. Here the land was permanently assigned to the separate dwellings.

On the same principle of joint liability was based the economic system followed by the Dutch East India Company in their possessions. The company made the Desa or community jointly responsible for the dues of rice and tobacco. This joint liability led to the result that the community would finally compel the individual to remain in the village to help pay the taxes. With the abandonment of joint liability in the 19th century, the community with compulsory membership was also allowed to decline.

The economic system included two methods of rice culture, the dry culture (*tegal*) which was relatively unproductive, and wet culture (*sawah*) under which the field was surrounded with dykes and sub-divided within to control the running off of the water collected for the purpose. One who had established a sawah held an hereditary inalienable property right to it. The tegal land was subject to a nomadic husbandry similar to the wild field grass economy of the outer zone in the Scotch village community. The village cleared in common while the individual tilled and harvested singly. The cleared land was cropped from three to four years and then had to be put to grass while the village moved and broke up new land. The older conditions make it clear that only the ruthless and exploitative system of the Dutch East India Company brought about the system of redistribution.

The system introduced by the company gave place in the thirties of the last century to that of *Kultur-stelsel*. Under this system the individual had to cultivate one-fifth of his land for the benefit of the state, in which connection also the crop to be grown was prescribed. This
system in turn disappeared in the course of the 19th century, giving place to a more rational mode of husbandry.

A similar system once obtained for a time in China, according to the reports of the Chinese classical writers. The arable land was divided into tracts of nine squares each, of which the outer squares were assigned to individual families, the inner ones being reserved for the emperor. The family received the land only for use; at the death of the head of the house, redivision was carried out. This system was of only passing significance and dominated only in the neighborhood of large rivers where rice culture by flooding was possible. In this case also, the communistic organization of agriculture was dictated by fiscal considerations and did not arise out of primitive conditions. The original Chinese economic organization is found instead in the clan economy still common in the Chinese villages, where the clan has its little ancestral temple and its school and carries on tillage and economic life in common.

The last example of a supposed communistic agricultural system is that of India. Two different forms of village organizations are met with. Common to the two is the common pasture and a garden area corresponding to the tract of arable on which in the German system wage laborers and cottagers lived. Here are settled craftsmen, temple priests, (which in contrast with the Brahmins play only a subordinate role), barbers, laudrymen, and all kinds of laborers belonging to the village—the village “establishment.” They hold on a “demiurgic” basis; that is, they are not paid for their work in detail but stand at the service of the community in return for a share in the land or in the harvest. The villages differ in regard to land ownership. In the ryotvari village the land ownership is individual and the tax burden likewise. At the head of the village is a reeve. The peasants have no share
in the common mark, which belongs to the king (rajah). One who wishes to clear land must pay for the privilege.

Another type is represented by the village placed under a "joint body," a community of a number of privileged nobles, a village aristocracy of full free-holders or hidemen without an individual head. These farmers ("Erbexen") grant out the land and to them belongs the common mark; thus they stand between the true cultivators and the rajah. Within this category two classes of villages may be further distinguished: One is the pattidari village, where the land is definitively divided out and appropriated. On the death of the occupant his share goes to his descendants by blood and is redivided when it again passes by inheritance. The other is the bhayachara village. Here the land is distributed in accordance with the labor force or the rank of the individual holders. Finally, there are also villages in which an individual is in complete control as tax farmer and overlord. These are zamindari villages, and the pattidari villages also developed through the partition of feudal holdings. The special feature of Indian conditions is that a large number of rent collectors have intervened between the sovereign and the peasantry through the farming out and re-farming of the taxes. Frequently a chain of four or five rent receivers will have originated in this way. Within this group of rent receivers and large farmers a nominal communism has been evolved. Where several peasants carry on a communistic husbandry they divide the harvest, not the land, and the rent is apportioned among the owners entitled to share. Thus, this case of agrarian communism also traces its origin to fiscal considerations.

In Germany, again, students thought to find in the holdings called "Gehöferschaften" of the Moselle the remains of a primitive agrarian communism, until Lamprecht
recognized their true character. Down to the present these holdings have consisted chiefly of woodland, but they formerly contained also meadow and arable which were divided out after the manner of common fields, periodically and by lot. This arrangement is not primitive, but arose out of seigniorial policies. Originally the Gehöferschaft was a manorial farm or estate which was tilled by the labor of small peasants, members of the mark community. But when the overlords became knights and were no longer in a position to direct operations personally, they found it more advantageous to enlist the self-interest of the peasants, and granted them the land on the terms of a fixed rent. Here again we meet with the principle of joint obligation. The mark organization either undertook a definitive division of the interests, or redistributed periodically by lot.

Not all of these examples serve to prove the thesis of Laveleye that at the beginning of the evolution agrarian communism existed in the sense of communistic husbandry, and not merely that of joint ownership of the soil—two things which must be carefully distinguished. This is not the case since, in fact, husbandry was not originally communal. Here there is a sharp conflict in viewpoint. While the socialistic authors view property as a fall from grace into sin, the liberals carry it back wherever possible to the time of the putative ancestors of the population. In reality, nothing definite can be said in general terms about the economic life of primitive man. If we seek an answer in the relations of populations untouched by European influences, we find no unanimity but ever the sharpest contrasts.

In primitive agricultural life, the so-called hoe-culture predominates. Neither plow nor beasts of burden are used;* the implement of tillage is a pointed stick, with which the man goes about over the land and makes holes
THE AGRICULTURAL ORGANIZATION

in which the woman drops the seed. With this method, however, quite different forms of organization may be associated. Among the Guatoes in the interior of Brazil, individual economy is found with no reason for assuming the previous existence of any other organization. Every household is self-sufficient, without specialized division of labor among them, and with limited specialization among the members of the household, and also with limited exchange relations between tribes. The opposite extreme is the assembly of work in a large central dwelling, as in the long-house of the Iroquois. Here the women are herded together under the leadership of a head woman who apportions the work, and likewise the product, among the separate families. The man is warrior and hunter, and undertakes in addition the heavy tasks, clearing the land, building the house, and finally herding the cattle. The latter counted originally as an exalted occupation because the taming required strength and skill. Later, the esteem in which it is held is traditional and conventional. We find similar conditions in all parts of the earth, especially among negro tribes; everywhere among these the field work falls to the women.
CHAPTER II

PROPERTY SYSTEMS AND SOCIAL GROUPS

(A) FORMS OF APPROPRIATION

The forms of appropriation are quite as diverse as the forms of husbandry. The proprietorship everywhere vests originally in the house community; but this may be either the individual family, the zadruga of the South Slavs, or a still larger association, as for example that of the Iroquois long-house. Appropriation may be carried out on two different bases. Either the physical means of labor, especially the soil, are treated as implements, in which case they frequently appertain to the woman and her kindred; or, the land is treated as "spear land," territory which has been conquered and is protected by the man; in this case it belongs to an agnatic clan or some other masculine group. In any case purely economic considerations do not uniquely determine the form of primitive appropriation and division of labor, but military, religious, and magical motives also enter.

In the past the individual had to adjust himself to a plurality of organizations to which he belonged. The following are the types:

1. The Household. Its structure is diverse but it was always a consumption group. The physical means of production, especially movable goods, might also pertain to the house group. In that case appropriation might be carried farther within the group, the weapons and masculine accoutrements for example belonging to the man, with a
special mode of inheritance, the articles of adornment and feminine accoutrements to the woman.

2. The Clan. This also may hold goods in varying degrees of proprietorship. It may own the land; in any case, the members of the clan regularly keep as a remnant of originally widely extended property rights certain claims against the possessions of the house community, such as the requirement for its consent in case of sale, or a prior option to purchase. Further, the clan is responsible for the security of the individual. To it pertains the duty of avenging, and of enforcing the law of vengeance. It also has a right to share in head money, and a joint proprietorship over the women belonging to the clan, hence, a share in bride purchase money. The clan may be masculine or feminine in constitution. If property and other rights pertain to a masculine clan we speak of paternal succession or agnation, otherwise of maternal or cognation.

3. Magic Groupings. The most important group is the totem clan which arose at a time when certain beliefs in animism and spiritual entities were dominant.

4. The Village and Mark Association, essentially economic in significance.

5. The Political Group. This organization protects the territory occupied by the village and consequently possesses extensive authority in connection with the settlement of the land. In addition it requires of the individual military and court services, giving him corresponding rights; it also enforces the feudal services and taxes.

The individual must also take into account under different conditions the following: 6. Overlordship of land, when the soil which he tills is not his own. 7. Personal overlordship when the individual is not free but is in bondage to another.
Every individual German peasant stood in the past in relation to an overlord of land and person, and to a political sovereign, one or more of whom had some claim to his services. Agricultural development took various forms according as these different persons were distinct or identical; in the former case, the rivalry of the different overlords favored the freedom of the peasant, while in the latter the trend was toward servility.

(B) **The House Community and the Clan**

Today the house community or family household is commonly a small-family, that is, a community of parents and children. It is based on legitimate marriage presumed to be permanent. The economic life of this small family is unitary in regard to consumption, and at least nominally distinct from the productive organization. Within the household all property right vests in the master of the house as an individual, but is limited in various ways in regard to the special belongings of the wife and children. Kinship is reckoned alike on the paternal and maternal sides, its significance being practically limited to the matter of inheritance. The concept of the clan in the old sense no longer survives; only rudiments of it can be recognized in the right of collateral inheritance, and even here there is a question as to the age and the history of these relations.²

The socialistic theory proceeds from the assumption of various evolutionary stages in the marriage institution. According to this view the original condition was one of spontaneous sex promiscuity within the horde (endogamy), corresponding to the complete absence of private property. Proof of this assumption is found in various alleged survivals of the original conditions: in religious institutions of an orgiastic character among primitive peoples, meat,
alcohol, and narcotic orgies, in which the restraints upon sexual relations disappear; in freedom of sexual relations before marriage, for women as well as men, such as is found among various peoples; in the sexual promiscuity of the hieroduli of the ancient east who gave themselves indiscriminately to any man; finally, in the institution of the levirate found among the Israelites and in various places and involving the privilege and duty of the clan brother to marry the widow of a deceased man and provide him with heirs. In this arrangement is seen a remnant of primitive endogamy which is supposed to have become gradually narrowed down to a claim upon a particular individual.

The second evolutionary stage according to this socialistic theory is group marriage. Definite groups (clan or tribe) form a marriage unit in relation to other groups, any man of the one being regarded as the husband of any woman of the other. The argument rests on inference from the absence of terms for any kinship except that of father and mother among Indian peoples; at a certain age these terms are applied indiscriminately. Further evidence is drawn from isolated cases of marriage groups in the South Pacific Islands where a number of men possess simultaneous or successive sexual rights over a particular woman, or conversely a number of women over a particular man.

Socialistic theory considers the "mother right," (Mutterrecht) as a fundamental transition stage. According to the theory, at a time when the causal connection between the sexual act and birth was unknown, the house community consisted not of families but of mother-groups; only the maternal kinship had ritualistic or legal standing. This stage is inferred from the widespread institution of the "avunculate" in which her mother's brother is the
woman's protector and her children inherit from him. The matriarchate was also regarded as a developmental stage. Under this arrangement, met with in various communities, the distinction of chieftainship was fixed exclusively in the woman, and she was the leader in economic affairs, especially those of the household community. From this condition it was supposed that the transition to father-right took place through the institution of marriage by capture. Beyond a certain stage, the ritualistic basis of promiscuity was condemned and exogamy displaced endogamy as a general principle, that is, sexual relations became restricted to persons in other groups, involving commonly the obtaining of the woman from these groups by violence. Out of this practice should have developed marriage by purchase. An argument for this course of development is found in the fact that even among many civilized peoples who have long since gone over to contractual marriage the marriage ceremonies still symbolize forcible abduction. Finally, the transition to patriarchal-law (Vaterrecht, father-right) and legitimate monogamy is in socialistic thinking connected with the origin of private property and the endeavor of the man to secure legitimate heirs. Herein takes place the great lapse into sin; from here on monogamous marriage and prostitution go hand in hand.

So much for the theory of mother-right and the socialistic doctrine based upon it. Although it is untenable in detail it forms, taken as a whole, a valuable contribution to the solution of the problem. Here again is the old truth exemplified that an ingenious error is more fruitful for science than stupid accuracy. A criticism of the theory leads to consideration first of the evolution of prostitution, in which connection, it goes without saying, no ethical evaluation is involved.

We understand by prostitution submission to sexual re-
lations for a price, in order to secure a money income, and as a regular profession. In this sense prostitution is not a product of monogamy and private property, but is of immemorial age. There is no historical period and no stage of evolution in which it is not to be found. It is unusual in Mohammedan civilization and is absent among a few primitive peoples, but the institution itself and punishment for both homosexual and heterosexual prostitution are found among the very peoples pointed out by the socialistic theorists for the absence of private property. Always and everywhere the profession is segregated as a social class and generally given an outcast position, with exceptions in the case of sacerdotal prostitution. Between professional prostitution and the various forms of marriage may intervene all possible intermediate arrangements of permanent or occasional sexual relations, which are not necessarily condemned ethically or legally. While today a contract providing for sexual pleasure outside of marriage is void, *turpi causa*, in the Egypt of the Ptolemies there was sexual freedom of contract with enforceable exchange by the woman of sex gratification for sustenance, rights in estates, or other considerations.

Prostitution, however, not only appears in the form of an unregulated sexual submission but is also met with in the sacramentally regulated form of ritualistic prostitution, as for example, the hieroduli in India and the ancient east. These were female slaves who had to function in the temple in connection with the religious services, of which a part consists in their sex orgies. The hieroduli are also found submitting themselves to the public for pay. The institution of the hieroduli goes back to sacerdotal sources, to animistic magic of a sexual character, which has a way of running into sexual promiscuity in view of the progressive self-excitement of an ecstatic situation.
Copulation as a form of magic for stimulating fertility is widespread among agricultural peoples. The sexual orgy was even carried out on the ground itself with the expectation of increasing its productivity. Out of participation in this sacramental process arose in India the calling of the bayaderes which play an important role in the cultural life of India as free hetaerae, similar to the Greek women so designated. But in spite of the favorable conditions of their lives they ranked as outcasts, and as is shown by the Indian bayadere dramas, regarded it as the highest peak of good fortune to be elevated through a miracle to the class of married women living under very degraded conditions.

Besides the hieroduli there are found in Babylon and Jerusalem the temple prostitutes proper, whose principal clients were the traveling merchants. These kept to their occupation after its loss of sacramental and orgiastic character, under the protection of the material interests of the temple. The struggle against officially legitimatized prostitution, and its source the orgy, was carried on by the prophets and priests of the great religions of salvation, Zarathustra, the Brahmans, and the Prophets of the Old Testament. They carried on the fight partly on ethical and rational grounds; it was the battle of those who wished to deepen the inner life of man and saw in subjection to eroticism the greatest obstacle to the triumph of the religious motive. In addition, the rivalry of cults played a part. The God of ancient Israel was a hill God, not a chthonian deity like Baal, and the police power stood beside the priests in this struggle, as the state feared the rise of revolutionary movements of the lower classes out of the emotional excitement connected with orgiastic phenomena. Nevertheless, prostitution as such survived after
the discontinuance of the orgy, which was under suspicion of the state; but it was outlawed and illicit. In the middle ages, in spite of the church doctrine, it had official recognition and was organized as a guild. In Japan also the occasional use of the tea-house girls as prostitutes continued down to the present and not merely has not caused them to lose caste, but has made them especially desired in marriage.

The reversal in the status of prostitution did not begin till the end of the 15th century, when it followed the serious outbreak of sexual diseases during the campaign of Charles VIII of France against Naples. From that time began its strict segregation while up to then it had been allowed to lead a mild ghetto existence. The outbursts of ascetic tendencies in Protestantism, especially in Calvinism, worked against prostitution, as did subsequently, but more mildly and cautiously, the rules of the Catholic church. The results were here similar to those of Mohammed and the makers of the Talmud who had likewise taken up the struggle against orgiastic practices.

An analysis of sex relations outside of marriage must distinguish between prostitution and the sexual freedom of woman. Sexual freedom for the man was always taken for granted, being first condemned by the three great monotheistic religions, and in fact not by Judaism until the Talmud. The originally equal sexual freedom of woman finds expression in the fact that among the Arabs at the time of Mohammed temporary marriage in exchange for support, and trial marriage, existed side by side, although permanent marriage was already recognized. Trial marriages are also found in Egypt and elsewhere. Girls of upper class families were especially reluctant to submit to the harsh domestic confinement of the patriarchal mar-
riage, but clung to their sexual liberty, remaining in their parental homes and entering into contracts with men to whatever extent they pleased.

Beside this example of personal sexual freedom must be placed the possibility of the woman being exploited for gain by the clan and hired out in exchange for provisions. Sex hospitality, so-called, must also be recognized, that is, the obligatory giving of wife and daughters to honored guests. Finally, there developed concubinage, which is distinguished from marriage by the fact that it does not give complete legitimacy to the children. It is always conditioned by difference in social class and involves cohabitation across class barriers, after class endogamy has been established. In the period of the Roman Empire it had held full legal recognition, especially for soldiers, to whom marriage was forbidden, and for senators, whose marriage opportunities were limited by social class considerations. It was maintained during the middle ages and first absolutely forbidden by the Fifth General Lateran Council of 1515. But it was condemned by the Reformation churches from the beginning, and since that time has disappeared from the western world as a legally recognized institution.

Further investigation of the socialistic theory of mother-right shows that none of the stages of sexual life which it asserts can be shown to exist as steps in a general evolutionary sequence. Where they are met with, it is always under quite special circumstances. Promiscuity, where it exists at all, is either an especial phenomenon of an orgiastic character or a degenerative product of an older strict regulation of the sexual life. On the side of the mother-right theory, it must be admitted that the history of animistic religious belief shows that the connection between the act of generation and birth was not originally understood. In consequence, the blood bond between father and
children was not recognized, just as today illegitimate children live under mother-right. However, purely maternal organizations under which children live with the mother alone, without the father, are not at all general, but occur only under quite specific conditions.

Endogamy within the house or brother and sister marriage is found as an aristocratic institution for maintaining the purity of the royal blood, as among the Ptolemies.

Priority of the clan, under which the girl must be offered to members of her clan before marrying outside of it, or their claim must be bought off, is explained by differentiation in wealth and is a defense against the dissipation of property. The levirate also does not correspond to primitive conditions, but arises from the fact that extinction of a male line was to be avoided on military and religious grounds; the family without a warrior must not be left barren and abandoned to die out.

After social stratification has appeared, class endogamy arises in the further sense that the daughters must be reserved for the members of a particular political or economic group. This was carried out within wide limits by the Greek democracy, in order to keep the property within the citizenship of the city and to monopolize political opportunities for the citizen class by restricting its multiplication.

Endogamy also takes the form of hypergamy, in the case where very intense class differentiation develops, as in the Indian caste system. While the man of a higher caste can enter into sex relations or marry below his level at will, this is forbidden to the woman. As a result the woman of a lower caste may be sold for money while on behalf of the girl of the higher caste, offers may be made to secure a man in exchange for money. The arrangements are made in childhood, and the man may be mar-
ried to a number of women and be supported by their parents, travelling from one household to another. In India, the English government put an end to this condition, enforcing the support of the women on the part of the nominal husband. Wherever endogamy is found, it is to be assumed that it is a phenomenon of retrogression, not a stage of progress.

Exogamy with regard to the household has obtained everywhere and always, with few exceptions. It arises from the effort to forestall jealousy of the men within the household, and out of the recognition that growing up together does not permit a strong development of the sexual impulse. Exogamy of the clan is generally connected with animistic ideas belonging to the institution of totemism. That this ever spread over the world is, however, unproven, although it is met with in such separated regions as America and the Indian Archipelago. Marriage by capture is always regarded as illegal by the kindred affected, justifying blood revenge or exaction of head money, but at the same time is also treated as a knightly adventure.

The distinguishing mark of legitimate marriage according to patriarchal law, is the fact that from the standpoint of a certain social group only the children of a certain wife of the man in question have full legal standing. This social group may be of several kinds: 1. The house community; only children by marriage have the right of inheritance, not those of secondary wives and concubines. 2. The clan; only the children by marriage share in the institutions of blood vengeance, head money, and inheritance. 3. A military group; only children by marriage have the right to bear arms, share in booty or conquered territory, or in the distribution of land generally. 4. A class group; only children by marriage are full members of the class. 5. A religious group; only legitimate descendants are regarded
as fit to carry on the ancestral ritual, and the gods will accept sacrifice only at their hands.

The possible arrangements other than legitimate marriage according to patriarchal law are the following: (1) The pure matriarchate. The father, recognized as legitimate head of the group, is absent; kinship is recognized only between the children and the mother or the kindred of the latter. Pure maternal groupings are found especially in connection with men’s societies. (See below.) (2) Pure paternal (agnatic) groupings. All the children of a father have equal standing, including those of secondary wives, concubines, and female slaves, and also adopted children. Both children and women are subject to his unrestrained authority. Out of this condition developed legitimate marriage according to patriarchal law. (3) Succession in the maternal line in spite of a house community including both parents. The children belong to the mother’s clan, not that of the father. This condition is found in connection with totemism and is a survival of the organization of the men’s-house organization. (See below.)

(C) The Evolution of the Family as Conditioned by Economic and Non-Economic Factors

Treatment of this question calls first for a general survey of primitive economic life. The scheme of three uniformly distinct stages of hunting economy, pastoral economy, and agriculture, current in scientific discussion, is untenable. Neither purely hunting nor purely nomadic peoples are primitive, if they are met with at all, free from dependence upon exchange among themselves and with agricultural tribes. The primitive condition on the contrary is one of nomadic agriculture on the level of hoe-culture, and gen-
erally associated with hunting. Hoe-culture is husbandry without domestic animals and especially without beasts of burden; the plow represents the transition to agriculture in our sense. The domestication of cattle required a long period of time. It probably began with work animals, milk animals coming later, while still today there are regions in the East in which milking is unknown. Use of animals for meat followed both. As an occasional phenomenon, slaughtering is certainly older; it took place in a ritualistic connection for the purpose of the meat orgy. Last of all we find the taming of animals for military purposes. Beginning with the 16th century before Christ we meet with the horse which is used on the plains for riding, everywhere else as a draft animal; and the epoch of knightly chariot fighting, common to all peoples from China and India to Ireland, begins.

Hoe-culture could be carried on individually by the small family or with group labor, through the coming together of households even to hundreds of persons. The latter mode of husbandry is the product of a considerable development of technique. Hunting must originally have been carried on in common, though its socialization was the result of circumstances. The keeping of cattle could be carried on individually and must have been; in any case, the social groups engaged in it could not have been very large on account of the scattering of large herds over extensive areas. Finally, extensive agriculture could be carried on by all methods, but the clearing of land called for community action.

Cutting across these distinctions in the mode of husbandry is the form of the division of labor between the sexes. Originally, the tilling of the soil and the harvesting fell mainly to the woman. Only when heavy labor, with the plow instead of the hoe, was required, the man had to
PROPERTY SYSTEMS AND SOCIAL GROUPS

participate. In the house work proper, in which textiles take the leading place, the woman alone was involved. Man’s work included also hunting, tending domestic animals as far as cattle were concerned—while the small animals were again the woman’s province—wood and metal working, and finally and before all, war. The woman was a continuous worker, the man an occasional one; only very gradually, with the increasing difficulty and intensity of work, was he led on to continuous labor.

Out of the interaction of these conditions arise two types of communalization, on the one hand that of house and field work, and on the other that of hunting and fighting. The first centers around the woman and on the basis of it she often occupies a dominant social position; not infrequently she was in complete control. The women’s house was originally the workhouse, while the socialization of hunting and fighting gave rise to the men’s society. But whether the head of the household was a man or, as among the Indians, a woman, there was always a traditional bondage and a corresponding patriarchal position within the house. In contrast, the socialization of hunting and fighting was carried out under the leadership based on merit or charism of a chieftain chosen for this purpose. Not his kinship connections but his warlike and other personal qualities are decisive; he is the freely chosen leader with a freely chosen following.

Corresponding to the house community in which the economic activity of the women is carried on, is found the men’s house. During a precisely limited period of life, embracing from 25 to 30 years, the men live together in a club-house apart from their families. From this as a center are carried on hunting, war, magic, and the making of weapons and other important iron implements. The young men frequently obtain wives by capture, carried out
in groups, so that the marriage has a polyandrous character, or they buy them. Women are forbidden to enter the men’s house, in order to guard its character of secrecy. It is kept sacred by fear-inspiring surroundings, such as the duc-duc of the South Pacific Islanders. The avunculate is regularly connected with the institution of the men’s house and often though not always with maternal kinship, while exogamy of the clan regularly obtains. As a rule also the group of men is divided into age classes. After a certain age they withdraw from the men’s house and repair to the village and their wives. Generally the men’s house also recognizes a novitiate. At a certain age the boys are taken out of the families, carried through magic procedures (circumcision being commonly included), receive the consecration of young manhood, and take up their life in the men’s house. The place is a sort of barracks, a military institution giving rise on its disintegration to various lines of development, as for example, a magical association or a political secret society on the pattern of the Italian Camorra. The Spartan ἄνδρεων, the Greek phratry, and the Roman curia (coviria) are examples of the institution.

This primitive military organization did not everywhere come into being and where it arose it disappeared quickly, either through a course of demilitarization or through the development of a military technique favorable to single combat with the requirement of heavy weapons and a special course of training for the warrior. Chariot and horseback fighting worked especially in this direction. The consequence was regularly that the men joined their families, living with their wives, and military protection was secured not through the communism of the men’s house but through an arrangement which gave the individual warrior special rights in the land, enabling him to equip himself. At this time the blood tie becomes of especial
PROPERTY SYSTEMS AND SOCIAL GROUPS

significance, while accompanying it is the primitive theology of animism or belief in spirits, which everywhere in the world puts in its appearance in some form.

In the institution of the men’s house is apparently to be sought the origin of totemism, resting on animistic grounds, although later it becomes independent of the latter. The totem is an animal, a stone, an artefact, any object whatever, which is viewed as possessed by a spirit, the members of the totem group standing in animistic kinship with this spirit. When the totem is an animal, it must not be killed, for it is of the same blood as the community; and out of this prohibition grow various ritualistic food prohibitions. Those belonging to a totem form a culture union, a peace group, whose members must not fight among themselves. They practise exogamy, marriage between members of the totem being considered incestuous and expiated by terrible punishment. Thus one totem stands over against others as a marriage group. In this regard the totemic group is a ritualistic conception which often cuts through household and political groupings. Although the individual father lives in domestic communion with his wife and children, maternal succession is rather generally the rule, the children belonging to the mother’s clan and being ceremonially alien to the father. This is the factual basis of the so-called matriarchate which is thus, along with totemism, a survival from the period of the men’s house. Where totemism is absent we find a patriarchate, or paternal dominance with paternal inheritance.

The struggle of the growing tendency toward the patriarchate with an older maternal system might be decided according to the established land tenure. Either the soil was allotted in line with economic principles, that is, it was regarded as the work place of the woman, or in line with military principles, in which case it was viewed as the
fruit of conquest and a subject for military protection. If the main burden of tillage fell on the woman, the land was inherited by the maternal uncle as guardian of the children. If on the contrary it was viewed as "spear land" the title rested in the military organization; the children were counted as belonging to the father, and a further consequence was the exclusion of the women from rights in the land. The military group sought to maintain the economic basis of military service on the part of its members by keeping the allotment of land as a function of the paternal clan. Out of this endeavor sprang the levirate as well as the law regarding female heirs, to the effect that the nearest of kin had the right and duty of marrying a female descendant who was the last of a line. This institution is met with especially in Greece.

The other possibility was that individual property relations decided between the patriarchate and a maternal organization. Between economic equals the older form of marriage was apparently exchange of wives;* especially as between households, youths exchanged their sisters. With differentiation in economic status, the woman is regarded as labor power and is bought as an object of value, as a work animal. The men who cannot buy a wife serve for her or live permanently in her house. Marriage by purchase and marriage through service, the one with patriarchal law and the other with maternal, may exist side by side and even in the same household; hence, neither is a universal institution. The woman always remains under the authority of a man, either in her own house community or in that of the man who has bought her. The marriage by purchase, like marriage through service, may be either polyandrous or polygamous. While the well-to-do buy wives at will, the propertyless, especially brothers, often club together for the purchase of a common wife.
PROPERTY SYSTEMS AND SOCIAL GROUPS

Back of these relations is the "group marriage" which probably developed out of marriage barriers of a magical significance, as between totem groups or house communities. The man takes a group of sisters either one after the other or at the same time, or a number of women have to be taken over from the other house community, when they also become the property of the group thus "marrying" them. Group marriage occurs only sporadically and is apparently not a general stage in the evolution of marriage.

The wife obtained by purchase is regularly subject to the absolute patriarchal authority of the man. This supreme power is a primitive fact. It was always present in principle, as a characteristic of primitive peoples.

(D) THE EVOLUTION OF THE CLAN

The evolution of the clan will now be described. The Gaelic word clan means "blood kindred," and like the corresponding German word Sippe is identical with the Latin proles. Different sorts of clans are first to be distinguished.

(1) The clan in the sense of a magical kinship of the members with each other, with food prohibitions, rules for specific ritualistic behavior toward each other, etc. These are totemic clans.

(2) Military clans (phratries) are associations such as originally occupied a men's house. The control over descendants which they exercised has very extensive significance. An individual who does not go through the novitiate of the men's house and submit to the exacting practices and tests of strength connected with it, or who is not received into the cult, is in the terminology of primitive peoples a "woman" and does not enjoy the political privileges of men or the economic privileges which go
with them. The military clan maintains its earlier significance long after the disappearance of the men’s house; in Athens, for example, it is the group through which the individual holds his citizenship.

(3) The clan as a blood kinship group of a certain scope. Here the agnatic clan is most important and the present discussion will relate solely to it. Its functions are, first to perform the duty of blood vengeance against outsiders; second, the division of fines within the group; third, it is the unit for land allotment in the case of "spear land," and in Chinese, Israelitish, and old German law the agnates possess down to historic times a claim which must be satisfied before land can be sold outside the clan. The agnatic clan is in this connection a select group; only the man who is physically and economically competent to equip himself for fighting is recognized as a clansman. One who cannot do that must "commend" himself to an overlord or protector, in whose power he also places himself. Thus the agnatic clan practically becomes a privilege of property owners.

A clan may be organized or unorganized, the original condition being rather intermediate. The clan had regularly an elder, although this is often no longer true in historical times. In principle he was only a *primus inter pares*. He acted as arbiter in disputes between members of the clan, and divided the land among them, proceeding, to be sure, according to tradition rather than arbitrarily, as the clan members either had equal rights or were subject at least to a definitely regulated inequality. The type of clan elder is the Arabian sheik, who controls his people only by exhortation and good example, as the *principes* of Tacitus’ Germans rule more by example than by command.

The clan met very different sorts of fate. In the Oc-
PROPERTY SYSTEMS AND SOCIAL GROUPS

Incident it has completely disappeared, and in the Orient been just as completely maintained. In the period of antiquity the φυλαί and gentes played a large role. Every ancient city was composed originally of clans and not of individuals. The individual belonged to the city only as a member of a clan, a military organization (phratry) and an organization for the distribution of burdens (phylum). In India also, a membership in a clan is obligatory among the upper castes, especially the knightly caste, while the members of the lower and later established castes belong to a devak, that is, a totemic group. Here the significance of the clan rests on the fact that the land system is based on enfeoffment through the head of the clan. Thus we find here also a hereditary distinction or charism as the principle of land distribution. One is not noble because one possesses land, but conversely one has an inherited right to a share in the land because one belongs to a noble clan. In the feudal system of the Occident, on the other hand, the land is divided by the feudal lord, in independence of clan and kinship, and the fealty of the vassal is a personal bond. In China today the economic system is still semi-communistic and based on the clans. The clan possesses schools and storehouses within its separate village, maintains the tillage of the fields, takes a hand in matters of inheritance, and is responsible for the misdemeanors of its members. The whole economic existence of the individual rests on his membership in the clan, and the credit of the individual is normally the credit of his clan.

The disintegration of the clan took place as a result of two forces. One is the religious force of prophecy; the prophet seeks to build up his community without regard to clan membership. The words of Christ,—"I came not to send peace, but a sword. For I am come to set a man at variance against his father, and the daughter against her
mother" (Matthew 10:34–35); and "If any man come to me and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren and sisters—he cannot be my disciple" (Luke 14:26) express the program of every prophet in regard to the clan as an institution. In the middle ages the church strove to abolish the rights of the clan in inheritance so that it might retain land willed to it, but it was not alone in this regard. Among the Jews, certain forces have worked quite similarly. The clan retained its vitality down to the exile. After the exile it is true that the plebeians were enrolled in the clan registers which had earlier been kept for the upper class families. But this division into clans disappeared later, probably because the clan, being originally military in character, had no roots in the demilitarized Jewish state and there remained only membership in a confessional group based on descent or on personal adhesion.

The second force which aided in the disintegration of the clan is the political bureaucracy. In antiquity, we find the greatest development of the latter in Egypt, under the New Empire. There no trace of the clan organization is left because the state does not tolerate it. In consequence, there is equality between man and woman and sexual freedom of contract; children receive as a rule the name of their mother. The royal power feared the clan and encouraged the development of the bureaucracy; the result of the process contrasts with that in China, where the state was not strong enough to break the power of the clan.

(E) Evolution of the House Community

The primitive house community is not necessarily a pure communism. There is frequently a considerable development of proprietorship, even over the children, and further
especially over iron tools, and textile products. There is also a special right of inheritance of the woman from the woman and of the man from the man. Again we may find the absolute patria potestas as the normal condition, or it may be weakened by other organizations as for example the totemic group or the maternal clan. In one respect the house community is almost always a pure communism, namely in regard to consumption, though not in regard to property. From it as a basis proceed various courses of development, to various results.

The small family may evolve into an expanded household and this either in the form of a free community or in that of a manorial household, as the oikos of a landed baron or a prince. The first resulted generally where the centralization of work developed on economic grounds, while the manorial development resulted from political conditions.

Out of the house community developed among the South Slavs the zadruga, in the Alps the commune. In both cases the head of the household is generally elected and generally subject to deposition. The primary condition is pure communism in production. One who withdraws from the group forfeits all rights to share in its common possessions. Occasionally in other places, as in Sicily and in the Orient, a different course of development took place, the community being organized not communistically but on the basis of shares, so that the individual could always demand a division and take his portion wherever he cared to go.

The typical form of the seigniorial development is the patriarchate. Its distinguishing characteristics are the vesting of property rights exclusively in an individual, the head of the household, from whom no one has a right to demand an accounting, and further the despotic position inherited and held for life by the patriarch. This despo-
could be terminated at will by either party, and which gave the woman complete control over her own property, although she lost all right over the children if the marriage was dissolved. Even Justinian was not able to abolish this institution. The evolution of legitimate marriage from the marriage with dowry is manifest for a long time in the distinction found in many legal systems between marriage with dowry and marriage without dowry. Examples are the Egyptians, and the Jews of the middle ages.
CHAPTER III

THE ORIGIN OF SEIGNIORIAL PROPRIETORSHIP

The small family may be the starting point of the development of a communistic household, but it may also evolve into the large-scale manorial household. Viewed in its economic relations, the latter is primarily the medium of development of agricultural proprietorship and hence of Grundherrschaft, the manor and feudalism.

The differentiation in wealth which lies at the base of this development has different sources. One is chieftainship, whether in the chieftain of a clan or of a military group. The division of the land among the members of the clan was in the hands of the clan chieftain. This traditional right often developed into a seigniorial power which became hereditary. The respect which a clan owed to such hereditary distinction was expressed in gifts and aids in connection with tillage and house building, request services to begin with, but developing into obligations. The leader in war might win the title to land through internal differentiation or through conquest outside the clan. Everywhere he has a privileged claim in the distribution of booty and in the division of conquered land. His followers also demanded privileged treatment in the allotment of land. This seigniorial land did not ordinarily share in the burdens of the normal field divisions—as, for example, in the ancient German economic system—but on the contrary was cultivated with the aid of the occupiers of the ordinary holdings.

51
Internal differentiation developed through the appearance of a professional military class, which resulted from the progress of military technique and improvement in the quality of military equipment. Neither the training nor the equipment were available for men in a dependent economic position. Thus arose a distinction between those classes which by virtue of their possessions were in a position to render military service and to equip themselves for the same, and those who could not do this and consequently were not able to maintain the full status of free men. The development of agricultural technique worked in the same direction as military progress. The result was that the ordinary peasant was increasingly bound to his economic functions. Further differentiation came about through the fact that the upper classes, skilled in fighting, and providing their own equipment, accumulated booty in varying degrees through their military activity, while the non-military men who could not do this became more and more subject to various services and taxes. These were either imposed by direct force or resulted from the purchase of exemptions.

The other course of internal differentiation is through the conquest and subjugation of some enemy people. Originally, conquered enemies are slaughtered, under some circumstances with cannibalistic orgies. Only as a secondary matter develops the practice of exploiting their labor power and transforming them into a servile class of burden bearers. Thus arises a class of overlords who by their possession of human beings are placed in a position to clear and till land, a thing impossible to the common freeman. The slave or servile population might be exploited communally, remaining in the possession of the group as a whole, and used for collective tillage of the soil, as was partly the case with the helots in Sparta; or, they might be
utilized individually, being allotted to individual overlords for the tillage of their personal land holdings. This latter development establishes a nobility of conquest.

In addition to conquest and to internal differentiation must be recognized voluntary submission of the defenseless man to the overlordship of a military leader. Because the former needed protection he recognized a lord as patronus (in Rome) or as senior, among the Merovingian Franks. Thus he established a claim to representation before the court, as in the Frankish empire, to a champion in the trial by battle, or to the testimony of the lord instead of the compurgation of the clansmen. In return he furnished services or payments, the significance of which is not, however, the economic exploitation of the dependent. He can be called upon only for service worthy of a free man, especially for military service. In the last days of the Roman Republic, for example, various senatorial families in this way called out hundreds of their clients and colons against Cæsar.

The fourth mode of origin of seigniorial proprietorship is through land settlement under feudal terms. The chieftain with large possessions in human beings and work animals is in a position to reclaim land on a quite different scale from the ordinary peasant. But cleared land belonged in principle to him who brought it under tillage, as long as he was able to cultivate it. Thus the differential command over human labor power, where it appeared, worked indirectly as well as directly in the field of winning land for a seigniorial class. An example of such exploitation of a superior economic position is the patricians' exercise of the right of occupancy on the Roman ager publicus.

The seigniorial land, after it was broken up, was regularly utilized by the method of leasing. Leases were granted to foreigners,—for example to craftsmen, who then stood
under the protection of the king or chieftain—or to impoverished persons. Where the latter are concerned we find, especially among nomadic peoples, the leasing of cattle also; otherwise in general the placing of settlers upon baronial land under obligation to make payments and render services. This is the so-called colonate, met with all over the East, in Italy, in Gaul, and also among the Germans. Money fiefs and grain fiefs, essentially loans, are also frequently a means to the accumulation of serfs and of land. Alongside the colons and slaves, the peons or nexi play a large role, especially in the economic life of antiquity.

Frequently there was an intermixing of those forms of dependency which grew out of clan relations with those deriving from seigniorial power. For landless men in the protection of an overlord, or for foreigners, membership in a clan was no longer in question and the distinctions between clan members, mark members, and members of the tribes disappear in the single category of feudal dependents. A further source in the development of seigniorial claims is the profession of magic. In many cases the chieftain developed, not out of a military leader, but out of a rainmaker. The medicine man could lay a curse on certain objects, which then became protected by "taboo" against all molestation. The aristocracy of magic thus acquired priestly property, and where the prince allied himself with the priest he employed the taboo to secure his personal possessions; this is especially common in the South Sea Islands.

A sixth possibility for the development of seigniorial property is afforded by trade. Regulation of trade with other communities originally lies entirely in the hands of the chieftain, who at first is required to use it in the interests of the tribe. He makes it a source of income for himself by levying duties which, to begin with, are only
a payment for the protection he grants to foreign merchants, since he grants market concessions and protects market dealings—for a consideration always, as need not be said. Later the chieftain often goes on to trade on his own account, establishing a monopoly by excluding the membership of the community—village, tribe, or clan. Thus he obtains the means of making loans, which are the means of reducing his own tribesmen to peonage, and of accumulating land.

Trade may be carried on by such chieftains according to two methods: either the regulation of trade, and hence its monopolization, remains in the hands of the individual chieftain, or a group of chieftains unite to form a trading settlement. This case gives rise to a town, with a patriciate of traders, that is, a privileged stratum whose position rests upon the accumulation of property through trading profits. The first is the rule among many negro tribes, as on the coast of Kamerun. In Ancient Egypt, monopolization of trade was typically in the hands of an individual, the imperial power of the Pharaohs resting in large part on their personal trade monopolies. We find similar conditions among the kings of Cyrenaica, and later, in part, in medieval feudalism.

The second form of chieftain trade, the development of a town nobility, is typical for antiquity and the early middle ages. In Genoa, and in Venice on the Rialto, the noble families settled together are the only full citizens. They finance the merchants, without themselves taking part in trade, through various forms of credit. The result is indebtedness of the other population groups, especially the peasants, to the municipal patriciate. In this way arose the patrician landed proprietorship of antiquity, alongside that of military princes. Thus the ancient nations are characterized as an assemblage of coast-wise towns with a
nobility of large land owners interested in trade. The culture of antiquity retained a coastal character down into the Greek period. No town of this older period lies farther than a day's journey inland. In the country, by contrast, were the seats of the baronial chieftains with their tenants.

Seigniorial property may also have fiscal roots, in the organization of taxation and the officialdom of the state, and under this caption there are two possibilities. Either there arose a centralized personal enterprise of the prince with separation of the administrative officials from the resources with which they worked, so that political power belonged to no one except to the prince, or else there was a class organization of the administration with the enterprises of vassals, tax farmers and officials, functioning in a subsidiary role alongside that of the prince. In the latter case, the prince granted the land to the subordinates who paid all the costs of administration out of their own pockets. According to the dominance of one or the other of these systems, the political and social constitution of the state would be entirely different. Economic considerations largely determine which form would win out. The east and the west show in this regard the usual contrast. For oriental economy—China, Asia Minor, Egypt,—irrigation husbandry became dominant, while in the west where settlements resulted from the clearing of land, forestry sets the type.

The irrigation culture of the Orient developed directly out of primitive hoe-culture, without the use of animals. Alongside it developed a garden culture with irrigation from the large rivers, the Tigris and Euphrates in Mesopotamia, and the Nile in Egypt. Irrigation and its regulation presupposed a systematic and organized husbandry out of which the large scale royal enterprise of the near east developed, as is shown most characteristically in the
SEIGNIORIAL PROPRIETORSHIP

New Empire of Thebes. The military campaigns of the Assyrian and Babylonian kings, which they undertook with their masses of retainers going back to the men’s house system, were primarily man hunts for the purpose of securing the human material for building canals and bringing stretches of the desert under tillage.¹

The king retained control of water regulations, but required for its exercise an organized bureaucracy. The agricultural and irrigation bureaucracies of Egypt and Mesopotamia, the foundation of which is thus economic, are the oldest officialdom in the world; it remains throughout its history an adjunct of the king’s personal economic enterprise. The individual officials were slaves, or dependents of the king, or even soldiers, and were often branded to prevent escape. The tax administration of the king was based on payments in kind, which in Egypt were stored up in warehouses from which the king supported his officials and laborers. Such a provision is the oldest form of official salary.

The result of the system as a whole was to place the population in a servile relation to the prince. This relation found expression in the obligatory services of all the dependents and the joint liability of the village for the burdens imposed, and finally in the principle designated under the Ptolemies as ἵδια. Under it the individual peasant was not only bound to the soil but to his village as well, and was in fact an outlaw if he could not prove his ἵδια. The system obtains not only in Egypt but in Mesopotamia as well and also in Japan, where from the seventh to the tenth centuries we find the くぶん・てん system. In the one case as in the other, the position of the peasant corresponds throughout to that of the member of the Russian mir.

Out of the obligatory services of the subject population
arose gradually the money economy centering in the prince. This development also might take various courses. One was through an individual economy with production and trade carried on by the prince; or, the prince made use of the labor power politically subject to him to produce goods not only for his own use but also for the market, as was the case in Egypt and Babylonia. Trade and production for the market would be carried on auxiliary to a large household, with no separation between household and industrial establishment. This is the type of economic organization which Rodbertus has designated as "oikos-economy."

This oikos-economy would again be the initial stage in various lines of development. One of these is the Egyptian system of grain banks. The Pharaoh possessed grain warehouses scattered over the land, to which the peasant delivered up not only his obligatory payments in kind but his whole production; against these the king could draw checks which he could put into use as money. Another possibility was the development of royal taxation in money, which however, presupposes a considerable permeation of the use of money into private economic relations, as well as a considerable development of production and a general market within the country; all these conditions were fulfilled in Ptolemaic Egypt. The system encountered difficulties, in view of the then state of development of administrative technique, in the preparation of a budget. Consequently, the ruler generally shifted the risk of the computation on to other shoulders, by one of three methods. Either he farmed out the collection of taxes to adventurers or officials, or he delegated it directly to soldiers, who paid themselves out of the receipts, or finally, he gave over the task to landed proprietors. The placing of the tax collection in private hands was a consequence of the lack of
a dependable administrative machine, which again goes back to moral unreliability in the official personnel.

The practise of farming out taxes to adventurers also developed on the largest scale in India. Every such zamindar has a tendency to develop into a landed proprietor. The recruiting of soldiers is also given over to contractors called jagirdar, who have to provide a certain quota irrespective of the elements of which it is composed; these also strive to become large landholders. Such proprietors are akin to the feudal baron living in full independence upward and downward, in a position analogous to that of Wallenstein, who also had to furnish recruits. When the ruler turns taxation over to officials, he fixes by agreement a definite sum; any surplus belongs to the official, who also has to pay the administrative staff. This is the system of the earlier mandarin administration in China, as well as of the satrap organization of the ancient east. With the transition to modern taxation policies, the Chinese statistics showed a sudden surprising increase in the population, which the mandarins had purposely understated. The third possibility under the head of a money economy centered in the prince, is the delegation of taxation to soldiers. This is a recourse of state bankruptcy and is done when the prince is unable to pay the soldiers. Resort to this device accounts for the transformation in the affairs of the Caliphate under the dominance of Turkish soldiers from the tenth century on. The soldiers develop into a military nobility because the central government no longer has, in fact, control over taxation, and extricates itself by turning the function over to the army.

These three forms of individualization of the originally political functions of securing money and recruits—centering them in private contractors, officials, or soldiers—became the basis of the oriental feudalism which developed
upon the disintegration of the money economy in consequence of the technical incompetence of the state to administer taxation through its own officials. The result is a secondary, rationalized agrarian communism, with joint responsibility of the peasant communities to the tax farmer, official, or army, and with common tillage and attachment to the soil. The contrast with the western system comes out clearly in the fact that in the east no demesne economy (*Fronhofwirtschaft*) arose, the exaction of forced payments dominating. A further feature is the liability of collapse into a barter economy on the appearance of the least difficulty in transforming the payments in kind of the peasants into money. In such an event an oriental political system falls back with extraordinary facility from the condition of an apparently highly developed culture into one of primitive barter economy.

As a fourth and last method of realizing a royal income, we find the delegation of functions to chieftains or landed proprietors. Thus the prince avoids the problem of an administrative organization. He shifts the raising of the taxes, and on occasion also that of recruits, upon already existent agencies of a private character. This is what happened in Rome when in the imperial period the civilization extended inland from the sea-coast and the country became transformed from a union of primarily maritime towns into a territorial empire. The inland knew only manorial economy without the use of money. The functions of raising taxes and recruits were now imposed upon it, whereupon the large landed proprietors, the *possessores*, become the dominant class down to the time of Justinian. The dependent population over which they rule enables them to furnish the taxes, while the imperial administrative system has not expanded in keeping with the growth of the empire itself. On the side of administra-
tive technique, this situation is distinguished by the fact that alongside the *municipia* appear the *territoria*, at the head of which stand the landed barons, responsible to the state for taxes and recruits. Out of this condition developed the colonate in the west, while in the east the latter is as old as the ἀπα. Under Diocletian this fundamental principle was extended to the empire as a whole. Every person was included in a territorial taxation unit which he was not permitted to leave. The head of such a district is generally a territorial lord, as the center of gravity of the economic and political life has shifted from the sea-coast to the land.

A special case of this development is the appearance of colonial proprietorship. Originally the interest in the winning of colonies is purely fiscal in character,—colonial capitalism. The objective, pecuniary exploitation, was achieved through the conquerer making the subject natives responsible for taxes in the form of money or the delivery of products, especially food stuffs and spices. The state generally transferred the exploitation of the colonies to a commercial company,—for example, the British and Dutch East India companies. Since the native chieftains are made the intermediaries of the joint liability they are transformed into territorial lords, and the originally free peasantry into their serfs or dependents bound to the land. Attachment to the soil with feudal obligations and communal tillage, with the right and duty of redistributing the land, all appear. Another form of the development of colonial proprietorship is the individual allotment of land by an overlord. The type of this is the *encomienda* in Spanish South America. The *encomienda* was a feudal grant with the right of imposing on the Indians compulsory services, payments, or labor dues, and in this form it persisted to the beginning of the 19th century.
In contrast with the oriental system of individualizing political prerogatives on fiscal grounds and in relation to a money economy, stands the product economy of the western feudal system and that of Japan, with the development of feudal proprietorship through enfeoffment. The ordinary purpose of the feudal system is the provision of a mounted soldiery through the granting of land and seigniorial rights to persons who are in a position to take over the services of vassals. It is met with in two forms, according as the proprietary power is granted as a fief or as a benefice.

For enfeoffment with benefice the organization of Turkish feudalism is characteristic. There was no recognition of a permanent individual proprietorship but only grants for life and in consideration of service in war. The grant was evaluated according to its yield, and proportioned to the rank of the family and to the military service of the recipient. As it was not hereditary, the son of the grantee succeeded only in case he could show specific military services. The Sublime Porte regulated all details as a sort of supreme feudal bureau, after the manner of the Frankish major domo.

This system is akin to that which originally obtained in Japan. After the 10th century Japan went over from the ku-bun-den system to one based on the benefice principle. The Shogun, a vassal and commander-in-chief of the emperor, with the aid of his bureau (ba-ku-fu) evaluated the land according to its yield in rice and granted it in benefices to his vassals the daimios, who in turn re-granted it to their ministerials, the samurai. Later, the inheritance of fiefs became established. However, the original dependence upon the Shogun persisted in the form of the latter’s control over the administration of the daimios, who in turn supervised the operations of their vassals.
The Russian feudal system is nearer to the European. In Russia, fiefs (*pomjestje*) were granted on consideration of certain obligatory services to the czar and the assumption of tax obligations. The recipients of grants had to assume the position of military officers and civil officials, a specification which was first set aside by Catherine II. The transformation of the tax administration from the land to the poll basis under Peter the Great led to the result that the land holder became answerable for taxes in proportion to the number of souls on his holding, determined through periodical surveys. The results of this system for the agricultural organization as a whole have already been described (pp. 17 ff.).

Next to Japan, the medieval occident is the region which developed feudalism in the highest purity. Conditions in the later Roman empire operated as a preparation, especially as to land tenure, which already had a half feudal character. The land rights of the Germanic chieftains fused into the Roman situation. The extent and significance of land holding was extraordinarily increased through the clearing and conquest of land—the victorious armies had to be fitted out with land—and finally through "commendation" on a large scale. The peasant who found himself without property, or who was no longer in a position to equip himself for military service, was compelled by the advance of military technique to place himself in the *obsequium* of an economically more powerful person. A further influence was the extensive transfers of land to the church. The decisive condition, however, was the invasion of the Arabs and the necessity of opposing an army of Frankish horsemen to that of Islam. Charles Martel undertook an extensive secularization of church property with a view to establishing, with the benefits created out of
the seized tracts, a tremendous army of vassal knights, the members of which had to equip themselves as heavily armed horsemen. Finally, besides the land, it became the custom to grant as fiefs political offices and privileges.
CHAPTER IV

THE MANOR

The inner development of seigniorial proprietorship, especially of the occidental manor, was conditioned, in the first place, by political and social class relations. The power of the lord was composed of three elements, first, land holding (territorial power) second, possession of men (slavery) and third, appropriation of political rights, through usurpation or through enfeoffment; the last applies especially to judicial authority, which became far the most important single force in connection with the development in the west.

Everywhere the lords strove to secure "immunity" (immunitas) as against the political power above them. They forbade the officials of the prince to come upon their territory, or if they permitted it the official had to come directly to the lord himself for the performance of his mission on behalf of the political authority, such as collection of feudal dues or serving of military summons. With this negative aspect of immunity is connected a positive aspect. At least a part of the immediate exercise of rights taken away from the officials of the state became the prerogative of the holder of the immunity. In this form immunity exists not merely in the Frankish empire but before it in those of Babylonia, ancient Egypt and Rome.

Decisive is the question of appropriation of judicial authority. The holder of land and of men everywhere struggled for this prerogative. In the Moslem Caliphate he did

65
not succeed; the judicial authority of the general government was maintained unimpaired. In contrast, the land holders of the west usually succeeded in their endeavors. In this part of the world the lord originally had unlimited judicial power over his slaves, while free persons were subject only to the jurisdiction of a popular court. For unfree persons the criminal process of the official court was final, though it was early true that participation by the lord could not be avoided. This distinction between free and unfree became effaced in the course of time, the power of the lord over slaves being weakened and that over free men being strengthened. From the 10th to the 13th century, the public courts increasingly interfered in the determination of cases affecting slaves; their criminal cases were often tried before the popular court. Especially from the 8th to the 12th century, the position of the slaves steadily improved. With the cessation of the great movements of conquest the slave trade declined and it became difficult to supply the slave markets. At the same time the need for slaves increased greatly, in consequence of the clearing of forests. To secure and retain slaves, the lord had progressively to improve their conditions of life. In contrast with the Latin possessor, he was primarily a warrior and not a farmer, and found himself hardly in a position to supervise his unfree dependents, so that on that ground also their situation improved. On the other hand (cf. page 63) his power over the free population was strengthened by changes in military technique, and resulted in the extension of the household authority of the lord, originally confined to the familia, over the whole extent of his territorial dominion.

There is a correspondence between free and unfree conditions of tenure and free and unfree persons. In this connection we must consider the precaria and the beneficium.
The *precaria* is a lease relation based on a documentary application, and entered into by free persons of every class. Originally it was terminable at will, but soon evolved into a contract renewable every five years but in fact for life and usually hereditary. The *beneficium* is an enfeoffment in exchange for services, originally of any form whatever, or under some conditions in exchange for payments. Later the *beneficium* differentiates into that of the free vassal, who bound himself to feudal services, and that of the free man who bound himself to service on the lord’s demesne. In addition to these forms of lease there was a third, the land settlement lease, by means of which the overlord was in the habit of granting land for clearing against a fixed tax and into the hereditary possession of the grantee. This was the so-called quit-rent (*Erzins*), which later made its way into the towns also.

Over against these three forms, all of which related to land situated outside the village community (*Gutsverband*), is the manorial estate (*Fronhof*) with the land dependent upon it, of which the *Capitulare de villis* of Charlemagne gives a clear picture.² Within the manor was first the seigniorial land, or demesne, including the *terra salica*, which was managed directly by the lord’s officials and the *terra indominicata*, seigniorial holdings in free peasant villages; and second the holdings or hide land of the peasants. The latter fell into *mansi serviles* with unlimited services and *mansi ingenuiles* with limited services, according as hand labor or team work had to be rendered throughout the year or only in connection with tillage and harvest. The payments in kind and the whole product of the demesne—(called *fiscus* in the case of royal holdings) were laid up in a storehouse and used for the needs of the army and the seigniorial household, any surplus being sold.
A decided shift in the relations between free and unfree persons resulted from the establishment of territorially bounded limits of jurisdiction of the landlord and judge (socage districts or sokes—Bannbezirke). An obstacle to this at first was the scattered condition of the holdings; for example, the monastery of Fulda held some thousand scattered farms. From the early middle ages on, the holders of judicial and proprietary rights strove to consolidate their holdings. This was accomplished in part through the development of "real-dependency," the lord refusing to grant a particular piece of land unless the grantee submitted at the same time to personal suzerainty. On the other hand, there developed the manorial law, in consequence of the fact that within the jurisdiction and seigniorial farm free and unfree persons were thrown together. Manorial law reached its highest development in the 13th century. While originally the lord possessed judicial authority only over the unfree members of his familia and outside of this exercised authority over the territory of his "immunity" only on the basis of a royal grant, on his own holdings he had to deal with persons of various classes who were under obligation to render exactly the same services. Under these circumstances the free persons were able to compel the lord to join with all his dependents in forming a manorial court in which the dependent persons functioned as magistrates. Thus the lord lost the power of arbitrary control over the obligations of his dependents and these became traditionalized (similarly to the way in which the soldier councils tried to set themselves up on behalf of soldiers against officers in the German revolution). On the other hand, from the 10th to the 12th century was being evolved the principle that by the mere fact of a land grant the recipient became ipso jure subject to the judicial authority of the lord of the land.
The consequence of this development was the modification of the freedom on the one hand and servility on the other, of the dependent population. Modification of free status was politically conditioned by the judicial authority of the lord in connection with the unarmed state of the free men, which was due to economic causes, while the modification of unfree status resulted from the greatly increased demand for peasants for clearing the forests and in Germany for the colonization eastward. Both these circumstances enabled the unfree to escape the authority of the lords and put the latter in competition among themselves in granting favorable conditions of life to their dependents. In addition, the slave trade, and hence the new supply of slaves, had ceased, and the available servile persons had to be treated with consideration. In the same direction of elevating the dependent classes worked the political situation of the lords. The lord was not a farmer, but rather a professional soldier, and was not in a position to conduct agriculture effectively. He could not budget his affairs on the basis of a fluctuating income and was disposed toward a traditional fixation of the dues of his dependents and hence toward meeting them on a contractual footing.

Thus the medieval peasantry became strongly differentiated within and held together through the power of the lords and the manorial law. Alongside the dependent classes, there were free peasants outside the community circle of the lord’s estate, on freehold land subject only to quit-rents, and hence essentially private owners. Over such persons the lord had no judicial authority. These free-holders never disappeared entirely, but were found in considerable numbers in only a few places. One of these is Norway, where feudalism never developed; they were called “odal” peasants, in contrast with the landless, un-
free classes dependent upon them. Another such locality is the marsh lands of the North Sea,—Frisia and Ditmarsh; similarly in parts of the Alps, Tyrol, and Switzerland, and in England. Finally there are the "mailed peasantry" of many parts of Russia, who were individual proprietors; to them were added later the Cossacks as a plebeian soldier class with the social position of small farmers.

As a consequence of the development of feudalism, when the landed nobility began to collect the taxes, there arose exemption from taxation of the nobility itself, with liability to taxation on the part of the unarmed peasantry. To increase the military power of the territory, the French feudal law set up the principle of *nulle terre sans seigneur*, intended originally to increase the number of benefices as a guarantee of military strength; on the same principle rested the compulsory reinfeofations imposed by the German king in connection with every grant of land. This differentiation as regards liability to taxation formed the basis of the policy of the princes in maintaining the peasant holdings. They could not consent to having the hide land alienated from the peasant, as the area subject to taxation was thereby decreased. Thus the territorial princes adopted the system of protecting the peasantry and forbade the nobility to confiscate the peasant holdings.

Several economic results also followed: 1. The large household of the lord and small household of the peasant subsisted side by side. The dues of the peasants originally served only to satisfy the requirements of the lord and were readily fixed by tradition. The peasants had no interest in making the soil yield more than was necessary for their own maintenance and for covering their obligatory payments, and the lord had as little interest in increasing the payments, as long as he did not produce for a market. The mode of life of the lord was but little different from
that of the peasant. Thus "the walls of his stomach set the limits to his exploitation of the peasant," as Karl Marx observed. The traditionally fixed dues of the peasant class were protected by manorial law and by community of interest. 2. Since on account of the taxes involved, the state was interested in maintaining the peasantry, the jurists took a hand, especially in France. The Roman law did not generally, as commonly supposed, work toward the disintegration of the old Germanic peasant law, but on the contrary was applied in favor of the peasantry, against the nobility. 3. The attachment of the peasantry to the soil. This followed, in so far as personal fealty arose, or in consequence of the tax obligation, when the lord became answerable for their taxes; to an increasing degree also the nobility established it by usurpation. The peasant could withdraw from the community only by forfeiting his land and by securing another man to take his place.

4. The rights of the peasant in the land became extraordinarily diversified. In the case of unfree tenants the lord generally had the right to resume the holding at death. If he renounced the exercise of this right, having no tenants to spare, he at least assessed special dues, the heriot, etc. Free tenants either held leases terminable at any time or were copy-holders with permanent rights. In both cases the legal position was clear, but the state often interfered to forbid the termination of grants—the so-called tenant right. Among the dependents, who as freemen had originally commended themselves to a lord, arose an attachment to the lord and of the lord to them in return. The lord could not simply dismiss the villein, but as early as the time of the Sachsenspiegel was compelled to pay him a small capital in money.

5. The lords regularly appropriated to themselves the common mark and often the common pasture or almend as
well. Originally, the chieftain was head of the mark organization. Out of the lord’s right of supervision evolved in the course of the Middle Ages a feudal proprietorship over the mark and the common pasture of the village. The peasant wars of the 16th century in Germany were waged primarily against this usurpation, and not against excessive payments and dues. The peasants demanded free pasture and free woodland, which could not be granted as the land had become too scarce, and fatal deforestation would have resulted, as in Sicily. 6. The lord had established in his own favor numerous “socage rights” or banalités (Bannrechte) such as a compulsion on the part of the peasant to grind grain at the lord’s mill, to use his bakery, his oven, etc. These monopolies arose, to begin with, without compulsion; for only the lord was in a position to erect mills or other institutions. Later, oppressive force was used to compel their utilization. Besides these the lord possessed numerous banalités in connection with hunting and the transportation of goods. They grew out of obligations to the chieftain, transferred to the later judicial overlord, and were exploited for economic ends.

The exploitation of the subjugated peasantry by the lords was carried out, with two exceptions, not by means of forced labor, but by making them into rent-payers. The only two exceptions in the world will be treated later, in connection with the development of capitalistic economy within the manor (cf. Chapter VI). The grounds for this method of exploitation were in the first place the traditionalism of the lords. They were too lacking in initiative to build up a business enterprise on a large scale into which the peasants would have fitted as labor force. In addition, as long as the cavalry was the core of the army, the lords were bound by their obligations as vassals and could not be spared for agriculture, while the peasant could not be
THE MANOR

spared for war. Moreover, the lord possessed no movable capital of his own, and preferred to transfer the risk of active operations to the peasant. Finally, there was in Europe the restriction of manorial law which bound the lords, while in Asia the latter could not rely on sufficient protection on going over to production for the market, since there was nothing corresponding to the Roman law at hand. Here there was no development at all of the demesne (Fronhof) or in-land, farmed by the lord.

The lords secured rentals, in numerous ways:
1. Through feudal dues, which the free peasant paid in goods, the servile one in labor. 2. Through fees on occasion of a change in tenant, enforced by the lord as a condition of the sale of the holding. 3. Fees in connection with inheritance and marriage, imposed as a condition of transmitting the land to heirs or for the privilege of letting the peasant’s daughter marry outside the lord’s jurisdiction. 4. Fees in connection with woodland and pasture, as for mast in the forest. 5. Indirect rents secured by imposing on the peasant transportation charges as well as the burden of building roads and bridges. The collection of all these fees and payments was carried out originally through the “villication” system which represents the type of manorial administration for south and west Germany as well as for France, and is everywhere the oldest form of feudal organization for the exploitation of land. This system presupposes the scattering of holdings. The lord sets over each of his widely separated holdings (Hufen) a villicus or bailiff, whose duty it is to collect the payments from his neighbors who are dependents of the lord, and to hold them to the performance of their obligations.
CHAPTER V

THE POSITION OF THE PEASANTS IN VARIOUS WESTERN COUNTRIES BEFORE THE ENTRANCE OF CAPITALISM

France.—Originally there were slaves (serfs) and half-free persons side by side. The slaves may be serfs de corps, subject to unlimited services, and over whom the lord has absolute authority short of life and death, or they may be serfs de mainmorte with limited service and the right of withdrawal; but the lord has the right of resuming disposal over the land on the death or removal of the tenant. The half-free peasants or villeins have the right of transferring their lands, and render fixed services or payments—the sign of an originally free status. These relations underwent extensive transformations as a result of two sets of circumstances. In the first place, the numbers of the servile population were notably reduced by wholesale emancipations as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. This took place contemporaneously and in connection with the introduction of money economy. It was in accord with the selfish interests of the lord, since free peasants could be made to bear much heavier burdens of dues.

A further cause was the origin of peasant unions. The village community organized itself as a corporation which assumed a joint obligation for the rents of the lord, in return for full autonomy in administration, which autonomy was also protected by the king. Both sides obtained an advantage from the arrangement: the lord because he
had only one debtor to deal with, and the peasants because their power was enormously increased. Temporarily, the unions were even summoned to the Estates General.

The nobility found the change the more convenient the more they evolved—in contrast with the Prussian Junkers of the time—into a courtier nobility, a class of rentiers living far from the land and no longer representing any organization for work, so that they were easily eliminated from the economic organization of the country in a single revolutionary night.

Italy.—The original agrarian organization was in this case changed at an early date through the buying up of the land by the townspeople, or expropriation of the occupiers in connection with political turmoil. The Italian towns early did away with personal servitude, limited the services and payments of the peasants and introduced cultivation on the shares, not originally with capitalistic designs but to cover the needs of the proprietors. The share tenants had to furnish the table supplies of the patricians, each being under obligation to supply a different sort of product. The movable capital was regularly furnished by the propertied townsman, who did not wish to employ his wealth in capitalistic agriculture. This system of share tenancy distinguished Italy and Southern France from other countries of Europe.

Germany.—Northwestern and southwestern Germany and the adjacent parts of northern France were the region especially characterized by the villication organization, with scattered holdings, referred to at the close of the preceding chapter. From this as a beginning the development of agricultural organization proceeded by very different courses in the southwest and the northwest. In southwest Germany the villication system disintegrated. The rights of the lord to the land, to personal fealty, and
the justiciary right, became transformed into a simple right to receive a rental, while only relatively few compulsory services and dues in connection with the transfer of inheritance remained as relics. The Rhenish or southwest German peasant thus became in fact his own master, able to sell his holding or transmit it to heirs. This came about primarily because manorial law developed its greatest power here and because holdings were extremely scattered; several land holders often lived in one village. Land holding, judicial authority, and liege-lordship were in different hands, and the peasant was able to play off one against the other. The chief gain which the land holders were able to secure in west and southwest Germany was the appropriation of large portions of the common mark, and to a much smaller extent, of the common pasture.

In northwest Germany the violation system was dissolved by the landholders. As soon as they saw a possibility of marketing their products they became interested in an increase in the income from the land and in securing holdings suited to production for the market. Consequently, at the time of the Sachsenspiegel, and even a little earlier, there were wholesale emancipations of the serfs. The land thus liberated was leased for definite periods to free renters called "Meier" whose property became hereditary under strong pressure from the state, which protected them against unexpected increases in rental. If the proprietor wished to evict a tenant, the state compelled him to secure another peasant, so that the tax revenue would not be decreased. The interest of the lords in large holdings led to a law of single inheritance, the lord forcing the assumption of the holding by an heir. As a rule the rent was paid in kind, while money payments took the place of the compulsory feudal services. In certain parts of Westphalia, serfdom had persisted, but only to the
THE POSITION OF THE PEASANTS

extent that the lord could resume a part of the inheritance on the death of the tenant. In the southeast,—Bavaria, the upper Palatinate and southern Wurttemberg—the property rights of the peasant were often insecure. A distinction was made between hereditary tenure (Erbstift) and non-hereditary (Leibgeding) and also between protected leases and unrestricted leases (Schutzlehen and Vollehen). The latter were only for life and permitted the lord to increase the payments at the death of a holder or to grant the holding to someone else. The lord himself usually stood out for the law of compulsory inheritance. The payments consisted of tithes, and fees on occasion of change of tenant. Their amount depended on the hereditary or non-hereditary character of the property. The labor dues were very moderate. Personal bondage was the rule down to the 18th century, but signified nothing beyond a very small and modest and variously limited obligatory payment to the personal overlord who was often separated from the lord of the land.

Eastern Germany showed, down to the 16th century, the most ideal legal position of the peasantry. The cultivators usually held the land on terms of a quit-rent, rendered no labor services, and were personally free. Relatively large masses of land were in the hands of nobles who from the beginning were endowed with large-hides, often three or four or more in a single village. Judicial authority and land holding were identified to a considerable extent. This peculiarity made it easier later to subject the tenants to compulsory services and to convert into large scale farms the holdings which the nobles managed directly.

In England, there were villains in gross who were serfs and villains regardant who were technically in a higher position; they were strictly attached to the soil but were members of a popular court. Manorial law
became very strong, making it difficult for the lords to oppress the peasants or increase their obligatory payments. The title to the land and the juridical authority were identified, and at the time of the Norman conquest unified districts were granted to vassals. But over the land holders stood a strong state, and the English kings possessed in their royal courts and trained jurists a power which put them in a position to protect the peasantry against the feudal landlords.
CHAPTER VI

CAPITALISTIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE MANOR

The manorial system, which arose under the pressure of a strong military interest in connection with the economic, and was originally directed toward using dependent land and dependent labor force to support an upper class life, showed a strong tendency to develop in a capitalistic direction. This tendency manifested itself in the two forms of the plantation and estate economy.

(A) THE PLANTATION

A plantation is an establishment with compulsory labor, producing garden products especially for the market. The plantation economy universally arose wherever the conduct of agriculture by a class of overlords as a result of conquest coincided with the possibility of intensive cultivation, and was especially characteristic of colonies. In modern times the plantation products have been sugar cane, tobacco, coffee, and cotton; in antiquity they were wine and oil. The course of development generally leads through a preliminary semi-plantation system. Here only the market is regulated and concentrated into one hand, while production is turned over to a servile class as compulsory labor, with joint liability of the community, attachment to the land, and payments to the owner of the semi-plantation, which is a colonizing corporation. This condition dominates in South America down to the revolution at the be-
ginning of the 19th century, and in the New England states down to the separation from the mother country. Plantations proper are found scattered over the world at large. Twice did the system reach a classical development; first, in the ancient Carthago-Roman plantations, and second in the negro plantations in the southern states of the Union during the 19th century. The plantation proper operates with disciplined servile labor. We do not find, as in the case of the manorial economy, a large estate and individual small holdings of the peasants side by side, but the servile population are herded together in barracks. The main difficulty of the enterprise lies in the recruiting of laborers. The workers have no families and do not reproduce themselves. The permanence of such plantations is therefore dependent upon slave hunts, either through war or through periodical raids on a large slave hunting territory such as Africa was for the negro traffic. The plantation of antiquity developed in Carthage, where it was scientifically described by Mago, as well as in the Latin literature by Cato, Varro, and Columella. A prerequisite for its existence is the possibility of obtaining slaves at all times in the market. The products of the Roman plantation are oil and wine. On the plantation we find side by side the *coloni* who are free small tenants, and the *servi* who are slaves. The *coloni* till the land in grain crops with stock and tools furnished them by the lord and hence constitute a labor force rather than a peasantry in the modern sense. The slaves are without families and without property and are herded together in barracks, combining dormitory, pesthouse, and cell for confinement against escape. Work goes forward under strict military routine, beginning with the answer to reveille in the morning, with march in closed ranks to and from work, and issue of clothing by a warehouse to which it must be returned.
The only exception is the _vilicus_ or inspector, who possesses a _peculium_ and is _contubernalis_, meaning that he is permitted to marry a slave woman and has the right to keep a certain amount of livestock on the lord’s pasture.

The hardest problem was that of keeping up the working population. As the natural increase through the promiscuous relations of the slaves was insufficient, an effort was made to stimulate the production of children by promising the slave women their freedom after the third birth. This measure proved vain because no life except prostitution awaited the freed women. The difficulties of the lord who maintained his dwelling in the town increased in view of the steady demand for slaves. Since the permanent supply of the slave market ceased to be possible with the termination of the great wars after the beginning of the imperial period, the slave barracks were doomed to disappear. The shrinkage of the slave market could have no other effect than that which the failure of coal mining would have on modern industry. The Roman plantation changed in character for the further reason that the center of gravity of the ancient culture shifted inland, while the slave barracks were bound to the neighborhood of the coast and the possibility of commerce. With this shifting of the center of gravity to the land, where traditional manorial economy dominated and corresponding conditions as to transportation obtained, and with the peace brought by the Empire, it was necessary to go over to another system. In the period of decline of the Empire, we therefore find the slaves, insofar as they are concerned with the agricultural work, provided with families and quartered in the _mansus serviles_, while on the other hand the colons are subjected to labor services and no longer merely to rent payments; that is, the two classes converge. The _possessor_ class dominates the economic and political policy of the empire. Money econ-
omy and town life decline; the conditions approach the stage of barter economy.

Similar difficulties appeared in the southern states of the North American union. The plantation system arose here when the great inventions in the field of cotton utilization were made. In the last third of the 18th century were invented the cotton spinning machine (1768–69) and the loom (1785) in England, and in the United States the cotton gin for separating the fiber from the seed (1793); the latter first made possible effective utilization of the cotton crop. Thereupon developed the wholesale marketing of cotton which displaced linen and wool production. However, the mechanical utilization of the product led to entirely opposite effects in Europe and America. In the former, cotton gave the impulse to the organization of a free labor force, the first factories developing in Lancashire in England, while in America the result was slavery.

In the 16th and 17th centuries, efforts were made to use the Indians for mass production, but they soon proved themselves unserviceable, so recourse was had to the importation of negro slaves. But these, without families, did not reproduce themselves, and as the slave trade was forbidden by one after another of the New England states, great scarcity of negroes ensued after a single generation—by the end of the 18th century. The utilization of poor emigrants, who sought to pay the still very considerable costs of the ocean passage by plantation labor, proved insufficient. The next expedient was that of breeding negroes, which was carried on so systematically in many southern states that negro-breeding and negro-consuming states could be distinguished. At the same time there broke out a struggle for land for the application of negro labor. The system required cheap land and the possibility of constantly bringing new land under tillage. If the
labor force was dear the land had to be cheap, and negro culture was exploitative (Raubbau) because the negroes could not be trusted with modern implements and used only the most primitive tools. Thus began the struggle between the states with free and those with unfree labor. The peculiar phenomenon was presented that the complementary productive factor "slave" alone yielded a rent, while the land yielded none at all. Politically, this situation meant a struggle between the capitalistic classes of the north and the plantation aristocracy of the south. On the side of the former stood the free farmers, and on that of the planters, the non-slave owning whites of the south, the "poor white trash"; the latter dreaded the freeing of the negroes on grounds of class prestige and economic competition.  

Slavery is profitable only when it is handled with the most rigid discipline associated with ruthless exploitation. Further requisites are the possibility of cheap provision and feeding of the slaves and extensive mining-out cultivation, which again presupposes an unlimited supply of land. When slaves became costly and celibacy could no longer be maintained for them, the ancient plantation system fell, and with it slavery. Christianity did not exert in this case the influence commonly ascribed to it; it was rather the Stoic emperors who began to protect the family and introduced marriage among the slaves. In North America, the Quakers were especially active in the abolition of slavery. Its doom was sealed, however, from the moment when (1787) Congress [sic] prohibited the importation of slaves beginning with the year 1808, and when the available land threatened to become inadequate. The transformation of the slave economy into a share tenant system which actually resulted, would apparently have come to pass without the war of secession which was unleashed
through the withdrawal of the southern states from the Union. The mismanagement of the northern victors, who even gave the negroes a privileged position, resulted, after the withdrawal of the troops, in a universal exclusion of the negroes from the suffrage and the establishment of a strong caste distinction between whites and blacks. The negroes are share tenants bound by debt. Since the railroads are dependent upon the white land owners, the negroes can be excluded from commercial opportunities and their freedom of movement exists only on paper. Thus the emancipation brought about in a disorderly way the condition which must have become established spontaneously and gradually as soon as the factor "land" was exhausted.

(B) Estate Economy

By an estate we understand a large-scale capitalistic establishment directed to production for the market, which may be either exclusively devoted to stock raising or exclusively to tillage, or may combine the two. If the central interest is extensive stock raising, the establishment may operate without capital as in the Roman Campagna. Here dominated the famous latifundia whose beginnings apparently go back to the baronial feuds of the theocratic state. The great Roman noble families were landed proprietors of the Campagna; complementary to them are renters who use their numerous herds primarily in the furnishing of milk to Rome. The cultivators, on the other hand were expropriated and removed.

Large scale stock raising, with little use of capital, dominates also in the Pampas of South America and in Scotland. In Scotland again the cultivators were expropriated. After the destruction of Scottish independence at the battle
of Culloden in 1746, the English policy treated the old clan chieftains as "landlords" and the clansmen as their tenants. The result was that the landlords assumed the prerogative of owners in the course of the 18th and 19th centuries, drove off the tenants and converted the land into hunting grounds or sheep pastures.

Intensive capitalistic pastoral economy developed in England with the growth of the English woolen industry and its promotion by the English kings. After the 14th century, the kings, led by the possibility of levying taxes, granted favors first to exporters of raw wool and later to wool manufacturers producing for home consumption. Thus began the transformation of the common pastures into sheep walks—the "enclosure" movement—by the landlords, who regarded themselves as proprietors of the common. The proprietors bought out the cultivators by wholesale or came to an agreement with them, on the strength of which they became large farmers and took up pastoral economy. The result of this process, which went on from the 15th to the 17th century and against which in the 18th century there was an agitation among the people as well as among the social writers, was the origin of a capitalistic class of large renters who leased land with a minimum of labor force and for the most part pursued the raising of sheep for the woolen industry.

Under another form of estate economy the interest centers in the production of grain. An example is England in the 150 years before the repeal of the corn laws under Robert Peel. Down to that time small farmers were displaced on an extensive scale to make way for a more effective cultivation by renters, under a system of protective duties and export bounties. Thus sheep farming and grain farming existed separately side by side, or were combined. This condition lasted until the protective duties
on grain were abolished in consequence of the agitations of the Puritans and the English labor class. After this, grain culture was no longer profitable, and the labor force employed in it was released. The English low lands were extensively depopulated while in Ireland the small tenant agriculture persisted on the huge estates of the landlords of that time.

The complete opposite of England is afforded by Russia. Here in the 16th century there were indeed slaves but the great mass of the peasantry consisted of free share tenants who gave half of their crop to the landlords. The latter possessed the right of terminating the lease at the end of any year, but seldom exercised it. Since, however, the landlords preferred a fixed money rent to the fluctuating payments in kind, they placed the peasantry on the basis of a fixed money rental (obrok). At the same time they attempted to extend the compulsory labor services, to which originally the slaves alone were subject, to the free tenants also; in this, the monastic holdings, which in general were the most economically farmed, took the lead. The growth of money economy resulted in throwing the peasants heavily into debt. Only a single crop failure was necessary for this result, and the freedom of movement of the peasant was lost. From the end of the 16th century, the Czars placed their power and that of the whole administrative organization of the empire at the service of the nobility. The latter, however, was threatened in its very existence because the great landlords were able to give the cultivators more favorable terms of lease, so that the lower nobility faced a scarcity of tenants. The czaristic policy sought to protect them against the great nobles. This purpose was served by the ukase of the Czar Boris Godunov in the year 1597; the leases were declared non-terminable, the peasants being in effect attached to the
soil; they were also registered in a tax roll, which again led to a policy of protection of the peasantry on the part of the lords. With the change to a poll tax system under Peter the Great, the distinction between free peasantry and serfs disappeared. Both were attached to the soil and over both the landlord had unlimited power. The peasant had no more rights than a Roman slave. In 1713, the right of knouting was expressly granted to the lords; the inspector of the estate joined the young persons in marriage according to fiat, and the amount of the payments was fixed at the will of the proprietors, as was the levying of recruits. They had the authority to banish an obstreperous peasant to Siberia and could resume the holding of any peasant at any time, although many of the latter succeeded in concealing their possessions and achieving great wealth. There was no court in which the peasant could seek justice. He was exploited by the lord as a source of rent or of labor power, the former in central Russia and the latter in the west, where exportation was possible. These were the conditions under which the Russian peasantry entered the 19th century.

In Germany, there is a sharp distinction between the west, where leasing of land persisted, and the east and Austria, where demesne economy predominated. Originally, the state of the peasants was much the same in the two regions, or even more favorable in the east. In the east there was originally no personal servitude and it had the best land law of Germany. The peasants were settled on large-hides (Grosshufen), of the extent of the old royal hide; eviction was forbidden by the state from the time of Frederick William I of Prussia and Maria Theresa, because the peasant was a tax payer and a recruit. In Hanover and Westphalia also, eviction was forbidden, but on the Rhine and in Southwest Germany it was per-
mitted. None the less, the eviction of peasants took on large proportions in the east and did not in the west and south. The reasons are various. After the Thirty Years' War, which fearfully decimated the peasant population, the holdings were reassigned in the west, while in the east they were consolidated into estates. In the west and south, intermingled holdings predominated, while in the east were the unified large farms of the nobles. But in the west and south, even where large, unified holdings of the nobility were the rule, no large estates developed. For here land-holding, personal suzerainty, and judicial authority were separate and the peasant could play one against the other, while in the east they were identified as an indivisible fief. This circumstance made it easy to evict the tenant or subject him to compulsory services, although originally only the magistrate and not the landlord had a right to these. Finally, there was less church land in the east than in the west, and the church traditionally showed more consideration to the peasant than did the lay proprietor. Even where in the east large holdings were in the hands of the church, as they were in Austria in the hands of the monasteries, the ecclesiastics managed more economically than the lay holders, but did not have the same interest in going over to export agriculture.

Thus the market relations played a decisive part in this contrast between the east and the west. Large estates arose where the local market could not absorb the available mass of grain production and it was exported abroad. But since a merchant in Hamburg was not in a position to negotiate with the individual peasant in the Mark or in Silesia, the transition to estate farming was inevitable. The peasant in the south and west, on the contrary, had a town in the vicinity, where he could market his products. Hence the landlord could use him as a source of rent,
while in the east he could only be treated as labor power. With the decrease in the frequency of towns on the map, there is an increase in the frequency of estates. Finally, an additional force favoring the survival of the old time cultivators in the south and west was the power of manorial law, and the greater degree of traditionalism associated with it. It is even asserted that the Peasant War in west and south Germany had a part in this development. The war ended with the defeat of the peasantry, but operated as a lost general strike and meant the handwriting on the wall for the proprietors. But England had its peasant war in the 14th century and in spite of it the expropriation of the peasantry took place; and if Poland and east Germany had no peasant insurrections the fact is that these, like all revolutions, did not break out where the condition of the oppressed class was worst, that is in our case where the conditions of the peasant class were worst, but rather where the revolutionaries have attained a certain degree of self-consciousness.

The technical expression for the relation of the peasant to the landlord is, in the east, not servility (Leibeigenchaft) but hereditary dependency (Erbuntertänigkeit). The peasant is an appendage of the estate and is bought and sold with the latter. In Germany east of the Elbe, there existed alongside of the peasantry of the princely domains (which were very extensive, amounting in Mecklenburg to half the total land area), the peasantry of the private landlords. The proprietary rights varied widely. The German peasant originally lived under very favorable relations, holding his land subject to a quit-rent. In contrast, the rights of the Slavs were very insecure. This led to the result that conditions became worse for the Germans where the Slavs were in the majority. Thus it came about that in the east in the 18th century the mass of the peas-
antry lived under the law of serfdom (**lassitisch Recht**). The peasant had become an appurtenance of the estate. He possessed no secure hereditary title, nor even always a title for life, although he was already bound to the soil and could not leave the estate without the consent of the lord or without securing someone in his place. He was subject to *Gesindeszwangdienst*, similar to serjeanty in English feudal law; that is, he had not only to perform obligatory services but his children also had to go into the house of the lord as servants, even when the lord himself was only a renter of domain land. Any serf (**Lassit**) could be compelled by the lord to take up a holding. Finally, the lords assumed the right of increasing the labor dues and displacing peasants at will. Here, however, they came into sharp conflict with the princely power. The rulers of east Germany began to protect the peasantry; they feared, particularly in Austria and Prussia, the destruction of the existing peasant class, not out of love for the peasant as such, but to maintain his class, which was their source of taxes and recruits. It is true that the protection of the peasant was instituted only where a strong state was present; in Mecklenburg, in Swedish Hither-Pomerania and in the county of Holstein the large unified estate economy was able to develop.

About 1890 an estate in the east Elbe country was a seasonal affair. The field work was unequally distributed throughout the year and in the winter the field hands took to auxiliary occupations, the disappearance of which later was a main source of labor difficulties. The estate had male and female servants for the regular farm labor throughout the year. In addition there was a second category of workers on the land, the "inst-folk." These were married persons living in their own homes, but in Silesia assembled in barracks. They worked on the basis of an
annual contract terminable by either party. Their pay consisted either in a fixed allowance of products with the addition of some money, or in a variable share of the product, including the proceeds of the harvest and of the mill. Threshing was done by hand and lasted through the winter, and in general the sixth or tenth sheaf was given to the "instman." The instmen had a monopoly on this work; the estate owner could not transfer it to other persons. In addition, as long as the three-field rotation persisted, they had one strip in each of the three fields, which was tilled for them by the proprietor, and also had gardens in which they raised potatoes. They received little or no money wages, but fed swine for the market and also marketed any surplus from their share in the crops. Thus they were interested in high prices for hogs and grain, which gave them a common economic interest with the lord, whereas an agricultural labor proletariat paid in money would have desired low prices for these things. The stock and heavy implements were furnished by the lord, but the instmen had to provide flail and scythe.

The lord required additional laborers at harvest time and employed wandering laborers—the so-called "Landsberg harvesters"—or he hired men from the villages. In addition, the instman himself, unless he would see his wages reduced, had to furnish at least one additional hand during the summer and probably a second at harvest time, for which he had recourse to his wife and children, so that the family as a whole stood in a sort of labor partnership with the lord. Contractual freedom in the industrial sense obtained only with the migratory workers and the instmen of the dependent farmers, whose condition was found unamenable to "regulation" (cf. below). However, there had been for them a fundamental change since the time of hereditary serfdom, since at that period the estate pro-
prietor had operated without capital of his own, with the aid of the hand and team work of the peasants; hence no separation of the worker from his tools had then taken place.

(C) The Dissolution of the Manorial System

The estate economy was similarly organized in Poland and White Russia, export countries which brought their grain to the world market through boat traffic on the Vistula and the Memel. In interior Russia, the lords preferred to lease the land to the peasants, who thus retained control of their own labor power.

The complicated mutual dependence of the proprietor and the peasant, the exploitation of the latter by the former as a source of rent or as labor force, and finally the tying up of the land through both, was the cause which brought about the disintegration of the manorial organization of agriculture. This change meant the personal emancipation of the peasant and agricultural laborer, with freedom of movement, the freeing of the soil from the communal organization of the peasants and from the rights of the overlord, and reciprocally the freeing of manorial land from the encumbrance of peasant rights where they existed, i.e., where the rulers followed a policy of protecting the peasantry. Liberation could take place in different ways. First, through expropriation of the peasants, who became free but landless, as in England, Mecklenburg, Hither-Pomerania, and parts of Silesia. Second, through expropriation of the overlord, who lost his land while the peasant became free with possession of the land. This occurred in France and southwest Germany, and in general in almost every region where the lords exploited the land by leasing, and also in Poland, as a result of Russian interference. Finally, it might come about through
a combination of the two methods, the peasant becoming free with a part of the land. This was the course of events where an estate form of organization existed, which could not be easily displaced. Thus the Prussian state was compelled to lean upon its landed proprietors because it was too poor to replace them with salaried officials.

The breakdown of the manorial agricultural system made possible also the abolition of the hereditary judicial authority of the proprietors, the various socage rights or banalités, and finally all the political and religious restrictions upon the land in the way of obligatory infeudation or the so-called mortmain. Abolition of these incumbrances might take various forms: 1. Amortization laws relating to church lands, as in Bavaria. 2. Abolition or limitation of the fideicommissum, especially in England. 3. Finally, abolition of the fiscal privileges of the proprietary estates, such as freedom from taxation and similar political privileges, as was accomplished in Prussia by the tax legislation of the sixties of the 19th century. Such were the different possibilities. The result depended on the question who was to be expropriated, the landlord or the peasant, and if the latter whether with or without the land.

The motivating force in connection with the breakdown of the manorial system operated in the first place from within the manor and was primarily economic in character. The immediate cause was the development of market operations and market interests on the part of both lords and peasants, and the steady growth of the market for agricultural products in connection with money economy. However, these considerations either failed to bring about the dissolution of the manorial system, or if they did it was done in accordance with the interests of the lords who expropriated the tenants and used the land to establish large farming enterprises.
In general, it was necessary for other interests to come in from without. One such was the commercial interest of the newly established bourgeoisie of the towns, who promoted the weakening or dissolution of the manor because it limited their own market opportunities. The town and its economic policies on the one side and the manor on the other were antagonistic, not so much in the sense that one represented a barter economy and the other a purely money economy, for the manors produced to a large extent for the market, without the opportunities of which it would have been impossible for the landlord to raise large money payments from the peasants. Through the mere fact of the compulsory services and payments of the tenants, the manorial system set limits to the purchasing power of the rural population because it prevented the peasants from devoting their entire labor power to production for the market and from developing their purchasing power. Thus the interests of the bourgeoisie of the towns were opposed to those of the landed proprietors. In addition, there was the interest on the part of the developing capitalism in the creation of a free labor market, to which obstacles were opposed by the manorial system through the attachment of the peasants to the soil. The first capitalistic industries were thrown back upon the exploitation of the rural labor power in order to circumvent the guilds. The desire of the new capitalists to acquire land gave them a further interest antagonistic to the manorial system; the capitalistic classes wished to invest their newly acquired wealth in land in order to rise into the socially privileged landed class, and this required a liberation of the land from feudal ties. Finally, the fiscal interest of the state also took a hand, counting upon the dissolution of the manor to increase the taxpaying capacity of the farming country.
CAPITALISTIC DEVELOPMENT OF MANOR 95

These are the various possibilities in connection with the dissolution of manorial economy. In detail, its development was extraordinarily complicated. In China, the feudal system was abolished in the third century before our era, and private property in the land established. Shi-Huang-Ti, the first emperor of the Ching dynasty, rested his power on a patrimonial in contrast with a feudal army, relying for its support on taxation of the dependent classes. The Chinese humanists, the precursors of the later Confucians, took their stand on the side of the monarchy and played the same rationalizing role as the corresponding group in Europe. Since that time, fiscal policy in China has changed times without number. The two poles between which it vibrated were those of a taxation state and a "managerial" (leiturgisch) state, i.e., between one paying its army and officials out of taxation and treating its subjects as a source of taxation and one utilizing them as a source of servile labor, supplying its needs by holding specified classes responsible for payments in kind. The latter policy is the one followed by the Roman Empire at the time of Diocletian, when compulsory communes were organized for the purpose. One system made the masses formally free, the other made them state slaves. The latter were utilized in China in the same way as they were in Europe in those cases where the lords exploited the dependent population as labor power and not through rent charges. In the latter case private property disappeared, and obligations to the land and attachment to the land, with periodical redistribution, came in. The final result of this development in China after the 18th century was the abandonment of the leiturgical principle in favor of the taxation principle; taxes were paid to the state, along with which unimportant remains of public labor services survived. The taxes flowed into the hands of the mandarins,
whose payments to the court were rigidly fixed, while they pushed the taxes of the peasantry as high as possible. This, however, was notably more difficult because the power of the clans was so great that every official had to secure the consent of the Chinese peasantry. The result has been extensive liberation of the peasants. There are still a few tenants, but they are personally free and pay only a moderate rent.

In India, the manorial system still persists; indeed it first arose in a secondary manner out of the practice of tax farming by the fisc. English legislation protects the peasantry, who formerly had no rights, in the same way that Gladstone’s laws protected the Irish in the possession of their holdings and against arbitrary increase in the traditional payments; but it has not in principle changed the established order.

In the near east, also, the feudal tenure exists, but only in a modified form, since the old feudal army has disappeared. Fundamental changes in Persia and other countries exist only on paper. In Turkey the institution of the wakuf (cf. below) has hitherto prevented a modernization of land holding relations.

In Japan, the medieval period comes down to 1861 when, with the downfall of the rule of the nobility, feudal land holding also fell away through the dissolution of the proprietary rights. The pillars of the feudal system, the Samurai, were impoverished, and turned to industrial life; out of this class the Japanese capitalists have developed.

In the Mediterranean region in antiquity, feudal land holding was displaced only within the region immediately under the power of the great cities like Rome and Athens. The town bourgeoisie was in opposition to the landed nobility, with the further conflict between the townsman as creditors and the country folk as debtors. This situation,
in connection with the necessity of securing the great mass of peasants for military service, led in Greece to an endeavor to fit out the hoplites with land. This was the significance of the legislation of the so-called tyrants, as for example, the laws of Solon. The knightly families were compelled to enter the peasant organizations. The legislation of Cleisthenes of about 500 B.C. understood by democracy the condition that every Athenian, to enjoy the privileges of citizenship, must belong to a "demos," i.e., a village, just as in the Italian democracies of the middle ages the nobility were compelled to join the guilds. It was a blow against the land system with its scattered holdings, and against the power of the nobility, who up to that time had stood above and outside the villages. After this time the knights possessed only the same voting power and opportunity to hold office as any peasant. At the same time, the system of intermingled holdings was everywhere set aside.

The class struggles in Rome had similar results for the agricultural organization. Here the field division was in the form of squares of 200 acres and upward. Each holding was set off by a balk of turf which must not be plowed up; the *limites* were public roads, removal of which was also forbidden, in order to maintain accessibility. The land was transferable with extraordinary facility. This system of agrarian law must have been known in the time of the twelve tables and must have been established at a single stroke. It is a law in the interest of the town bourgeoisie, which treats the land holdings of the nobility after the fashion of territory used in towns for speculative building and systematically removes the distinction between land and movable property. Outside the immediate territory belonging to the town, however, the ancient land system was undisturbed. The civilization of antiquity—down to
Alexander the Great in the East and Augustus in the West—was riparian in character and the system of tenure remained unchanged in the interior; from here it later worked outward again, and finally conquered the entire Roman Empire, to remain the dominant institution through the first half of the middle ages. The merchant republics of the Italian towns, under the leadership of Florence, first took up the path toward liberation of the peasantry. To be sure, they deprived the peasants of political rights, to the advantage of the town rulers and councils, the crafts and the merchant guilds, until the nobility itself turned to the peasantry for support against the town population. In any case, the towns liberated the peasantry, in order to buy up the land and release themselves from the clutches of the ruling families (Cp. above, p. 75).

In England, no legal emancipation of the peasants ever took place. The medieval system is still formally in force, except that under Charles II serfdom was abolished and infeudated land became private property, in “fee simple.” The only explicit exception was the “copyhold” land, which was originally in the possession of unfree peasants, the occupier holding no formal grant, but only a copy of one recorded in the rolls of the manor. In England, the mere fact of the development of a market, as such and alone, destroyed the manorial system from within. In accordance with the principle fitting the situation, the peasants were expropriated in favor of the proprietors. The peasants became free but without land.

In France the course of events is exactly the opposite. Here the revolution put an end to the feudal system at one blow in the night of August 4, 1789. However, the measure adopted at that time still required interpretation. This was given by the legislation of the Convention, which declared that all burdens against peasants’ holdings in
favor of overlords were presumed to be of feudal character and that they were abolished without compensation. In addition, the state confiscated the enormous estates of the émigrés and of the church, conferring them upon citizens and peasants. However, since equality of inheritance and distribution of holdings had arisen long before the abolition of the feudal burdens, the final result was that France, in contrast with England, became a land of small and medium sized farms. The process was one of creating property in the hands of the peasantry through the expropriation of the landlords. This was possible because the French landlord was a courtier-noble and not a farmer, seeking his living in the army or in civil service positions upon which he had in part a monopolistic claim. Thus no productive organization was destroyed but only a rent relation.

Similar in character but less revolutionary and rather by gradual steps was the course of development in south and west Germany. In Baden, the liberation of the peasants was begun as early as 1783 by the Margrave Charles Frederick, who was influenced by the Physiocrats. The crucial fact is that after the wars of liberation, the German states adopted the system of written constitutions, and no relationship in connection with which the name of bondage (Leibeigenschaft) could be used is compatible with a constitutional state. Hence the unlimited labor dues, taxes, and services which had anything of the character of personal servitude were everywhere abolished. In Bavaria, it was done under Montgelas and confirmed by the constitution of 1818; the peasants received freedom of movement and finally, favorable property rights. This happened in almost all of south and west Germany in the course of the 20's and 30's; only in Bavaria the substance of it was not achieved until 1848. In that year the last remains of
the cultivators’ burdens were removed by conversion into money obligations, in the handling of which state credit institutions lent aid. Specifically, in Bavaria personal dues were abolished without compensation; other dues were converted into money payments and made subject to extinction by purchase; at the same time, all feudal ties were unconditionally dissolved. Thus in south and west Germany, the landlord was expropriated and the land given to the peasant; the change was the same as in France except that it took place slowly and according to a more legal process.

Quite different was the course of events in the east—in Austria, and the eastern provinces of Prussia, in Russia, and in Poland. Here, if drastic measures had been taken as in France, a functioning agricultural organization would have been destroyed and only chaos would have resulted. It might have been possible to promote a disintegration of the manors into peasant holdings, as happened in Denmark, but it would not have been possible simply to declare feudal burdens abolished. The landed proprietors of the east possessed neither implements nor work animals. There was no rural labor force, but small holders subject to services of man and team, by whose labor the proprietor tilled his land; that is, it was an organization for working the land, which could not be summarily set aside. A further difficulty existed in the fact that there was no official class for the administration of the rural districts, and the government was dependent on the estate holding nobility to perform public functions on an honorary basis. Summary measures, such as the presence of an official staff of lawyers made possible in France, were therefore excluded here, as they were in England in view of the aristocratic justices of the peace.

If the protection and maintenance of the peasantry is re-
garded as the proper objective of an agrarian system, then the dissolution took place in an ideal manner in Austria. In any case, it was better than the Prussian methods, because the Austrian rulers, especially Charles VI and Maria Theresa, knew better what they were doing than did, for example, Frederick the Great, of whom his father said that he did not know how to terminate a lease and box the ears of the tenant.

In Austria, with the exception of the Tyrol, where a free peasantry predominated, hereditary bondage and a landed nobility had existed side by side. The system of estates using the peasants as labor force was most common in Pomerania, Moravia, Silesia, Lower Austria, and Galicia; elsewhere, a renting system predominated. In Hungary, leasing and exploitation by servile labor were intermingled. The greatest degree of personal servitude obtained in Galicia and Hungary. Here were distinguished "rusticalists" who were subject to contributions according to a cadaster, and "dominicalists" who were settled on demesne land (Saltland) and were not subject to contributions. The rusticalists were in part in the better position. They were divided again, as were also the dominicalists, into commuted and non-commuted. The holdings of the non-commuted were subject to retraction, while the commuted possessed hereditary rights.

After the second half of the 17th century, capitalistic tendencies began to intrude into this organization. Under Leopold I the state interfered, at first in a purely fiscal connection, under the form of a compulsory enrolment in cadasters. The policy was to determine from exactly what land the state could collect taxes. When this measure proved without effect, the authorities tried the system of "labor patents" (1680–1738). The object was legislative protection of the laborers; the maximum of work which
might be demanded from every peasant was determined. The eviction of the peasants was not yet made impossible, however, and Maria Theresa adopted the system of tax "rectification," aiming to reduce the incentive to evict the peasantry by making the proprietor responsible for the taxes of any peasant displaced by him. But this measure also proved insufficient, and in 1750 the Empress interfered directly with peasant evictions, though again without accomplishing anything conclusive. Finally, in 1771, she promulgated the system of complete registration. The landed proprietors were compelled to draw up registers (Urbarien—a sort of Domesday Book) in which each peasant holding, with its obligations, was definitely fixed. At the same time, the peasants were given the right to commute the obligations and so to acquire hereditary possession. This expedient broke down in Hungary at once, while in Austria it met with notable success. It represented the attempt to maintain the existing number of peasants and to protect them against the advance of agrarian capitalism. It did not constitute a dissolution of the existing agricultural organization; the peasants were to be protected, but the nobility were also to maintain their position.

Under Joseph II the legislation first took on a revolutionary character. He began by dissolving personal bondage and granting what he understood by this dissolution, namely, freedom of movement, free choice of occupations, freedom in marriage, and freedom from sergeanty or obligatory domestic service. He gave the peasants, in principle, property in their holdings, and in the tax and registration law of 1789 struck out on a really new path. The former system of compulsory services and payments in kind on the feudal holdings was terminated, the dues and aids being converted into fixed money payments to the state.
This attempt to go over at one step to a taxation state broke down. The peasants were not in a position to realize from their products an income large enough to make the money payments, and the economic program of the proprietors was so violently disturbed that a great storm arose, forcing the emperor on his death bed to retract a large part of his reforms. Not until 1848, as a result of the revolution, were all the burdens of the peasantry removed, partly with and partly without compensation. Insofar as compensation was required, the Austrian state fixed a very moderate valuation of the services and set up credit institutions as a means of extinguishing them. This legislation represented the crowning of the efforts of Maria Theresa and Joseph II.

In Prussia,\textsuperscript{14} there has been a pronounced and persistent distinction between the peasants on the crown lands and those on private holdings. For the former, Frederick the Great himself had been able to put through thoroughgoing protective measures. In the first place, he abolished the compulsory domestic service (\textit{Gesindeszwangdienst}). Then, in 1777, he made the peasants' holdings hereditary. In 1779, Frederick William III proclaimed the abolition of compulsory services in principle, requiring every recipient of a lease on crown land to renounce them explicitly. Thus on the crown domains a modern agricultural system was gradually built up. In addition, the peasants were granted the right of purchasing full proprietary rights for a relatively moderate sum; the officialdom of the state concurred in these measures, not only on account of the income which the commutation money would bring to the treasury, but also because with acquisition of full proprietorship the claims of the crown peasantry against the state were extinguished and the labor of administration reduced.

With regard to the peasantry on private holdings, the
task was much more difficult. Frederick the Great wished
to do away with servitude but encountered the formally
effective objection that there was no servitude in Prussia,
but only hereditary dependency. The crown was not in a
position to effect anything against the nobility, and its own
officialdom made up of the nobles. The catastrophe of
Jena and Tilsit first brought about a change. In 1807,
hereditary personal dependency was abolished. The ques-
tion was what should become of the land which was held
by the peasantry in unfree tenure. Prussian official opin-
ion was divided. The alternative was whether to aim at
the largest quantity of produce from a given piece of land,
or to lay the emphasis on maintaining the maximum peas-
ant population. In the first case the English agricultural
system offered a model, as it then represented the highest
degree of intensive cultivation; but this system involved
sacrificing the population on the land. This course was
favored by Over-President von Schoen and his circle. The
other course meant turning away from the example of Eng-
land and from intensive cultivation. After long negotia-
tions appeared the Regulation Edict of 1816. It repre-
sented a compromise between administrative policy and
the protection of the peasantry.

First, the peasants who owned teams were declared sub-
ject to "regulation," while the small cultivators were in ef-
fact excluded, since the state proprietors declared that they
could not do without the hand labor. Even those with
teams were only included if the occupied land was regis-
tered in the tax rolls and if they had occupied it since
1763. The selection of this year as the boundary point
meant that a minimum of the peasant holdings were in-
cluded in the scheme. The regulation became effective on
application. The peasant received his holding as property
and no longer furnished labor services or payments, but
CAPITALISTIC DEVELOPMENT OF MANOR 105

at the same time he lost his rights against the estate. That is, he renounced his right to receive from the proprietor help in emergencies, assistance in repairing buildings, to the use of the common pasture and woodland, and to advances from the estate to meet tax payments. Especially, however, the peasant had to turn over to the proprietor one-third of all hereditary possessions and half of non-hereditary possessions. This manner of regulation was extraordinarily favorable to the estate proprietor. He had indeed to provide himself with implements and stock, but he retained the hand labor of the Kossäten, while he was freed from the rights of pasture of the peasantry and could consolidate his holdings, since the prohibition of eviction was suspended at once. The peasant liable only for hand labor and not subject to the regulation could now be summarily evicted. In Silesia, the nobility, who were especially strong, secured still further exceptions in their own favor, while in Posen, where Polish proprietors were affected, the entire peasant class was made subject to the regulation.

Not until 1848 did the legislation take the final step in Prussia. In 1850, the dissolution of all burdens on the peasantry was proclaimed. Every peasant, with the exception of the day laborers, was now placed under the regulation and every obligation against peasant holdings was made subject to commutation, whether it resulted from the regulation or was independent of it. This included hereditary rents and other payments. It is true that in the meantime the holdings of the smaller peasants had long ago been appropriated by the estate proprietors.

The net result of the development in Prussia has been a decrease both in the numbers of the peasantry and the extent of peasant holdings. Since 1850 a progressive proletarizing of the working population has gone on. The decisive cause was the increase in the value of land. The
earlier custom of granting land to the "instmen" was no longer profitable; their shares in the fruits of the threshing and grinding were also changed into money payments. Of especial importance was the introduction of sugar beet culture, which gave agriculture a highly seasonal character, requiring migratory labor; this was provided by the so-called "Sachsen-gänger," coming first from the Polish provinces of the east and later from Russian Poland and Galicia. For these people it was not necessary either to build dwellings or to allot land; they allowed themselves to be herded together in barracks and were satisfied with a style of living which any German laboring man would have rejected. Thus to an increasing extent a nomadic labor force took the place of the original land-bound peasantry and of the labor force of later times which was loyally attached to the land by a community of economic interest with the proprietor of the estate.

In Russia,\textsuperscript{15} even Alexander I had talked about the emancipation of the peasants, but had done as little towards it as Nicholas I. The defeat of Russia in the Crimean war was required to set things in motion. Alexander II feared a revolution, and for that reason promulgated, in 1861, after endless consultations, the great manifesto liberating the peasants. The problem of dividing the land was solved in the following way. For each province of the empire was set a minimum and maximum holding for each person (nadyel); the amounts varied from three to seven hektares. The proprietor, however, could avoid the regulation altogether by giving the peasants outright a fourth part of the minimum share. In this way he acquired in effect a rural proletarian family completely dependent upon the opportunity to work on his estate. Otherwise the peasant received his share of land only for compensation. The latter was higher in proportion as the share was smaller,
the law makers arguing from the better quality of the land and its greater yield. Moreover, during a certain transition period the obligatory services of the peasants were kept in force, and the commutation of dues by the peasant made dependent on the consent of the proprietor. The system resulted in the peasantry falling extensively in debt to the proprietors. The commutation payments were fixed relatively high, amounting to 6% for 48 years; they were still running when the revolution of 1905–07 broke out. More favorable terms were granted the peasants on the royal estates and crown lands, who were liberated with complete ownership of their land.

It is true that the Russian peasants were liberated only in one direction; they were freed from the proprietors, but not from the joint obligations of the commune. In regard to these, personal servitude was maintained. The peasant did not have freedom of movement, for the mir could recall anyone, no matter whom, who had grown up in the village. This right was kept intact because the Government saw in the so-called agrarian communism a conservative force and a support of czarism against the progress of liberalism (cf. above, p. 19).

Led by political considerations, the Russian government proceeded differently in the western provinces, especially in Poland,\(^6\) where the Code Napoleon had abolished serfdom, although under the condition that on the removal of the peasant the land reverted to the overlord. This specification, which had led to wholesale expulsion of the peasants, was in its turn abolished in 1846. Then in 1864 the Russians carried out the liberation of the Polish peasants, as a measure directed against the Polish nobility, who had supported the revolution of 1863, and with the object of attaching the peasantry to Russian policy. In consequence, the relation of the peasant to the soil was deter-
mined on the basis of his own declaration. Thus the liberation took the form of an out-and-out dispossession of the Polish nobility. In particular, this fact explains the extensive woodland and pasture privileges of the peasants.

The dissolution of the feudal land system resulted in the agricultural system of today. In part, the peasantry are freed from the land and the land from the peasantry, as in England; in part the peasantry are freed from the proprietors, as in France; in part the system is a mixture, as in the rest of Europe, the east inclining more toward the English conditions.

The form of the final adjustment has been largely influenced by the laws of inheritance, in which regard there was the greatest contrast between England and France. In England, the feudal inheritance with primogeniture became universal for the land; the eldest son alone, whether of peasant or overlord, inherits all the land. In France, equal division of the land was the rule, even under the old regime; the civil code only made it obligatory. Within Germany we find the most extreme contrasts. Where individual inheritance persists it is not primogeniture in the English sense, but rather sets up a principal heir, (anerbe) who receives the land and is required to provide for other heirs. This law obtains in some cases on purely technical grounds, as for example in connection with large estates, or a great farm in the Black Forest, where physical division is impossible; or it may be historically grounded, coming down from the period of feudal overlordship. The manorial lord was interested in the capacity of the land to support services, and hence in maintaining farms undivided. In Russia, we find agrarian communism down to the reforms of Stolypin in 1907; the peasant received his allotment of land not from his parents but from the village community,
CAPITALISTIC DEVELOPMENT OF MANOR

Modern legislation has entirely abolished feudal ties. In some regions these have been replaced by a system of trusts or fideicommissa. These are first met with in the form of certain peculiar foundations in the Byzantine Empire, beginning with the 12th century. To protect the land against the emperors, it was given to the church and thus received a character of sanctity. The purpose for which the church could use it, however, was rigidly prescribed, as for example the maintenance of a number of monks. The remainder of the rent, to the amount of nine-tenths of the total, accrued permanently to the family establishing the foundation. Thus arose in the Moslem world the wakuf, a foundation apparently in favor of the monks or for some other pious purpose, but in reality designed to secure to a family a rent while preventing the Sultan from levying taxes on the land. This device of the fideicommissum was brought by the Arabs to Spain and then taken over by England and Germany. In England it aroused resistance, but the lawyers devised a substitute in the institution of "entails." The nature of the institution is this: the indivisibility and inalienability of holdings of land is secured by agreement on its transfer from one generation to the next, so that no change is possible during the lifetime of the holder. In this way the greater part of the land of England has been concentrated into the hands of a small number of families, while in Prussia a while ago one-sixteenth of the land was tied up in trusts. The result is that a latifundian ownership obtains in England, Scotland, and Ireland and also (before 1918) in parts of Silesia and the former Austro-Hungarian monarchy, and to a small extent in certain parts of Germany.

The manner in which the agrarian system developed and the feudal organization was displaced has had extraordinarily far-reaching consequences, not only for the progress
of rural conditions but for political relations in general. Especially has it influenced the question whether a country was to have a landed aristocracy, and what form it would take. An aristocrat in the sociological sense is a man whose economic position sets him free for political activities and enables him to live for political functions without living by them; hence, he is a receiver of fixed income (\textit{Rentner, rentier}). This requirement cannot be met by those classes who are bound to some occupation by the necessity of working to provide a living for themselves and their families, that is, by business men and laborers. In an agricultural nation, specifically, the complete aristocrat lives on ground rents. The only country which really possesses such an aristocracy in Europe is England—to a limited extent also the Austria of former times. In France, on the contrary, the expropriation of the landed classes led to an urbanization of political life, since only the plutocracy of the towns, and no longer the landed aristocracy, were economically free enough to make politics a profession. The economic development of Germany left only a thin stratum of landlords free for political life, chiefly in the eastern provinces of Prussia, where the expropriation of the peasants went farthest. The majority of the Prussian Junkers formed no such aristocratic stratum as the English landlords. They are rather a rural middle class with a feudal stamp, coming down from the past, whose members are occupied as agricultural entrepreneurs in the day-to-day economic struggle of business interests. With the fall in grain prices since the seventies and the rise in the demands of life, their fate was sealed, for the average knightly holding of 400 to 500 acres can no longer support a lordly aristocratic existence. This fact explains the extraordinarily sharp conflict of interests in which this class
has stood, and still stands, and their position in political
life.

With the dissolution of the manors and of the remains
of the earlier agrarian communism through consolidation,
separation, etc., private property in land has been com-
pletely established. In the meantime, in the course of the
centuries, the organization of society has changed in the
direction described above, the household community shrink-
ing, until now the father with his wife and children func-
tions as the unit in property relations. Formerly this was
simply impossible for physical reasons. The household
has at the same time undergone an extensive internal trans-
formation, and this in two ways; its function has become
restricted to the field of consumption, and its management
placed on an accounting basis. To an increasing extent the
development of inheritance law in place of the original
complete communism has led to a separation between the
property of the man and the woman, with a separate ac-
counting. This two-fold transformation was bound up
with the development of industry and trade.
PART TWO

INDUSTRY AND MINING DOWN TO THE BEGINNING OF
THE CAPITALISTIC DEVELOPMENT
CHAPTER VII

PRINCIPAL FORMS OF THE ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF INDUSTRY

We understand by industry the transformation of raw materials; thus the extractive operations and mining are excluded from the concept. However, the latter will be treated in connection with industry in what follows, so that the designation "industry" embraces all those economic activities which are not to be viewed as agricultural, trading, or transportation operations.

From the economic standpoint industry—in the sense of transformation of raw materials—developed universally in the form of work to provide for the requirements of a house community. In this connection it is an auxiliary occupation; it first begins to be interesting to us when production is carried beyond household needs. This work may be carried on for an outside household, especially for a seigniorial household by the lord's dependents; here the needs of the one household are covered by the products of other (peasant) households. Auxiliary industrial work may also be performed for a village, as in the case of India. Here the hand workers are small farmers who are not able to live from the product of their allotments alone. They are attached to the village, subject to the disposal of anyone who has need of industrial service. They are essentially village serfs, receiving a share in the products or money payments. This we call "demiurgical" labor.

115
The second mode of transforming raw materials, for other than the needs of a household, is production for sale—that is, craft work. By craft work we understand the case in which skilled labor is carried on to any extent in specialized form, either through differentiation of occupations or technical specialization, and whether by free or unfree workers, and whether for a lord, or for a community, or on the worker's own account.

It will be seen that industrial work for the needs of the worker originally appears in the closed house community. In general the oldest form of specialization is a strict division of labor between the sexes. To the woman exclusively falls the cultivation of the fields; she is the first agriculturist. She is by no means given such a high position as Tacitus, who here waxes fanciful, represents in the case of the Germans. In ancient England the seduction of a wife was regarded as a mere property damage to be compensated by money. The woman was a field slave; upon her lay the entire work of tillage and all activity connected with the utilization of the plants grown upon the land, as well as the production of the vessels in which cooking was done, and finally the broad category of textile work—braiding of mats, spinning, and weaving. As to weaving there are indeed characteristic exceptions. In Egypt, Herodotus was rightly impressed by the fact that men (servile) worked at the looms, a development which took place generally where the loom was very heavy to manipulate or the men were demilitarized. To the man's share on the other hand fell everything connected with war, hunting, and livestock keeping, as also work in metals, dressing of leather, and preparation of meat. The last ranked as a ritualistic act; originally meat was eaten only in connection with orgies, to which in general the men
PRINCIPAL FORMS OF INDUSTRY

alone were admitted, the women receiving what was left over.

Industrial work in communal form is found in occasional tasks, especially in house building. Here the work was so heavy that the single household and certainly the single man could not carry it out. Hence, it was performed by the village as invitation work on a mutual basis, enlivened by drinking, as is still done in Poland. Another example in very early time is work for the chieftain, and another is ship building, which was done by communal groups voluntarily formed for the purpose and which had a good chance of taking up piracy. Finally, it may happen that a number of free men join together for work in the production of metals, though the production of iron is a relatively late phenomenon. Originally houses were built without metal nails; the Alpine house has a flat roof in spite of the burden of snow, because there are no nails for a sloping roof.

As will be seen from the spread of invitation work, the earliest specialization by no means implies skilled trades. The latter are related in primitive lands to magical conceptions; the belief in things which can be achieved by the individual only by magical processes had to develop first. This was especially true of the medical calling; the "medicine man" is the earliest profession. In general every highly skilled occupation was originally regarded as influenced by magic. The smiths especially were everywhere viewed as characterized by supernatural qualities because a part of their art appears mysterious and they themselves make a mystery of it. The skilled occupations developed within the large household of a chieftain or landed proprietor, who was in a position to train dependent persons in a special direction, and who possessed the
needs for which skilled work was requisite. The skilled occupation may also have evolved in connection with the opportunity for exchange. The decisive question in this connection is, has the industry access to a market? and also, who sells the final product after it has gone through the hands of the various producers? These questions are also vital for the struggles of the guilds and for their disintegration. A specialized skilled craftsman may produce freely for stock and for the market, selling his product as a small enterpriser. This extreme case we shall call "price work"; it presupposes command over raw materials and tools. One possibility is that the raw materials, and under some circumstances the tools, are provided by an association. Thus the medieval guild as a group bought and distributed certain raw materials, such as iron and wool, in order to safeguard the equality of the members.

The opposite extreme is that the craftsman is in the service of another as a wage worker. This appears when he is not in possession of raw material and tools but brings to the market his labor only, not its product. Between the two extremes stands the craftsman who works on order. He may be the owner of the raw materials and tools, giving rise to two possibilities. Either he sells to the consumer—who may be a merchant ordering from him; in which case we speak of free production for a clientele, or, he produces for an entrepreneur who possesses a monopoly of his labor power. The latter relation often results from indebtedness to the entrepreneur, or from the physical impossibility of access to the market, as for example in the export industries in the middle ages. This is called the "domestic" system; or more descriptively, the putting-out system or factor system; the craftsman is a price worker on another's account.

The second possibility is that raw material and tools—
one or the other or both—are provided by the one who orders the work, the consumer. Here we shall speak of wage work for a clientele. A final case is that in which the person ordering the work is an entrepreneur who has production carried on for gain; this is the case of domestic industry, the putting-out system. Here are associated on the one hand a merchant entrepreneur (Verleger) who commonly, though not always, purchases the raw materials, and under some circumstances also provides the tools, and on the other hand the wage worker on order in his home, who cannot bring his own product to the market because the requisite organization of craft work is absent.

With regard to the relation of the worker to the place of work, the following distinctions may be made. 1. The work is done in the worker’s dwelling. In this case the craftsman may be a price worker who independently fixes the price of his product; or he may be a home worker for wages for a clientele, producing on the order of consumers; or finally, he may be a home worker for an entrepreneur. 2. On the other hand the work may take place outside the worker’s dwelling. Here it may be itinerant work, work done in the house of the consumer, as is still common with seamstresses and dressmakers; such work was originally done by “wandering” laborers. On the other hand the work may be brought to the worker, but may be of such a nature that it cannot be carried on in his own house, as in the case of the whitewash industry. Finally, the work place may be an “ergasterion” or work shop, and as such separate from the dwelling of the worker. An ergasterion is not necessarily a factory; it may be a bazaar-shop where work place and place of sale are combined. Or, it may be leased in common by a number of workers; or finally, it may belong to a lord who puts his slaves to work in it, either selling the product himself or permitting the slaves
to sell it on condition of a specified payment. The character of the ergasterion is most clearly seen in the modern shop enterprise where the conditions of work are prescribed by an entrepreneur who pays wages to the worker.

The appropriation of the fixed investment, under which the work place and means of work are included insofar as the latter do not come under the head of tools, may also be effected in various ways. There may be no need for a fixed investment, in which case we have to do with pure craft work, as in the medieval guild economy. The absence of fixed capital is characteristic of the latter to the extent that as soon as such capital appears the guild economy is in danger of dissolution. If there is a fixed investment it may be provided and maintained by an association,—village, town, or workers’ organization. This case is common, and especially is met with repeatedly in the middle ages, the guild itself providing the capital. In addition we find seigniorial establishments which the workers are allowed to use for a payment; a monastery, for example, establishes a fulling mill, and grants free workers its use. Again it is possible that the seigniorial establishment may be not only placed at the disposal of free workers but used in production by workers under the dominium of the owner and whose product he himself sells. This we call “oikos,” or villa, craft work. Originated by the Pharaohs, it is found in the most varied forms in the establishments of the princes, landed proprietors, and monasteries of the middle ages. Under oikos craft work, however, there is no separation between the household and the enterprise, and the latter ranks only as an auxiliary interest of the entrepreneur.

All this is changed in the capitalistic establishment of an entrepreneur. Here work is carried on with means provided by the entrepreneur, and discipline is necessary.
PRINCIPAL FORMS OF INDUSTRY

The entrepreneur work shop counts as fixed capital, forming an item in the accounting of the entrepreneur; the existence of such capital in the hands of an individual is the fact which brought about the downfall of the guild system.
CHAPTER VIII

STAGES IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTRY AND MINING

The starting point of the development is house industry, producing for the requirements of a small or large household. From this point the development may lead to tribal industry, which may arise in consequence of the possession by a tribe of a monopoly, either of certain raw materials or of certain products. Tribal industry is carried on originally as a welcome auxiliary source of income, but later to an increasing extent as a regular occupation. It signifies in the one as in the other of these stages that the products of household activity, prepared with the tools and raw materials of the house community, are brought to the market, so that a window is opened, as it were, in the self-contained household economy, looking out on the market. The monopoly of raw material may be conditioned by the exclusive occurrence of certain materials—stone, metals, or fibers, most commonly salt, metal, or clay deposits—within the territory of the tribe. The result of exploitation of a monopoly may be the appearance of wandering trade. It may be carried on by those who conduct the industry, as in the case of many Brazilian tribes or the Russian "kustar," who in one part of the year as a farmer produces products and in the other part peddles them. Again, it may be qualities of workmanship which are monopolized, as frequently in the case of wool products of artistic distinction, the worker being in the possession of a trade secret or special skill not readily transferred. This case involves
THE DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTR Y 123

a special form of price-work in which the craft is monopolized through the possession of land and is attached to a tribe or clan by an hereditary charism. Specialization of production takes place between ethnical groups. It may be confined to the exchange of products between geographically adjacent regions, as in Africa, or there may be a wider development.

The one possibility leads to the establishment of castes, as in India. Through the combination of individual tribal groups under an overlordship, tribal industries which originally lay side by side horizontally have here become arranged vertically in a stratification, and the ethnic division of labor is now found among persons subjected to a common master. The original relationship of the tribes as mutually foreign is expressed in a system of castes whose members do not eat together or intermarry and receive only specified services at each other’s hands. The caste system has had tremendous consequences for the whole social organization of India, because it is anchored in ritualistic and hence religious institutions. It has stereotyped all craft work and thus made impossible the utilization of inventions or the introduction of any industry based on capital. The introduction of any technical improvement whatever at any time would have presupposed the founding of a new caste below all the old series previously existing. When the Communist Manifesto says of the proletarian that he has a world to win and nothing to lose but his chains, the expression would apply to the Indian except that he can only get free of his chains in the after world, through the fulfillment to the last detail of his caste obligations in this. Every Indian caste had its production process traditionally fixed; one who abandoned the traditional process lost caste, and was not only expelled and made pariah but also lost his chance in the future world, the prospect of
reincarnation in a higher caste. Hence, the system became the most conservative of possible social orders. Under the English influence it has gradually broken down, and even here capitalism is slowly making its way.

The second possibility which opens up in the stage of exchange between ethnic groups is evolution in the direction of market specialization. Regional division of occupations may be first "demiurgie"—that is, not yet related to a market though no longer inter-tribal, the village or a landed proprietor acquiring craft workers and compelling them to work for the village or the estate (oikos). Here is to be classified for example the village industry of India, and in Germany as late as the 14th century the lord of the land was considered under obligation to provide a corps of village craftsmen. Here we find local specialization for self-sufficient production, with which an hereditary proprietorship of work places is regularly associated.

Going beyond this is a sort of local specialization which in its end results leads to specialization for the market. Its prior stage is the specialization of village and manorial industry. In the village are found, on the one hand, peasants and, on the other, landed proprietors who bring about the settlement of craft workers to produce for the requirements of the lord, for payment in the form of a share in the harvest or otherwise. This contrasts with specialization for the market in that there is no exchange. Furthermore, it still carries the marks of specialization between ethnic groups, in that the craftsmen are foreigners; however, they include some peasants who have lost their status, because unable to maintain themselves, due to inadequacy of their holdings of land.

A different course is taken by the seigniorial form of exploitation of craft workers, that is, the large household or estate type of specialization carried out by princes or
lords of the land for private or political purposes. Here also specialization takes place without exchange. The duty of furnishing particular services for the disposal of the lord is laid upon individual craftsmen or whole classes of such. In antiquity this arrangement was widespread. In addition to the officia—the officials of the great household, such as the office of treasurer, which was usually filled by a slave—appeared the artificia. These consisted chiefly of slaves and included certain categories of craft workers within the familia rustica, who produced for the needs of the large estates. Such were smiths, iron workers, building craftsmen, wheelwrights, textile workers—especially female in the gynecium or women’s house—millers, bakers, cooks, etc. They are also found in the city households of the higher nobility, who have at their disposal large numbers of slaves. The list of the Empress Livia, the wife of Augustus, is known; it includes craft workers for the wardrobe and other personal requirements of the princess. A similar situation is found in the princely households of India and China, and again in the medieval manors, both of the lay lords and of the monasteries.

In addition to the craft workers for the personal needs of the lord, are those who serve his political requirements. An example on a large scale is the administration of the Pharoahs of the New Empire, after the expulsion of the Hyksos. Here we find a warehouse system replenished from the payments in kind of the dependent classes, and along with it extensive industrial specialization of hand work for the household and political needs of the king. The officials are paid in goods out of the storehouse, receiving a specified allotment, and the written claims to the goods circulate in commerce in the fashion of government notes today. The products are obtained in part from the work of peasants and in part from specialized estate industry.
In the large estates of the near east also, luxury crafts were developed and encouraged. The Egyptian and Mesopotamian kings caused the marvels of ancient oriental art to be developed by workers trained in their workshops and dependent upon them and thus gave the estate (oikos) a mission to fulfill in the history of culture.

In order that a transition be effected from this condition to production for a clientele and for the market, a circle of consumers with purchasing power to absorb the output was necessary; that is, an exchange economy of some extent had to develop. Here we have a situation similar to that found in the development of the peasantry. The prince, or lord, or slave holder, had his choice between utilizing the skill of the workers as labor power, himself producing for the market by means of them, and exploiting them as a source of rent. In the first case the lord became an entrepreneur utilizing the work of the unfree population; such a system is found both in antiquity and in the middle ages, the lord employing someone to look after the marketing. This person is the negotiator, the dealer, who is attached as an agent to the princely or other sort of household.

The way in which the lord may utilize his people as labor force in such a case may vary. He may employ them as unfree home workers; they remain in their own dwellings and are compelled to deliver certain quantities of goods, the raw materials for which may belong to them or may be furnished by the lord. In antiquity, this relation was widespread. Textiles and pottery products were brought to the market in this way, being produced mainly in the women’s house (γυναικείον, gynecium). In the middle ages, the linen industry in Silesia and Pomerania arose in this manner; the lord is the merchant-capitalist-employer or “factor” (Verleger) of the craft worker.
THE DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTRY

Or, the lord could go over to shop industry. In antiquity we find among the auxiliary industries of the great landed proprietors terra cotta works, sand pits and stone quarries. We also find the large gynecium in which female slaves were used in spinning and weaving. Similarly in Carolingian times as to the gynecium. Shop industry developed to an especial extent in the monastic economy of the middle ages in the breweries, fulling mills, distilleries, and other industries of the Benedictines, Carthusians, etc.

In addition to auxiliary industries on the land, we find town industries with unfree labor. While in the rural industries the lord disposes of the products through the agency of his unfree labor force, in the towns it is generally the merchant who by means of his trading capital sets up establishments with unfree workers. This relation was common in antiquity. For example, tradition tells us that Demosthenes inherited from his father two ergasteria, a smithy shop, making weapons, and a work shop for the production of bedsteads—which at that time were objects of luxury and not necessities. The combination is explained by the fact that the father was an importer of ivory, which was used for inlaying both in the handles of swords and in the bedsteads, and had taken the shops with their slaves as a forfeit in consequence of the inability of his debtors to pay. Lysias also mentions a "factory" with a hundred slaves. In both cases we find production for a small upper class on the one hand and for war purposes on the other. In neither case, however, are we concerned with a "factory" in the modern sense, but only with an ergasterion.

Whether an ergasterion operates with unfree or with freely associated labor depends on the individual case. If it was a large establishment producing for the market with slave labor it was a case of labor accumulation, not of
specialization and co-ordination. Many persons worked together, each turning out independently a single class of products. Over them all was set a foreman who paid the lord double head dues and whose single interest lay in a certain uniformity in the product. Under such relations there could be no question of large scale production in the sense of the modern factory, for the ergasterion had no fixed capital, and did not usually belong to the lord, though it might in some cases.

Furthermore, the special features of slave holding made for the impossibility of the development of such an establishment into a modern factory. The human capital consumes more in the very moment when the market fails, and its upkeep was a very different matter from that of a fixed capital in machines. Slaves were especially subject to vicissitudes and exposed to risk. When a slave died it meant a loss, in contrast with present conditions where the risks of existence are shifted on to the free workers. Slaves could also run away, especially in time of war, and did so with especial frequency at a time of military misfortune. When Athens collapsed in the Peloponnesian War, the whole slave capital utilized in industry became a loss. Furthermore, the price of slaves fluctuated in the most astonishing way in consequence of the wars which were the normal condition of antiquity. The Greek city-state carried on war continuously; to contract a durable peace was regarded as a crime; peace was concluded for a respite, as commercial treaties are made today. In Rome also, war was an every-day occurrence. Only in war time were slaves cheap, in time of peace extraordinarily dear. The lord had his choice in the treatment of this capital, often obtained at high cost, either to keep the slave in a barracks or to support his family along with him. In the second case occupations of a different sort must be found
for the women; hence the lord could not specialize his establishment, but had to carry on several branches in combination in his oikos. If he did specialize, the death of a slave was very disastrous. An additional factor was the absence of all interest in the work on the part of the slave; only by means of quite barbaric discipline could be extracted from them the amount of work which free laborers give today under a system of contract. The large-scale establishments with slaves were therefore a rare exception; in all history they appear to a considerable extent only where there is an absolute monopoly of the branch of production concerned. The example of Russia shows that factories manned by servile workers were completely dependent on the maintenance of such a monopoly; the moment it was broken they collapsed in the face of competition with free labor.

It is true that the organization of antiquity often presents a somewhat different aspect. The lord does not appear as an entrepreneur but as an income receiver, utilizing the labor power of the slave as a source of rent. He had the slave taught some craft; then if he did not hire him out to a third party he allowed him to produce independently for the market, or himself to hire out for work, or finally, left him free to conduct his own business, imposing on him in each case a tax. Here we have economically free but personally unfree craftsmen. In this case the slave himself possessed a certain capital, or the lord lent him capital to carry on trade or small craft work (the peculium). The self-interest of the slave thus aroused had, according to Pliny, the result that the lord granted him even testamentary freedom. In this way the great mass of the slaves were utilized. A like condition is found in the middle ages, and also in Russia, and everywhere we find some technical designation for the tax as a proof that
we are concerned not with an extraordinary but with a quite normal relation, ἀποφορά, Leibeins, obrok.

Under this manner of utilizing the slaves, whether the lord operated on his own account depended on the presence of a local market, in contrast with a general one in which the slaves could sell their products or labor power. If the labor organization of antiquity and that of the middle ages start from the same point and are similar in the early stages and then later take quite different courses, the reason is found in the completely different character of the market in the two civilizations. In antiquity the slaves remained in the power of the lord, while in the middle ages they became free. In the latter there is a broad stratum of free craftsmen unknown to antiquity. The reasons are, several:

1. The difference in the consumptive requirements in the occident as compared to all other countries of the world. One must understand clearly what a Japanese or Greek household required. The Japanese lives in a house which is built of wood and paper; the mats and a wooden kettle-stand, which together yield a bed, together with dishes and crockery, form the whole establishment. We possess the auctioneer’s list from the trial of a condemned Greek, possibly Alcibiades. The household exhibits an incredibly restricted equipment, works of art playing the leading role. In contrast, the household equipment of the medieval patrician is much more extensive and materialistic. The contrast rests on climatic differences. While in Italy heat is not indispensable, even today, and in antiquity the bed counted as a luxury—for sleeping one simply rolled up in one’s mantle and lay down on the floor—in northern Europe stoves and beds were necessities. The oldest guild document which we possess is that of the bed ticking weavers of Cologne. It cannot be said that the Greeks
THE DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTRY

went naked; part of the body was covered, but their clothing requirement was not to be compared with that of the middle European. Finally, again in consequence of climatic relations, the German appetite was greater than that of the southerner. Dante somewhere speaks of the "German land of gluttons." As soon as it was possible to satisfy these needs, a much more extensive industrial production than that of antiquity necessarily developed among the Germans, in accordance with the law of diminishing utility. This development took place from the 10th to the 12th century.

2. The difference in the market as compared with antiquity, as regards extension. In the northern Europe of the 10th to the 12th centuries, purchasers in possession of buying power and industrial products were at hand to a much greater extent than in the countries of antiquity. The civilization of antiquity was coastal; no city of note lay more than a day's journey from the sea. The hinterland back of this thin coastal strip was, to be sure, included in the market area; but it possessed little purchasing power since it was in the product-economy stage of development. In addition, the culture of antiquity rested on slavery. As this civilization moved back from the coast and began to take on an inland character, the supply of slaves ceased. Hence the territorial lords endeavored to make themselves independent of the market by providing for their own needs with their own labor force. This autonomy of the oikos which Rodbertus thought to be characteristic of the whole ancient world, is in reality a phenomenon of later antiquity and reaches its highest development in Carolingian times. Its first effect is a narrowing of the market, and later fiscal measures worked in the same direction. The whole process signified an accelerated retrogression toward product economy. In the middle ages, on the
other hand, the market began in the 10th century to increase in extent through the growing purchasing power of the peasantry. Their dependency became less oppressive, the control of the lords losing in effectiveness because the intensivity of tillage was making progress, while the lord, who was tied to his military duties, could not profit by this progress but had to let the whole increase in rent go to the peasant. This fact made possible the first great development of the handicrafts. It began in the period of market concessions and of the founding of the towns, which in the 12th and 13th centuries moved eastward also. Viewed from the economic standpoint, the towns were speculative ventures of the princes; the latter wished to acquire taxable dependents and therefore founded towns and markets, as settlements of persons who bought and sold. These speculations did not always turn out happily. Those of the Polish nobility mostly failed when the growth of antisemitism drove the Jews into the east and the nobles tried to exploit the movement in the founding of towns.

3. The third reason is the unprofitableness of slavery as a labor system. Slavery was profitable only when the slave could be cheaply fed. This was not the case in the north, where in consequence slaves were preferably exploited as rent payers.

4. The great fact of the instability of slave relations in the north. Runaway slaves were found everywhere in northern lands. There was no criminal news service, the lords were pitted against each other in regard to the slaves and one who escaped did not risk much, as he could find shelter with another lord or in a town.

5. The interference of the towns. The emperor especially granted privileges to the towns, giving rise to the principle "town air makes free." He decreed that anyone, no matter whence or from what class he came, be-
longed to the town if he settled there. The citizenship of
the towns came in part from such acquisitions; in part it
was noble, in part made up of merchants, and in part of
dependent skilled craftsmen.

This development was favored by the increasing weak-
ness of the imperial power and by the particularism of the
towns, which was promoted by this weakness; the towns
possessed the power, and were in a position to laugh in the
faces of the territorial lords. The principle "town air
makes free" did not, however, go unopposed. On the one
side the emperors were forced to promise the princes to op-
pose the seizing of new privileges by the towns; on the other
their poverty continually forced them to grant the privi-
leges. It was a contest of power in which finally the politi-
cal power of the princes, who took an interest in the
towns, proved stronger than the economic power of the
territorial lords, whose interest lay in retaining their de-
pendents.

The craftsmen, who settled on the basis of these privileges
were of various origins and of divers legal status. Only
exceptionally were they full citizens possessing land free
of obligations; in part they were persons subject to feudal
head dues, bound to make payments to some lord within or
without the town. A third category consisted of the
"Muntmannen," in a sort of wardship status, who were
personally free but were commended to some free citizen
who represented them in court and to whom they owed
specific services in return for his protection.

In addition there would be manors within a town, pos-
sessing their own craftsmen and special craft regulations.
However, one must guard against the belief that the craft
system of the towns developed out of regulation of craft
work by the lords. (See below, p. 144.) In general the
craftsmen belonged to different personal overlords, and in
addition they were subject to the lord of the town territory. Hence only the town itself could originate a craft ordinance, and it happened that the lord of the town excluded his own dependents from the legal rights which he granted to the town, not wishing them to obtain the status of the class of free craftsmen in the town itself. The free craftsmen were without fixed capital; they owned their own tools, but did not work on a basis of capital accounting. They were almost always wage workers who carried to market their labor power and not their products. However, they produced for a clientele and originally on order; whether they remained wage workers or became price workers depended on market conditions.

Wage work is always the rule where the work is done for the wealthy classes, price work where it is done for the mass of the people. The mass buys single, ready-made articles; hence, the growth in the purchasing power of the mass is the basis for the appearance of price work, as later for that of capitalism. However, the distinction cannot be sharply drawn; wage workers and price workers exist side by side, but in general wage workers predominate, in the early middle ages as in antiquity, in India and China, as in Germany. As such they may be either itinerant workers (workers in the house of the employer) or home workers, depending largely on the costliness of the material. Gold, silver, silk, and expensive fabrics were not given the craftsman to work upon at his home but they were made to come to the work, in order to guard against theft and adulteration. On this account itinerant work was especially common in the field of the consumption of the upper social strata. On the contrary, those whose tools were costly or heavy to transport were necessarily home workers; such were the bakers, weavers, wine pressers and millers; in these occupations we already find the beginnings
of a fixed capital. Between the fields of wage work and price work there are intermediate cases where chance or tradition fixes the type. In general, however, the terminology of wage work strongly predominates: \textit{εὐδῶρος}, \textit{μοσθός}, \textit{merces}; all these expressions relate to wages, not to prices. The provisions of the edict of Diocletian also point in the direction of wage rather than price tariffs.
CHAPTER IX

THE CRAFT GUILDS

A guild\(^1\) is an organization of craft workers specialized in accordance with the type of occupation. It functions through undertaking two things, namely, internal regulation of work and monopolization against outsiders. It achieves its objective if everyone joins the guild who practices the craft in the location in question.

Guilds in the sense of unfree organizations were found in late antiquity and in Egypt, India, and China. These were organizations for taking care of compulsory contributions to the state. They arose in connection with the fact that the function of supplying the political needs of a prince or of a community was laid upon the various industrial groups and to this end production was organized on occupational lines. It has been assumed that the castes of India also arose out of such guilds, but in reality they grew out of relations between ethnic groups. Already existing castes were utilized by the state, which carried out its financing in kind by requiring that the industry supply products for its needs. In early antiquity the leiturgical guild is found, especially in connection with products important for military use. In the army of the Roman Republic a *centuria fabrum* or industrial craftsman existed alongside the knightly centurion. The later Roman state needed to bring in grain to keep the city population in a good humor. For this purpose it instituted the organization of the *navicularii*, upon whom was laid the task of

136
ship building. Fiscal considerations brought it about that in the last centuries of the Empire almost the whole of economic life was thus "leiturgically" organized.

Guilds are also met with as ritualistic associations. Not all the Indian castes are guilds, but very many are ritualistic guilds. Where castes existed, there were no guilds outside of them; and none were needed, for it is a feature of the caste system that every type of labor service is assigned to a special caste.

A third form of guild is the free association; this is characteristic for the middle ages. Its beginnings are possibly found in late antiquity; at least the Romanized late-Hellenism shows such tendencies toward organizations with guild characteristics. The wandering craftsman first appears at the beginning of our era. Without him the spread of Christianity would never have been possible; it was in the beginning the religion of the wandering craftsmen, to whom the Apostle Paul also belonged, and his proverb "he who does not work shall not eat" expresses their ethics. However, antiquity knew only the first impulses toward free guilds. In general, the craft work of antiquity has the character, as far as we can tell, of clan industry based on hereditary charism—when it was not attached to an oikos, or estate. The guild idea is entirely wanting in the classical democracy, which is the very opposite of guild democracy; on the columns of the erechtheion worked side by side Athenian citizens, free metics, and slaves. The reasons for its absence are of a partly political, but chiefly economic sort. Slaves and free persons could not participate in the same religious ritual. Moreover, the guild is absent where caste organization exists, because it is quite superfluous, and it has little significance where clan economy dominates, as in China. Here the individual craftsman of the town belongs to some
village; there is no citizenship of Pekin, or any city whatever, and consequently no guild forming a part of the town organization. In contrast, there are guilds in Islam. Guild revolutions even took place, although rarely, as in Bukhara.

The spirit of the medieval western guild is most simply expressed in the proposition, guild policy is livelihood policy. It signifies the maintenance of a substantial burgherly prosperity for the members of the guild, in spite of increased competition in consequence of the narrowing of the opportunities of life; the individual guild member must obtain the traditional standard of life and be made secure in it. This conception of the traditional standard of life is the analogue of the "living wage" of the present day. The means which the guild adopted to reach this goal are of interest.

As to internal policy, the guild endeavored by every conceivable means to provide equality of opportunity for all guild members, which was also the objective in the case of the division of the fields into strips by the peasantry. To realize this equality the development of capitalistic power must be opposed, especially by preventing the unequal growth of capital in the hands of individual masters and consequent differentiation among them; one master must not progress beyond another. To this end, the processes of work were regulated; no master dared proceed in any other than the traditional manner. The guild controlled the quality of the products. It controlled and regulated the number of apprentices and laborers. It regulated as far as possible the provision of raw material,—communally insofar as price work obtained at the time. In addition the guild or the town did the purchasing of the raw material and disposed of it to the separate masters. As soon as the transition to price work had taken place
and the craftsman as a petty capitalist possessed sufficient means to buy his own raw material, the guild demanded proof of the member’s wealth. This practice has held from the 14th century on. Men without property could be employed by others as wage workers. As soon as the field of action became restricted the guild was closed and the number of masters fixed, though this result was only reached in places.

Finally, the relation between the individual craftsmen was regulated. The guild maintained the position that the raw material must take the longest possible course in the individual shop, that the individual workman must keep the object worked upon in hand as long as possible. Hence it was required that the division of labor should be based on the final product and not on technical specialization of operations. In the clothing industry, for example, the course of production from the flax to the finished garment was not cut transversely into separate individual processes of spinning, weaving, dying, finishing etc., but as far as possible the guilds insisted that specialization relate to final products; one worker must produce hose, another vests. Consequently, we find in the medieval lists two hundred guilds where, according to our way of thinking, counting on a technological basis, two or three thousand would have been required. The guilds felt a very justifiable anxiety lest a cross-wise division of the process might place the worker nearest the market in a position to dominate the others and to depress them to the position of wage workers.

Thus far the guild follows a livelihood policy. However, it also endeavored to secure and to maintain equality of opportunity for the members. To this end free competition had to be limited, and the guilds established various regulations: 1. The technique of the industry. They
fixed the number of workers, and especially of apprentices, a member might employ; more especially, where apprenticeship threatened to pass into the employment of cheap labor, the number of apprentices was limited to one or two for each master. 2. The form of the raw material. Especially in industries which had to mix metals, such as bell casting, a fairly strict control was exercised in order to maintain the quality of the result and also to exclude unfair competition. 3. The technique of the industry and the process of production, hence the manner of preparing malt, of working leather, of finishing cloth, of dyeing, etc. 4. They controlled the form of tools employed. The individual guild commonly assumed a monopoly over certain tools, which it alone was allowed to use; the type of the tool was traditionally prescribed. 5. The quality which the product must show before it could be offered on the market. The guilds also regulated the economic relations of the industry: 1. They set up limitations on the amount of capital, so that no employing entrepreneur could develop within the guild, overshadowing other masters and pressing them into his service. To this end, all association with foreigners outside the guild was forbidden, although the prohibition was rarely enforced. 2. Those admitted to the guild were forbidden to work for other masters lest they might be reduced to the position of journeymen; similarly as to working for merchants, which was bound to lead immediately to a putting-out system. The finished product had to be delivered as wage work for a customer by the guild craftsman who worked for wages; for price workers, the free marketing of the product as price work was the ideal. 3. The guilds controlled the buying opportunities. They forbade forestalling, i.e., no guild member dared provide himself with raw materials ahead of his fellows. Not infrequently they established a right
of equal sharing; if a shortage arose any guild member might demand that his brothers in the guild provide him with raw material at its cost to them. 4. The guilds also opposed individual selling ahead of other members. To achieve this they often proceeded to compulsory marketing and strengthened the regulation by forbidding price cutting and enticement of customers; thus the way was barred to price competition. 5. They forbade the sale of the products of outsiders; if a member violated this rule he was rated a merchant and expelled from the guild. 6. They regulated marketing, through price schedules, with a view to guaranteeing the traditional standard of life.

Externally, the policy of the guild was purely monopoli-stic. 1. The guilds strove towards and reached the objective that in very many cases the policing of the industry in matters affecting the craft was placed in their hands, and in such cases they maintained an industrial court. Otherwise they would not have been able to control the technique and procedure or to maintain equality of opportunity among members. 2. They strove towards and regularly achieved compulsory membership in the guild, at least literally, though it was often evaded in fact. 3. In many cases they succeeded in establishing a guild district; they everywhere strove for this, but fully achieved it only in Germany,—in England not at all, while in France and Italy they achieved partial success. A guild district means monopoly of a certain territory. Within this district, in which the guild established complete authority, no industry could be carried on except that of the guild. This measure was directed against migratory workers, who to a considerable extent were suppressed, and against rural industry. As soon as the guilds obtained power in the towns, their first thought was an endeavor to suppress competition from the country. 4. In
case of a transfer of the product of one guild into the hands of another, the guilds set up price tariffs; internally, the price was a minimum price, against outsiders a monopoly price. 5. That the guild regulations might be effectively carried out, the division of labor must be as far as possible along occupational lines, not through transverse division of the process; that is, as already explained, a worker must produce a final product from beginning to end and keep it in his own hands. By all these measures the guilds opposed the development of large establishments within the guild-controlled industry. What they were not able to prevent was the development of putting out of work (Verlag), with its implication of dependence of the craftsmen upon the merchant.

As late products of guild history must be added some further regulations. These assumed that the guild had already arrived at the limit of its field of action, that only inter-local division of labor and capitalistic operation with extension of the market could create new industrial opportunities. In the first place, the guilds made the achievement of mastership increasingly difficult. This goal was reached in the first instance through the institution of the "masterpiece." A relatively late product of the development was that, from the 15th century on, strictly economic specifications were attached to the masterpiece. From the standpoint of value its production often had no significance or it even had nonsensical conditions attached; the requirement signified merely a compulsory period of work without remuneration to exclude persons without means. In addition to the requirement of the masterpiece, the masters who had achieved the position of price workers strove for a monopolistic position by prescribing a certain minimum capital for the prospective master.
THE CRAFT GUILDS

At this point the organization of apprentices and journeymen appeared, being especially characteristic of continental Europe. First, the period of apprenticeship was fixed and progressively lengthened,—in England to seven years, elsewhere to five, and in Germany to three. After the apprentice finished his instruction he became a journeyman. For the latter also, a period of unremunerated work was prescribed. In Germany this condition led to the institution of the wander years. The journeyman must travel for a certain time before he was allowed to settle anywhere as a master, an arrangement which was never known in France, or in England. Finally, the guild frequently went on to limit the number of masters to an absolute maximum figure. This measure was not always taken in the interest of the guild as a monopoly, but was established by the city (its lord or its council), especially when the latter feared an insufficient productive capacity in products of military use or political importance as means of life, as a result of too large a number of masters.

With the closing of the guild was associated a tendency to hereditary appropriation of the position of master. The resulting preference of the sons of masters, and even their sons-in-law, for admission into the guild is a phenomenon common to all countries in the middle ages, although it never became a universal rule. With this development the character of certain parts of medieval craft work as small capitalism is determined, and corresponding to this character a permanent class of journeymen originates. This development took place not only where craft work was carried on as price work and a certain capital was necessary for the purchase of raw material and for carrying on the industry, but most commonly where the limitation of the number of masters was established.
CHAPTER X

THE ORIGIN OF THE EUROPEAN GUILDS

In the large household of the feudal lords and princes as we have seen, the artificia existed alongside the officia, providing for the economic and political needs. Did the guilds develop out of these organizations on the landed estates as the so-called manorial law theory had affirmed? This theory started from the assertion that as a demonstrable fact the manor included workers for its own needs, a seigniorial organization which was an integral part of the system of manorial law. The era of money economy begins in the granting of market concessions. The landed proprietors find it to their advantage to have markets on their land because they can collect duties from the merchants. Thus arises a market opportunity for the craftsman, who previously provided only the compulsory contribution to the needs of the lord. The next stage in the development is the town. It was regularly founded on the basis of an imperial grant to a prince or lord who used it to employ as a source of rent the craftsmen bound to him by the manorial law. On this account, the theory contends, he forced the guild organization upon the craftsman in view of his political designs of a military character or for his household purposes. Hence the guilds are originally official organizations of the lord of the town (magisteria). Now begins the third stage, the epoch of guild fusion. The craftsmen associated in this manorial law organization combine and become economically independ-
ent after they have gotten money in their hands through production for the market. Then begins the struggle for the market and for autonomy, in which the guilds are increasingly successful, and the lord is finally expropriated as a result of the introduction of money economy.

On the whole this theory is untenable. It does not take sufficient account of the fact that the lord of the town,—that is, the judicial lord—is a different functionary from the lord of the land and that the founding of the town is regularly connected in some way with the transfer of the judicial authority to the person to whom the town privilege is granted. The judicial lord is in a position, by virtue of his power as public judge, to lay upon those within his jurisdiction burdens similar to those which the lord of the land or personal liege lord laid upon his dependents. The judicial lord is indeed subject to certain limitations, in so far as he must strive to attract settlers by making the burdens as light as possible. In consequence of the judicial power we frequently find its holder in possession of compulsory services of dependents, such as were formerly met with only in connection with the personal liege lord. Heriot and the share of the lord in inheritance are thus not always a sure indication of personal bondage; the town lords also took such acknowledgments from persons free from bondage or compulsory land services. Consequently the craftsmen who were subject to such burdens do not necessarily have to trace their development back to the personal suzerainty of the judicial lords in question.

Still less positively valid is the assumption that the guild regularly developed out of manorial law. As a matter of fact we may find in one and the same town both separate manors and a tendency toward an exclusive unity which later develops into a guild. There is no possibility of
asserting that the customary law of one of the manors was the basis of this unity. Often the territorial lords even strove to prevent their dependent craftsmen belonging to the *artificia* from joining the guilds. For it is not demonstrable that the associations which we find previous to the appearance of the guilds—the *fraternitatem*, for example—developed into guilds. The *fraternitatem* were religious societies, while the guilds were secular in origin. It is true that we know numerous instances in which religious associations later became the germs of those of a profane character, but it can be shown that the guilds were originally non-religious and laid claims to religious functions only in the later middle ages, especially after the appearance of the Corpus-Christi Day processions. Finally, the manorial law theory overestimates the power of the territorial lords in general. Where their authority was not combined with the judicial authority, it was relatively small.

The actual contributions of territorial dominion in the development of industry and the origin of the guilds lie in another field than that assumed by the manorial law theory. In connection with the market concession and the ancient tradition of skilled craftsmen separated from household and clan, it contributed to the production of the individual skilled artisan outside of household and clan groupings. Thus it is one of the elements which obstructed in the west the development toward household, clan, and tribal industry, such as took place in China and India. The result was achieved through the fact that the culture of antiquity moved inland from the coast. Inland towns arose which became the seats of craft groups locally specialized and producing for a local market, exchange between ethnic groups being displaced. The oikos-economy developed trained craftsmen; as a result of the fact that
these began to produce for the market, the workers subject to head dues streamed into the towns and developed production for the market as a type. The guilds promoted this tendency and helped it to become dominant. Where the guilds were not victorious or did not originate at all, house industry and tribal industry persisted, as in the case of Russia.

The question whether the free or unfree craftsman is prior in the west cannot be answered in general terms. It is certain that the unfree are mentioned in the records earlier than the free. Moreover, to begin with, only a few sorts of craftsmen existed; in the Lex Salica only the faber occurs, who may be a smith or a wood worker or any other sort of artisan. In southern Europe free craftsmen are mentioned as early as the sixth century, in the north in the eighth, and from the Carolingian period they became more common.

But in contrast, the guilds first appear in the towns. To picture their origin clearly we must visualize the fact that the population of the medieval town was of mixed composition and that its privileges were not only for that class which was of free extraction. The majority of the inhabitants were unfree. On the other hand, compulsory services rendered to the town lord showing similarity to territorial or personal overlordship do not prove servility. In any case it is certain that a considerable fraction of the town craftsmen, perhaps a majority, did come from the unfree classes, and that only those who produced products for the market, and as price workers marketed them, were admitted to the status of mercator—a work technically equivalent to citizen (burgher). It is certain also that the mass of the craftsmen stood originally in a relation of wardship (Munimannentum), and finally that the craftsman in so far and for so long as he remained unfree
was subject to the judicial power of the lord, although only in matters requiring the consent of the baronial court. Hence, he was thus subject only in so far and for so long as he still possessed a land holding within a manor and was obligated to feudal land services; affairs of the market did not come before the baronial court but belonged to the jurisdiction of the mayor or the municipal court, to which the craftsman again was subject not because he was free or unfree but insofar as he was mercator and as such had a share in the affairs of the town.

In Italy, the guilds seem to have existed continuously from late Roman times. In contrast, no guild is to be thought of in the north whose laws did not rest on a grant from a judicial lord, for only he was in a position to exercise the compulsion necessary for maintaining guild life. Apparently, private associations of various sorts preceded the guilds; and in fact we know no more about the matter of origins.

Originally, the town lords reserved certain rights as against the guilds; especially, since they demanded certain services of a military and economic character as taxes from the guilds for the purposes of the town, they insisted on naming the head of the guild, and on grounds of subsistence policy and of police and military considerations they often carried control deep into the guilds' economic affairs. All these prerogatives of the town lords were later acquired by the guilds, either by way of revolution or for compensation through buying out the possessor. In general they were engaged in a struggle from the beginning. They contended first for the right to choose their own leaders and make their own laws; otherwise they would not have been in a position to carry out their monopolistic policies. In regard to compulsory membership in the guild they usually secured their end without
difficulty, because it was in the interest of the town lord himself. They also struggled to free themselves from the burdens laid upon them,—compulsory services, due to town lord or town council, quit-rents both personal and connected with land, general taxes, and rents demanded of them. Often the contest ended in the guild converting the burden into a fixed money payment, the obligation of which it assumed as a group. As early as 1099 the struggle of the weavers of Mayence for freedom from the feudal dues were decided in their favor. Finally, the guilds struggled against wardship (Muntmannentum), especially the representation of the ward before the court by the patron, and in general for political equality with the upper class families.

After victory was won in these struggles the specific subsistence policy of the guilds begins with the tendency to establish the guild monopoly. Opposed to it were in the first place the consumers. They were unorganized, as today and always, but the town or the prince might become their champion. Both of these set up a vigorous resistance to the guild monopoly. In the interest of a better provision for the consumers the town often retained the right to name free masters without regard to the decision of the guild. Furthermore, the towns subjected the food industries to an extensive control through the establishment of municipal slaughter houses, meat markets, mills, and ovens, often imposing upon the craftsmen themselves the obligation to make use of these institutions. This regulation was the more easily put through since the guilds in their early days operated entirely without fixed capital. Moreover, the town struggled for power over the guild through the agency of price fixing, setting maximum wages or prices in opposition to the minimum wages and prices of the guilds.
Furthermore, the guild had competition to contend against. Under this head are included the craft workers of the landed estates, especially those of the monasteries, in the country and also in the towns themselves. In contrast with the lay lords, who were hindered by military considerations, the monasteries, thanks to their rational economic procedure, were in a position to set up the most varied industrial establishments and to accumulate considerable wealth. In so far as they produced for the market, they furnished notable competition for the guilds and were fought bitterly by the latter. Even in the Reformation period, the competition of monastic industrial work was one of the considerations which drove the burgher element to the side of Luther. In addition, the struggle was directed against the craftsmen in the country at large, both the free and the unfree, the settled and the itinerant workers. In this struggle the merchants regularly stood side by side with the rural craftsmen against the guilds. None the less the result was an extensive destruction of house industry and tribal industry.

A third struggle of the guilds was directed against the laborers, against those who were not yet masters, which set in as soon as the guild undertook limitation of numbers in any form or the closing of the guild or the raising of difficulties in the way of entry into mastership. In this connection are mentioned the prohibition against working on one’s own account instead of that of a master, the prohibition against working in one’s own dwelling—because the journeyman could not be controlled or subjected to house discipline—and finally the prohibition against marriage by the journeyman before he became a master; this prohibition could not be enforced and a married journeyman class became the rule.

The guilds struggled with the merchants, especially the
retailers, who met the needs of the town market and would draw their products from wherever they could obtain them most cheaply. Retail trade involved little risk in comparison with trade with remote regions and allowed a more secure profit. The retailers, of whom the merchant tailors formed a typical stratum, were the friends of the rural craftsmen and enemies of those of the town, and the struggles between them and the guilds are among the most intense known to the middle ages.

Parallel with the struggle against the retailers went wars within individual guilds and between various guilds. These arose first in cases where workers possessed of capital and others without it were present in the same guild, which presented an opportunity for the propertyless to become home workers for the wealthy members. A similar situation existed as between wealthy guilds and others possessing little capital, within the same production process. These struggles led in Germany, Flanders, and Italy to sanguinary guild revolutions, while in France only one guild outbreak occurred and in England the transition to the capitalistic domestic system was completed practically without revolutionary acts of violence. The field of such struggles is to be sought in situations where the process of production was divided transversely rather than on the basis of products. This was especially the case in the textile industry, where the weavers, walkers, dyers, tailors, etc. existed side by side, and the question arose as to which of these different units or stages in the single production process would force the others to leave it in control of the market, renounce to it the chance of large profits and become home workers on account of its members. The walkers were often victors, forcing the other divisions of the industry to be content with allowing them to purchase the raw materials and prepare them and market the
finished product. In other cases it was the finishers, or weavers, and in London the tailors, who forced the previous stages of the process into their employ. In England the result was that wealthy masters in the guilds came no longer to have anything to do with craft work. The struggle often ended in a compromise, to be resumed later and go on to the winning of the market by one of the production stages. The course of events in Solingen is typical. The smiths, sword furbishers, and polishers, after a long struggle, concluded a treaty in 1487, according to which all three of the guilds were to retain free access to the market. Finally, however, the guild of furbishers obtained control. Most frequently the final stage of production secured the market as a result of the conflict, because knowledge of demand was most easily obtained from that vantage point. This was regularly the case where a certain end product enjoyed an especially favorable market. Thus in wartime the saddlers had an excellent opportunity for bringing the leather dressers under their power. Or, the stage which possessed the most capital might be victorious, those who employed the most valuable productive equipment succeeding in the effort to force the others into their service.
CHAPTER XI

DISINTEGRATION OF THE GUILDS AND DEVELOPMENT
OF THE DOMESTIC SYSTEM

The disintegration of the guilds, which took place after
the close of the Middle Ages, proceeded along several lines.
1. Certain craftsmen within the guilds rose to the
position of merchant and capitalist-employer of home
workers, i.e. of "factor" (Verleger). Masters with a
considerable invested capital purchased the raw material,
turned over the work to their fellow guildsmen who carried
on the process of production for them, and sold the finished
product. The guild organization struggled against this
tendency, but none the less it is the typical course of the
English guild development, especially in London. In spite
of the desperate resistance of the guild democracies against
the "older men," the guilds were transformed into "livery
companies," guilds of dealers in which the only full mem-
bers were those who produced for the market, while those
who had sunk to the level of wage workers and home
workers for others lost the vote in the guild and hence
their share in its control. This revolution first made
possible progress in technique, whereas the dominance of
the guild democracies would have meant its stagnation.
In Germany we do not meet with this course of develop-
ment; here if a craftsman became an employer or factor
he changed his guild, joining that of the shopkeepers, or
merchant-tailors or constablers, a guild of upper class im-
porting and exporting merchants.
2. One guild might rise at the expense of another. Just as we find trading masters in many guilds, others changed entirely into mercantile guilds, forcing the members of other guilds into their employ. This was possible where the production process was transversely divided. Examples are found in England—the merchant tailors—and elsewhere. The 14th century especially is filled with struggles of the guilds for independence of other guilds. Frequently both processes run along together; within the individual guild, certain masters rise to the position of traders and at the same time many guilds become organizations of traders. The symptom of this eventuality is regularly the fusion of guilds, which took place in England and France but not in Germany. Its opposite is represented by the splitting of the guilds and the union of the traders, especially common in the 15th and 16th centuries. The dealers within the guilds of walkers, weavers, dyers, etc. form an organization and in common regulate the whole industry. Production processes of diverse character are united on the level of small shop industry.

3. Where the raw material was very costly and its importation demanded considerable capital, the guilds became dependent upon the importers. In Italy, silk gave occasion to this development, in Perugia, for example, and similarly for amber in the north. New raw materials might also provide the impetus. Cotton worked in this way; as soon as it became an article in general demand, putting-out enterprises arose alongside the guilds or through their transformation as in Germany, where the Fuggers took a notable part in the development.

4. The guilds might become dependent upon the exporters. Only in the beginnings of the industry could the household or tribal unit peddle its own products. As soon, on the other hand, as an industry became entirely or
strongly based on exportation, the factor-entrepreneur was indispensable; the individual craftsman failed in the face of the requirements of exportation. The merchant, however, possessed not only the necessary capital but also the requisite knowledge of market operations—and treated them as trade secrets.

The textile industry became the main seat of the domestic system; here, its beginnings go back into the early middle ages. From the 11th century on there was a struggle between wool and linen, and in the 17th and 18th centuries between wool and cotton, with the victory of the second in each case. Charlemagne wore nothing but linen, but later, with increasing demilitarization, the demand for wool increased and at the same time with the clearing of forests the fur industry disappeared and furs became constantly dearer. Woolen goods were the principal commodity in the markets of the Middle Ages; they play the leading role everywhere, in France, England and Italy. Wool was always partly worked up in the country, but became the foundation of the greatness and the economic prosperity of the medieval city; at the head of the revolutionary movements in the city of Florence, marched the guilds of the wool workers. Here again we find early traces of the putting-out system. As early as the 13th century independent wool factors worked in Paris for the permanent market of the Champagne fairs. In general we find the system earliest in Flanders, and later in England, where the Flanders woolen industry called forth mass production of wool.

In fact, wool determined the course of English industrial history, in the form of raw wool, partial products and finished goods. As early as the 13th and 14th centuries England exported wool and partial manufactures of wool. Under the initiative of the dyers and made-up clothing
interests, the English woolen industry finally became transformed to the basis of exportation of finished products. The peculiar feature of this development is that it resulted in the rise of domestic industry through the rural weavers and the town merchants. The English guilds became predominantly trading guilds, and in the final period of the middle ages attached to themselves rural craftsmen. At this time the garment makers and the dyers were settled in the towns, the weavers in the country. Within the city trading guilds broke out finally the struggle between the dyers and garment makers on the one hand and the exporters on the other. Export capital and merchant-employer capital became separated and fought out their conflicts of interest within the woolen industry under Elizabeth and in the 17th century, while on the other side employer capital had also to contend with the craft guilds; this was the first conflict between industrial and trading capital. This situation, which became characteristic of all the large industries of England, led to the complete exclusion of the English guilds from influence on the development of production.

The further course of events followed different lines in England and France as compared with Germany, in consequence of the difference in the relation between capital and the craft guilds. In England, and especially in France, the transition to the domestic system is the universal phenomenon. Resistance to it ceased automatically without calling forth interference from above. As a result, in England after the 14th century, a small master class took the place of the working class. Precisely the opposite happened in Germany. In England, the development just described signified the dissolution of the guild spirit. Where we find amalgamation and fusion of various guilds, the initiative proceeds from the trading class, which
was not to be restrained by guild limitations. They united within the guilds and excluded the masters without capital. Thus formally the guilds maintained themselves for a long time; the suffrage of the city of London, which was nothing but an organization of wealthy dignitaries, was a guild survival.

In Germany, the development proceeds in reverse order. Here the guilds more and more became closed groups in consequence of the narrowing of the field of subsistence policy, and political considerations also played a part. In England there was wanting the particularism of the towns, which dominates the whole of German economic history. The German town pursued an independent guild policy as long as it could, even after it was included in the territorial state of a prince. By contrast, the independent economic policy of the towns ceased early in England and France, as their autonomy was cut off. The English towns found the path to progress open because they were represented in Parliament, and in the 14th and 15th centuries—in contrast with later times—the overwhelming majority of the representatives came from urban circles. In the period of the Hundred Years War with France, the Parliament determined English policy and the interests brought together there pursued a rational, unitary industrial policy. In the 16th century a uniform wage was fixed, the adjustment of wages being taken out of the hands of the justices of the peace and given to the central authority; this facilitated entry into the guilds, the symptom of the fact that the capitalistic trading class, who predominated in the guilds and sent their representatives to parliament, were in control of the situation. In Germany, on the other hand, the towns, incorporated in the territorial principalities, controlled the guild policy. It is true that the princes regulated the guilds in the interests of peace and order,
but in the large their regulative measures were conserva-
tive and carried out in line with the older policy of the
guilds. In consequence the guilds maintained their exist-
ence in the critical period of the 16th and 17th centuries;
they were able to close their organization, and the stream
of the unchained forces of capitalism flowed through Eng-
land and the Netherlands, less strongly even through
France, while Germany remained in the background.
Germany was as far from the position of leadership in
the early capitalistic movement at the close of the middle
ages and the beginning of the modern era as it had been
centuries before in the development of feudalism.

A further characteristic divergence is the difference
in regard to social stresses. In Germany, from the close
of the middle ages on, we find unions, strikes and revolu-
tions among the journeymen. In England and France,
these became more and more rare since in those countries
the apparent independence of the home-working small
masters beckoned to them and they could work immediately
for the factor. In Germany, on the contrary, this ap-
parent independence was not available as there was no
domestic industry, and the closing of the guilds established
a relation of hostility between the masters and the journe-
men.

The pre-capitalistic domestic industry of the west did
not develop uniformly, or even as a rule, out of the craft
organization; this occurred to the smallest extent in
Germany and to a much greater extent in England.
Rather it quite commonly existed side by side with craft
work, in consequence of the substitution of rural craft
workers for urban, or of the fact that new branches of
industry arose through the introduction of new raw ma-
terials, especially cotton. The crafts struggled against the
putting-out system as long as they could, and longer in Germany than in England and France.

Typically, the stages in the growth of the domestic system are the following: 1. A purely factual buying monopoly of the factor in relation to the craft worker. This was regularly established through indebtedness; the factor compels the worker to turn over his product to him exclusively, on the ground of his knowledge of the market as merchant. Thus the buying monopoly is connected with a selling monopoly and taking possession of the market by the factor; he alone knowing where the products were finally to stop. 2. Delivery of the raw material to the worker by the factor. This appears frequently, but is not connected with the buying monopoly of the factor from the beginning. The stage was general in Europe but was seldom reached elsewhere. 3. Control of the production process. The factor has an interest in the process because he is responsible for uniformity in the quality of the product. Consequently, the delivery of raw material to the worker is often associated with a delivery of partial products, as in the 19th century the Westphalian linen weavers had to work up a prescribed quantity of warp and yarn. 4. With this was connected not infrequently, but also not quite commonly, the provision of the tools by the factor; this practice obtained in England from the 16th century on, while on the continent it spread more slowly. In general the relation was confined to the textile industry; there were orders on a large scale for looms for the clothiers who turned them over to the weavers for a rental. Thus the worker was entirely separated from the means of production, and at the same time the entrepreneur strove to monopolize for himself the disposal of the product. 5. Sometimes the factor took the step of combining several
stages in the production process; this also was not very common, and was most likely to occur in the textile industry. He bought the raw material and put it out to the individual workman, in whose hands the product remained until it was finished. When this stage was reached the craft worker again had a master, in quite the same sense as the craftsman on an estate, except that in contrast with the latter he received a money wage and an entrepreneur producing for the market took the place of the aristocratic household.

The ability of the putting out system to maintain itself so long rested on the unimportance of fixed capital. In weaving, this consisted only of the loom; in spinning, prior to the invention of mechanical spinning machines, it was still more insignificant. The capital remained in the possession of the independent worker, and its constituent parts were decentralized, not concentrated as in a modern factory, and hence without special importance. Although the domestic system was spread widely over the earth, yet this last stage, the provision of the tools and the detailed direction of production in its various stages by the factor, was reached comparatively seldom outside the western world. As far as can be learned, no trace whatever of the system survived from antiquity, but in China and India it was present. Where it dominated, craftsmen might none the less in form continue to exist. Even the guild with journeymen and apprentices might remain, though divested of its original significance. It became either a guild of home workers,—not a modern labor organization but at most a forerunner of such,—or within the guild there might be a differentiation between wage workers and masters.

In the form of capitalistic control of unfree labor power, we find house industry spread over the world, as manorial,
monastic and temple industry. As a free system it is found in connection with the industrial work of peasants; the cultivator gradually becomes a home worker producing for the market. In Russia especially, industrial development took this course. The "kustar" originally brought only the surplus production of the peasant household to market, or peddled it through third parties. Here we have a rural industry which does not take its course toward tribal industry but goes over into the domestic system. Quite the same thing is found in the east and in Asia,—in the east, it is true, strongly modified by the bazaar system, in which the work place of the craftsman is separate from his dwelling and closely connected with a general centralized market place in order, as far as possible, to guard against dependence on the merchant; to a certain extent this represents an intensification of the medieval guild system.

Dependence of urban as well as rural craft workers upon an employer (factor or "putter out") is met with. China especially affords an example, though the clan retails the products of its members and the connection with clan industry obstructed the development of domestic industry. In India the castes stood in the way of the complete subjugation of the craftsman by the merchant. Down to recent times the merchant was unable to obtain possession of the means of production to the extent we find true elsewhere, because these were hereditary in the caste. None the less, the domestic system in a primitive form developed here. The last and essential reason for its retarded development in these countries as compared with Europe is found in the presence of unfree workers and the magical traditionalism of China and India.
CHAPTER XII

SHOP PRODUCTION. THE FACTORY AND ITS FORE-RUNNERS

Shop production, which implies separation between household and industry, in contrast with home work, appears in the most varied forms in the course of history. The forms are as follows: 1. Isolated small shops. These are found everywhere and always; the bazaar system especially, with its grouping together of a number of work shops to facilitate working together, rests on this separation. 2. The ergasterion. This also is universal; its medieval designation was fabrica, a term which is very ambiguous and may designate the cellar den leased by a group of workers and used as a shop, or a manorial institution for wage work with a banalité requiring its utilization by the workers. 3. Unfree shop industry on a large scale. This is a frequent occurrence in economic history generally, and seems to have been especially developed in later Egypt. It undoubtedly sprang from the gigantic estate of the Pharaoh; out of this seem to have developed separate shops with wage labor. Certain cotton working shops in upper Egypt in the late Hellenistic period were perhaps the first establishments of the kind, but this can not be finally asserted until the Byzantine and Islamic sources are made available. Probably such shops existed in India and China also, and they are typical for Russia, though here they appear as imitations of the west European factory.

Among earlier scholars, including Karl Marx, a distinc-
tion was current between factory and manufactory. The manufactory was described as shop industry, with free labor, without the use of any mechanical power but with the workers grouped and disciplined. This distinction is casuistical and of doubtful value. A factory is a shop industry with free labor and fixed capital. The composition of the fixed capital is indifferent; it may consist of a very expensive horse-power, or water-mill. The crucial fact is that the entrepreneur operates with fixed capital, in which connection capital accounting is indispensable. Hence a factory in this sense signifies a capitalistic organization of the process of production, i.e., an organization of specialized and co-ordinated work within a work shop, with utilization of fixed capital and capitalistic accounting.

An economic prerequisite for the appearance and existence of a factory in this sense is mass demand, and also steady demand,—that is, a certain organization of the market. An irregular market is fatal to the entrepreneur because the conjuncture risk rests on his shoulders. For example, if the loom belongs to him he must take it into account before he can discharge the weaver when conditions are unfavorable. The market on which he reckons must be both sufficiently large and also relatively constant; hence a certain mass of pecuniary purchasing power is necessary, and the development of money economy must have reached the corresponding stage, so that a certain demand can be depended upon. A further requisite is a relatively inexpensive technical production process. This requirement is implied in the fact of a fixed capital which requires the entrepreneur to keep his establishment going even when conditions are unfavorable; if he utilizes hired labor only, the danger is shifted to the worker, if the loom, for example, is left idle. In order to find a steady market,
again, he must produce more cheaply than under the traditional technique of house industry and the putting-out system.

Finally, the development of the factory is conditioned by a special social prerequisite in the presence of a sufficient supply of free laborers; it is impossible on a basis of slave labor. The free labor force necessary for conducting a modern factory is available only in the west in the necessary quantity, so that here only could the factory system develop. This mass of labor was created in England, the classical land of the later factory capitalism, by the eviction of the peasants. Thanks to its insular position England was not dependent on a great national army, but could rely upon a small highly trained professional army and emergency forces. Hence the policy of peasant protection was unknown in England and it became the classical land of peasant eviction. The labor force thus thrown on the market made possible the development first of the domestic small master system and later of the industrial or factory system. As early as the 16th century there was such an army of unemployed that England had to deal with the problem of poor relief.

Thus, while in England shop industry arose, so to speak, of itself, on the continent it had to be deliberately cultivated by the state,—a fact which partly explains the relative meagreness of information regarding the beginnings of workshops in English records as compared with continental. With the end of the 15th century the monopolization of industrial opportunities in Germany caused a narrowing of the field of livelihood policy and the problem of the poor became urgent. As a result the first factories arose as institutions for poor relief and for providing work. Thus the rise of shop industry was a function of the capacity of the economic order of the time to support
population. When the guild was no longer able to provide the people with the necessary opportunity to earn a living, the possibility of transition to shop industry was at hand.

The fore-runners of factory system in the west.—The industry of the craft guilds was carried on without fixed capital and hence required no large initial cost. But even in the middle ages there were branches of production which required an investment; industries were organized either through the provision of capital by the guild communally, or by the town, or feudally by an overlord. Before the middle ages, and outside of Europe, they were auxiliary to estate economy. Among establishments of the work shop type which existed alongside craft work organized in the guilds, were included the following:

1. The various kinds of mills. Flour mills were originally built by the lords, either lords of the land or judicial lords; this applies especially to water mills, control of which fell to the lord by virtue of his right to the water. They were typically a subject of banalités or legally compulsory utilization (Mühlenbann), without which they could not have existed. The majority of them were in the possession of territorial rulers; the Margraves of Brandenburg possessed no less than 56 mills in Neumark in 1337. The mills were small, but their construction was none the less beyond the financial capacity of the individual miller. In part they were acquired by the towns. Regularly they were leased by the prince or town, the lease often being hereditary; the operation was always on a retail basis. All this applies to saw mills, oil presses, fulling mills, etc., as well as grain mills. It sometimes happened that the territorial lord or the town leased the mill to urban families, giving rise to a mill-patriciate. Toward the end of the 13th century, the partician families of Cologne who held 13 mills organized an association distributing the
profit in fixed shares; the organization was distinguished from a joint stock company by the fact that the mills were hired out for use, that is, exploited as a source of rent.

2. Ovens. In this connection again only those belonging to feudal landlords, monasteries, towns or princes, could produce revenue sufficient to perfect them technically. Originally they were built for the household requirements of the owners, but later their use was let for a fee and a banalité (Backofenbann) again arose.

3. Breweries. A great majority of breweries were originally built by feudal landlords and made subject to a banalité (Braubann) though destined particularly to supply the needs of the estate itself. Later the princes established breweries as fiefs and in general they made the conduct of such establishments a subject for concession. This development followed as soon as the sale of beer on a large scale began and there came to be a danger that too large a number of breweries in close proximity would fail to yield tax revenue. In the towns arose a municipal Braubann—aside from the preparation of the drink for a household—contemplating from the beginning an hereditary industry; thus the brewery was established on the basis of production for the market. Compulsory utilization of the brewery was an important right of the patricians. With the technical progress in the manufacture of beer, the addition of hops and the preparation of "thick beer" by stronger brewing, the brewery right became specialized, different types falling to different individual patrician burghers. Thus the right to brew attached only to individual patrician houses which had developed the most perfect technical methods. On the other hand there existed a right of free brewing, every citizen who possessed this right being entitled to brew at will in the established
brewery. Thus in the brewing industry also we find enterprise possessing no fixed capital but operating on a communal basis.

4. Iron foundries. These became of great importance after the introduction of cannon. Italy preceded other occidental countries with its bombardieri. To begin with the foundries were municipal establishments, since the towns were the first to use artillery, Florence, as we know heading the procession. From them the armies of the territorial princes took over the use of artillery, and state foundries arose. However, neither municipal nor state foundries were capitalistic establishments but produced directly for the military-political requirements of the owner, without fixed capital.

5. Hammer Mills. These arose with the rationalization of the working of iron. But far the most important of all such establishments worked in the field of mining, smelting, and salt production.

All the industries thus far considered are communally and not capitalistically operated. Establishments of a private economic character corresponding to the first stage of capitalism,—that is the possession of the work place, tools, and raw materials by a single owner, so that for the picture of a modern factory, only large machinery and mechanical power are wanting,—are found occasionally in the 16th century, perhaps even in the 15th century, but apparently none existed in the 14th. First arose establishments with the concentration of the workers in a single room, either without specialization of work or with limited specialization. Such industries, which are quite like the ergasterion, have existed at all times. Those in question here are distinguished from the ergasterion through working with "free" labor, although the compulsion of poverty is never absent. The workers who bound themselves to
such establishments had no other choice in view of the absolute impossibility of finding for themselves work and tools, and later, in connection with poor relief, the measure was adopted of pressing people into them by force.

The organization of such a workshop, specifically one in the textile industry, is described for us by an English poem of the 16th century. Two hundred looms are collected in the work room; they belong to the enterpriser owning the establishment, who also furnishes the raw material and to whom the product belongs. The weavers work for wages, children being also employed as workers and helpers. This is the first appearance of combined labor. For feeding the workers, the entrepreneur maintained a complete staff of provision workers, butchers, bakers, etc. People marveled at the industry as a world wonder, and even the king visited it. But in 1555 at the urgent behest of the guilds, the king forbade such concentration. That such a prohibition should issue was characteristic of the economic conditions of the time. As early as the 18th century the possibility of suppressing a large industrial establishment was no longer to be thought of, on grounds of industrial policy and fiscal conditions alone. But in this earlier time it was still possible, for externally the whole distinction between the industry described and the domestic system was that the looms were brought together in the house of the owner. This fact represented a considerable advantage to the entrepreneur; for the first time disciplined work appeared, making possible control over the uniformity of the product and the quantity of output. For the worker there was the disadvantage—which still constitutes the odious feature of factory work—that he worked under the compulsion of external conditions. To the advantage for the entrepreneur of control of the work, was opposed the increased risk. If he put the looms out,
as a clothier, the chance of their being all destroyed at a single stroke through some natural catastrophe or human violence was much less than with their concentration in one room; moreover, sabotage and labor revolt could not easily be employed against him. In sum, the arrangement as a whole represented only an accumulation of small industrial units within a single shop; therefore it was so easy, in England in 1543, to issue a prohibition against maintaining more than two looms; for at most ergasteria were destroyed, not organizations of specialized and co-shop and free worker.

New evolutionary tendencies first appeared with the technical specialization and organization of work and the simultaneous utilization of non-human sources of power. Establishments which internally represented specialization and co-ordination were still an exception in the 16th century; in the 17th and 18th, the effort toward founding such establishments is already typical. As non-human sources of power, the first to be considered is animal power, the capstan horse-power; natural forces came later, first water and then air; the Dutch windmills were first used to pump out the polders. Where labor discipline within the shop is combined with technical specialization and co-ordination and the application of non-human sources of power, we are face to face with the modern factory. The impetus to this development came from mining, which first used water as a source of power; it was mining which set the process of capitalistic development in motion.

As we have already seen, a prerequisite for the transition from work shop industry to specialization and co-ordination of labor with the application of fixed capital, was, along with other conditions, the presence of a secure market of minimum extent. Thus is explained the fact that we first meet with such specialized industry, with
internal division of labor and fixed capital, working for political requirements. Its earliest forerunners were the minting works of the medieval princes; in the interests of control these had to be operated as closed establishments. The coiners, called "house associates" (Hausgenossen) worked with very simple implements but the arrangement was one of workshop industry with intensive internal specialization of labor. Thus we find here isolated examples of the later factories. With the increase in technical and organizational scope, such establishments were set up to a large extent in the manufacture of weapons, including the making of uniforms, as soon as it became gradually established that the political ruler provided the clothing for the army. Introduction of the uniform presupposes a mass demand for military clothing, as conversely, factory industry can only arise for this purpose after war has created the market. In the same category, finally, and in the first rank sometimes, belong still other industries producing for war requirements, especially powder factories.

Alongside the requirements for the army in furnishing a secure market, was the luxury demand. This required factories for gobelins and tapestries, which began to be common in princely courts after the crusades, as decorations for the originally bare walls and floors, in imitation of oriental usage. There were also goldsmith goods and porcelain,—the factories of western princes being patterned after the ergasterion of the Chinese emperors; window glass and mirrors, silk, and velvet and fine cloth generally; soap—which is of relatively recent origin, antiquity using oils for the purpose—and sugar, all for the use of the highest strata of society.

A second class of such industries works for the democratization of luxury and the satisfaction of the luxury
requirements of broader masses through imitation of the produce destined for the rich. Those who could not have gobelins or buy works of art had a wall covering of paper, and thus wall-paper factories arose in the early days. Here belong also the manufacture of bluing, starch for stiffening, and chicory. The masses obtain in substitutes something to take the place of the luxuries of the upper strata. For all these products, with the exception of the last named, the market was at first very limited, being restricted to the nobility who were in possession of castles or castle-like establishments. Consequently none of these industries was capable of survival on any other basis than that of monopoly and governmental concession.

The legal position of the new industries in relation to the guilds was very insecure. They were antagonistic to the guild spirit and consequently suspect to the guilds. Insofar as they were not maintained or subsidized by the state, they at least sought to secure express privileges and concessions from the latter. The state granted these on various grounds—to guarantee provision for the requirements of noble households, to provide for the existence of the population which could no longer find support within the guilds, and finally for fiscal ends, to increase the tax paying power of the country.

Thus in France, Francis I founded the arms factory of St. Étienne and the tapestry works of Fontainebleau. With these begins a series of privileged manufactures royales for public requirements and for the luxury demand of the upper strata. The industrial development of France thus given a start takes on another form in the time of Colbert. The procedure of the state was simplified here as in England, through the granting of exemptions from the guilds in view of the fact that the privilege of a guild did not always extend over the whole town in which it
was settled; for example, a considerable part of Paris lay outside the guild jurisdiction, and the fore-runners of the modern factories could be established in this “milieu privilégié” without arousing opposition.

In England the guilds were purely municipal corporations; guild law had no validity outside a town. Hence the factory industry could be established, in harmony with the procedure under the domestic system and workshop industry, in places which were not towns—with the result that down to the reform bill of 1832 the new industry could not send representatives to Parliament. In general, we have almost no record of such factories down to the end of the 17th century, but it is impossible that they were entirely absent. The reason is rather that in England manufacturing could get along without the support of the state because the guild power had so far disintegrated that it no longer held any privilege which was a bar to such industry. In addition, it may undoubtedly be assumed that the development in the direction of shop production would have gone on more rapidly if conditions such as those of Germany had existed and the possibility had not been present of producing under a small master system.

In the Netherlands likewise we hear almost nothing of governmental grants of privileges. None the less, many factories were founded by Huguenots at a relatively early date in Amsterdam, Haarlem, and Utrecht, for the making of mirrors, silks, and velvet.

In Austria in the 17th century the state endeavored to attract factories into the country by granting privileges which would be a protection against the guilds. On the other hand, we also meet with the founding of factories by the great feudal lords; of these the first is perhaps the silk weaving works of the Counts of Sinzendorff in Bohemia,
In Germany the first manufactories were founded on municipal soil, and specifically in Zürich in the 16th century, when Huguenot exiles founded the silk and brocade industry here. They then spread rapidly among the German cities. In 1573 we find the manufacture of sugar and in 1592 that of brocade in Augsburg, that of soap in Nuremberg in 1593; dye works in Annaberg in 1649, manufacture of fine cloth in Saxony in 1676, cloth manufacture in Halle and Magdeburg in 1686, the gold wire industry in Augsburg in 1698, and finally at the end of the 18th century, widely scattered porcelain manufacture, partly conducted and partly subsidized by the princes.

To sum up, it must be held at present, first, that the factory did not develop out of hand work or at the expense of the latter but to begin with alongside of and in addition to it. It seized upon new forms of production or new products, as for example cotton, porcelain, colored brocade, substitute goods, or products which were not made by the craft guilds, and with which the factories could compete with the latter. The extensive inroads by the factories in the sphere of guild work really belongs to the 19th century at the earliest, just as in the 18th century, especially in the English textile industry, progress was made at the expense of the domestic system. None the less the guilds combated the factories and closed workshops growing out of them, especially on grounds of principle; they felt themselves threatened by the new method of production.

As little as out of craft work did the factories develop out of the domestic system, rather they grew up alongside the latter. As between the domestic system and the factory the volume of fixed capital was decisive. Where fixed capital was not necessary the domestic system has endured down to the present; where it was necessary,
factories arose, though not out of the domestic system; an originally feudal or communal establishment would be taken over by an entrepreneur and used for the production of goods for the market under private initiative.

Finally, it is to be observed that the modern factory was not in the first instance called into being by machines but rather there is a correlation between the two. Machine industry made use originally of animal power; even Arkwright's first spinning machines in 1768 were driven by horses. The specialization of work and labor discipline within the workshop, however, formed a predisposing condition, even an impetus toward the increased application and improvement of machines. Premiums were offered for the construction of the new engines. Their principle—the lifting of water by fire—arose in the mining industry and rested upon the application of steam as a motive force. Economically, the significance of the machines lay in the introduction of systematic calculation.

The consequences which accompanied the introduction of the modern factory are extraordinarily far reaching, both for the entrepreneur and for the worker. Even before the application of machinery, workshop industry meant the employment of the worker in a place which was separate both from the dwelling of the consumer and from his own. There has always been concentration of work in some form or other. In antiquity it was the Pharaoh or the territorial lord who had products made to supply his political or large-household needs. Now, however, the proprietor of the workshop became the master of the workman, an entrepreneur producing for the market. The concentration of workers within the shop was at the beginning of the modern era partly compulsory; the poor and homeless and criminals were pressed into factories, and in the mines of Newcastle the laborers wore iron collars down
into the 18th century. But in the 18th century itself the labor contract everywhere took the place of unfree work. It meant a saving in capital, since the capital requirement for purchasing the slaves disappeared; also a shifting of the capital risk onto the worker, since his death had previously meant a capital loss for the master. Again, it removed responsibility for the reproduction of the working class, whereas slave manned industry was wrecked on the question of the family life and reproduction of the slaves. It made possible the rational division of labor on the basis of technical efficiency alone, and although precedents existed, still freedom of contract first made concentration of labor in the shop the general rule. Finally, it created the possibility of exact calculation, which again could only be carried out in connection with a combination of workshop and free worker.

In spite of all these conditions favoring its development, the workshop industry was and remained in the early period insecure; in various places it disappeared again, as in Italy, and especially in Spain, where a famous painting of Velasquez portrays it to us although later it is absent. Down into the first half of the 18th century it did not form an unreplaceable, necessary, or indispensable part of the provision for the general needs. One thing is always certain; before the age of machinery, workshop industry with free labor was nowhere else developed to the extent that it was in the western world at the beginning of the modern era. The reasons for the fact that elsewhere the development did not take the same course will be explained in what follows.

India once possessed a highly developed industrial technique, but here the caste stood in the way of development of the occidental workshop, the castes being "impure" to one another. It is true that the caste ritual of India did
not go to the extent of forbidding members of different castes to work together in the same shop; there was a saying—"the workshop is pure." However, if the workshop system could not here develop into the factory, the exclusiveness of the caste is certainly in part responsible. Such a workshop must have appeared extraordinarily anomalous. Down into the 19th century, all attempts to introduce factory organization even in the jute industry, encountered great difficulties. Even after the rigor of caste law had decayed, the lack of labor discipline in the people stood in the way. Every caste had a different ritual and different rest pauses, and demanded different holidays.

In China, the cohesion of the clans in villages was extraordinarily strong. Workshop industry is there communal clan economy. Beyond this, China developed only the domestic system. Centralized establishments were founded only by the emperor and great feudal lords, especially in the manufacture of porcelain by servile hand workers for the requirements of the maker and only to a limited extent for the market, and generally on an unvarying scale of operation.

For antiquity, the political uncertainty of slave capital is characteristic. The slave ergasterion was known, but it was a difficult and risky enterprise. The lord preferred to utilize the slave as a source of rent rather than as labor power. On scrutinizing the slave property of antiquity, one observes that slaves of the most diverse types were intermingled to such a degree that a modern shop industry could produce nothing by their use. However, this is not so incomprehensible; today one invests his wealth in assorted securities, and in antiquity the owner of men was compelled to acquire the most diverse sorts of hand workers in order to distribute his risk. The final result, however,
was that the possession of slaves militated against the establishment of large scale industry.

In the early middle ages, unfree labor was lacking or became notably more scarce; new supplies did indeed come on the market, but not in considerable volume. In addition there was an extraordinary dearth of capital, and money wealth could not be converted into capital. Finally, there were extensive independent opportunities for peasants and industrially trained free workers, on grounds opposite to the condition of antiquity; that is, the free worker had a chance, thanks to the continual colonization in the east of Europe, of securing a position and finding protection against his erstwhile master. Consequently, it was hardly possible in the early middle ages to establish large workshop industries. A further influence was the increasing strength of social bonds due to industrial law, especially guild law. But even if these obstacles had not existed, a sufficiently extended market for the product would not have been at hand. Even where large establishments had originally existed, we find them in a state of retrogression, like the rural large industries in the Carolingian period. There were also beginnings of industrial shop labor within the royal fisci and the monasteries, but these also decayed. Everywhere work shop industry remained still more sporadic than at the beginning of the modern era, when at best it could reach its full development only as a royal establishment or on the basis of royal privileges. In every case a specific workshop technique was wanting; this first arose gradually in the 16th and 17th centuries and first definitely with the mechanization of the production process. The impulse to this mechanization came, however, from mining.
CHAPTER XIII

MINING¹ PRIOR TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF MODERN CAPITALISM

In the beginning mining was a matter of surface operations. Turf and bog iron ore, as in interior Africa, and alluvial gold as in Egypt, are probably the most important mining products of primitive times. As soon as underground work was undertaken, and shafts and galleries had to be driven, considerable expenditures of labor and material goods were necessary. These were exposed to extraordinary hazards, for one could never tell to what distance a vein would be productive or would return the important operating expenses which the mine required. If these were not kept up, the mine went to ruin and the shaft was in danger of "drowning." The result was that underground mining was undertaken co-operatively. Where this happened there developed an obligation to the industry, as well as a right, on the part of the associates; the individual could not withdraw from the establishment without endangering the group. The unit of operation was small to begin with. In the early middle ages, not more than two to five men worked in the same shaft.

Among the legal problems which developed in connection with mining, the first in order is the question, who has the right to carry on mining at a given place. This may receive an answer in various ways. First, it is possible that the mark association may dispose of the right, though positive examples of this are not found in the sources.
Again, it is conceivable that, in contrast with tribal operation, the right to these exceptional finds may inhere in the tribal chieftain; but this also is uncertain, in Europe at least.

In the periods for which we possess more than mere guesses the legal situation is covered by two possibilities. Either the right to quarry is treated as pars fundi, the owner of the surface being also owner of what lies beneath it (though this relates to the overlord’s title to the land and not that of the peasant) or, all hidden treasures are “regalia”; the political ruler, that is the judicial lord, a royal vassal or the king himself, disposes of them and no one, not even the holder of the land himself, can carry on mining without a concession from the political authority. This regale on the part of the political ruler was founded in the first place on the interest in the possession of precious metals in connection with coinage. Other possibilities arose in case the finder was taken into account either by the landholder or the lord of the regale. Today the dominant principle is freedom of mining; anyone has a right to prospect for minerals under specific formal requirements, and the finder who has secured a license and discovered a vein may exploit it even without consent of the landholder, on condition only of payment for damage inflicted. The modern system of free mining could be built up more easily on the basis of the regale than on that of feudal land law. If the landholder possessed the right, he excluded everyone from the possibility of seeking for minerals, while the lord of the regale, under some conditions might have an interest in attracting labor into the exploitation. In detail, the history of the development of mining law and the mining industry took the following course.

We have very little information regarding the earliest
industry outside the occident,—in India, and Egypt, for example, as to the mining works on Mount Sinai operated by the earliest Pharaohs. The mining organization of Greco-Roman antiquity is better known. The silver mines of Laurion belonged to the Athenian state, which leased the operation and distributed the yield to its citizens. The Athenian fleet which won the victory of Salamis was built through the renunciation of the silver by the citizens for a period of years. How the mines were operated we do not know. Some indication might be drawn from the fact that some very wealthy individuals owned mining slaves; Nicias, the commander in the Peloponnesian War, is supposed to have owned thousands, which he hired out to the lessee of the mines.

The sources for Roman conditions are not unambiguous. On the one hand the Pandects mention condemnation to mine labor, from which it would seem that the use of convict slaves or purchased slaves was normal. On the other hand, a selection of some sort must have taken place; at least the indications are that slaves who had committed any offense in the mine were whipped and expelled from mine work. In any case it is certain that the *lex metalli Vipascensis*, from Hadrian’s time, discovered in Portugal, indicates that free labor was already employed. Mining was an imperial prerogative, but the existence of a mining regale is not to be inferred; the emperors had a free hand in the provinces and seizing the mines was a favorite exercise of their power. The technique which the *lex metalli Vipascensis* indicates is in contradiction with information from other ancient sources. In Pliny for example we find a row of slaves set to work hoisting water from the bottom of the mine to the surface by passing buckets. In Vipasca on the contrary, galleries for the same purpose are established beside the outer shaft. Medieval gallery building
goes back traditionally to antiquity, but in other ways much of the *lex metalli Vipascensis* seems to echo later medieval relations. Mining is placed under an imperial Procurator, to whom corresponds the mine master of the political overlord in the middle ages. There is also the obligation to work. The individual receives the right of driving five *putei* into the ground, as in the middle ages five was the maximum number of shafts. We must assume that he was obliged to keep all five in operation. If he did not utilize his right during a specified short period—shorter than in the middle ages—it was taken from him and the privilege might be taken up by anyone who was in a position to carry on the work. We find also that in the beginning there were certain compulsory payments, and if these were not forthcoming the right to the mine was again thrown open. A part of the mining fields was reserved for the *fisc*, exactly as later in the early middle ages, and to it also a part of the raw product had to be delivered; this was first set at half, while in the middle ages it gradually sank to a seventh or even less. The operations were carried on by associated workers with whom any participant might come to his own agreement. The association imposed obligatory payments for the *socii*, to raise the cost of driving galleries and shafts; if these payments failed the mining right again became free.

In the middle ages Germany took the lead over all other countries in the precious metals, while tin was mined in England. In the first instance royal mines are found here, though not on the basis of the regale but because the land belonged to the king; an example is the Rammelsberg near Goslar in the 10th century. Placer gold mining was also carried on in the royal streams, the right being granted by the king for a fee, again not on the basis of the regale but on that of control over navigable waters. Leasing of
mining rights by the king is first met with under Henry II; here also the basis was not the regale but the lease of land to monasteries. In general, what was leased to the monasteries was only that to which the king had a legal right, by virtue of the control of the empire over the land. Originally the king possessed a tithing right in all mining products, which right was generally leased to private persons; but in the case of the monasteries this right is leased in the 11th century as imperial property.

Under the Hohenstaufens the relation of the political authority to mining advances a step farther. The conception of the regale which underlies the measures even of Conrad III was definitely formulated by Frederick Barbarossa; he declared that no one might obtain the *licentia fodiendi* without a concession from the king, for which a payment was to be made; even the feudal landlords had to get such a concession. The arrangement soon became an accepted fact, for the Sachenspiegel recognized the royal mining regale as an institution. However, the theoretical right of the king led at once to conflicts with the princes, whose right to the regale was first recognized in the Golden Bull.

The struggle over the mines between the crown and the feudal landholders is also met with in other countries. In Hungary, the king succumbed to the magnates, and if he wished to operate a mine was forced to buy the tract in question outright. In Sicily, where Roger I still recognized underground treasure as the property of the landholder, the kingdom established its claim to the regale in the second half of the 12th century. In France, the barons claimed the mining right as *pars fundi* down to about 1400. Then the crown obtained the victory and remained in absolute possession of the regale down to the revolution, which made the mines national property. In England, King John
claimed a universal regale, especially over the important tin mines, but in 1305 the crown was forced to recognize that the king did not have the right to make mining dependent upon a concession from him. In the 16th century, under Elizabeth, the regale was restricted in fact to the precious metals, all other mines being treated as pars fundi; thus the new industry of coal mining was free from royal claims. Under Charles I, the situation again wavered, but finally the crown surrendered completely and all underground treasures became the property of the owners of the land or "landlords."

In Germany freedom of mining, that is, freedom of prospecting, derived not from the mark community, but from the "freed mountains" (gefreiten Bergen). A "freed mountain" is a region containing minerals in which a landed proprietor may grant to anyone the privilege of operating. The Rammelsberg was still a royal establishment in the 10th century, but in the 11th century the king leased it to the city of Goslar and the monastery of Walsenberg. The monastery in turn granted the mining right to all comers on condition of payments on a free competitive basis. In a similar way the Bishop of Trent in 1185 granted to every member of a mining community made up of free workers the concession for exploiting his silver mines. This step, which suggests both the granting of markets and that of town privileges, is based on the position of extraordinary power which was obtained by the free laborers from the 11th to the 14th century. Skilled mine workers were scarce and possessed a monopoly value, and various particularistic political authorities competed among themselves in promising them advantages. These included even freedom of mining, the right to excavate to a certain prescribed extent.

On the basis of this development, the following epochs
may be distinguished in medieval Germany. First, the development seems to have proceeded out of a condition of concentrated exploitation by the strongest political authority, although feudal dues paid by peasants in connection with mines are occasionally mentioned. The next and most important epoch is that in which the mine workers occupy a position of great power. This resulted in an increasing transfer of mining works to the miners with expropriation of the lords, who became reduced to the position of mere tax receivers, utilizing underground treasures as a source of rent only. The mine owner is now the cooperative association of the workers. They divide the income in the same way in which peasants divided their holdings, that is, with the strictest maintenance of equality. The "mining community" arises, including all the mining interests, that is all those who work in the mine,—later those who have work done in them,—yet with exclusion of the overlords. This association represents its members in external matters and guarantees the payments to the overlord. The result was responsibility of the individual members of the mining community (Gewerken) for the costs of mineral production. Operations were strictly small scale; seven shafts constituted the maximum which might be acquired by a single miner and the shafts themselves were nothing but primitive holes. As long as the miner operated the shafts he remained possessor; if he stopped operations for even the shortest period, he lost his holding. Since the mining community jointly guaranteed the payments, the overlord entirely gave up operations on his own account. His rental right, that is his share, steadily and rapidly declined from originally half the product to a seventh and finally to a ninth.

The next epoch is that of incipient differentiation among the workers. There arises a stratum of miners who do not
take part in the actual work, alongside another of those who work but are dependent upon those who do not; hence, a development similar to that of the domestic system in industry. This condition was reached in many places as early as the 13th century although not yet predominant. Limitations on the shares were maintained however; large scale capitalism could not develop, but only a small rentier possession, although for short periods considerable profits were possible.

The third epoch is one of increasing capital requirements, resulting especially from the ever greater extent of the galleries. As it was necessary for ventilation and pumping to dig constantly deeper tunnels, which would pay for themselves only in the more remote future, considerable advances were required. Hence the capitalist enters the mining group.

The fourth stage was one of concentration in the mineral trade. Originally, each miner received his share of the product in kind, to do with as he pleased. In the face of this arrangement the mineral dealer was in a position to secure actual control over the output. His influence increased, and the typical aspect of the development is the appearance of wholesale dealers in minerals, especially in the 16th century.

Under the pressure of this situation the handling of minerals passed increasingly into the hands of the miners' general organization (Gewerkschaft) as a group, as in this way the miners sought to secure protection from the power of the dealers. This had the further consequence that the general union became director of operations, while originally the individual miner operated independently. A still further consequence was that the union became organized as a capitalistic association, with capital accounting, and that the share of the miners in the product came to
them only through the treasury of the union. There came to be a periodical accounting, every individual worker receiving debits and credits according to his performance.

In detail, the development of the organization prior to the appearance of modern capitalism proceeded in the following way. The lord was forced by the union of the mine workers to renounce interference in operations; the miners (Gewerken) forbade his officials to enter the shafts and only the members of the association had rights of control over each other. The obligation to operate was maintained, though no longer in the interests of the lord, but rather in that of the miners' association (Genossenschaft), which was responsible for the quit-rents. The parallelism with the Russian village, where the individual remains attached to the soil, in spite of the abolition of serfdom, is apparent. A further step was definite appropriation in shares by the miners. It is a matter of controversy how the shares were arranged, whether they were originally physical shares out of which later Kuxe or abstract shares developed. All the wage workers belonged to the mining community, but the miners' organization included only owners of shares. How early the union (Gewerkschaft) appeared is doubtful, but it is certain that the membership of the mining community and of the miners' organization ceased to be identical.

After the mine workers had come into possession not only of the means of production but also of the raw material, there began a process of differentiation within the working class in the mining industry, and the disintegration which called forth capitalism. The increasing demand for mine workers resulted in increasing accessions to the class. The older workers, however, refused to accept the new arrivals into the community (Gewerkschaft). They became "Ungenossen," non-members, wage-earners in the
position of apprentices in the service of an individual master who paid them on his own account. Thus arose associate or dependent miners, and an inner differentiation began, corresponding to the external one. Out of the distinction in position among individual workers in the production process arose a distinction in regard to the right to work in the mines. The increased need for specialization led, for example, to an increasing demand for mining smiths. These early became wage workers who in addition to a money wage received also a fixed share in the product. The difference in yield among different shafts also worked in the direction of differentiation. Originally the guild principle applied, in that the workers’ organization possessed the right of sharing as a whole in any especially productive shaft and of distributing the benefit of its yield among all the mine workers. But this came to an end and to an increasing extent distinctions arose in the opportunities of individual mine workers with regard to risks. Sometimes enormous profits were made, and sometimes the miners went hungry. Increase in the freedom of transfer of shares likewise increasingly worked for differentiation, since the members who did not participate in the work took advantage of the marketability of their shares.

Thus a purely capitalistic interest was able to make its way into the human group of the mining community. The whole process was brought to completion through the increasing capital requirement resulting from increasing depth of the works. The construction of shafts for water supply, and various demands for expensive equipment, became constantly more imperative. The increased capital requirement led to the result, first, that only the propertied associates remained miners with full mining privileges, and second, that new grants were made more and more ex-
clusively to persons who could show command over capital. In addition, the union on its part began to accumulate property. Originally it had none: the individual mine worker had to provide for his shaft and to advance the costs, and the union intervened only when he did not fulfill his obligation to operate. Now, however, the union was compelled to assist in relation to the capital requirement because to an increasing degree the building of shafts for clearing of water in addition to those for the working of the seams became the rule; at first the construction of galleries and shafts was divided between different associations, each being assured a share in the yield of the mine. These shares in the product were a thorn in the flesh of the miners. Increasingly they sought to get the excavations into their own hands. Now the union became a possessor of capital, but the former condition remained, the individual miner being responsible for the cost of his shaft. He had to advance the costs and this was considered his most important function after he no longer shared in the actual work. As before, again, he had to provide the individual workers, to make contracts with them and pay them, a condition which became progressively rationalized. The costs which the various shafts involved varied widely. The actual workers were in a position to maintain unity against the individual "miner." Thus finally the union itself took in hand the hiring and paying of the workers as well as meeting of the advances and costs for the shafts, and set up an accounting for the group as a whole, to begin with in small matters, on a weekly basis, and later year by year. The individual miner had only to make his advance and received the right to a share in the product, in kind to begin with. Finally the development ended in a condition in which the union as a whole sold the product and dis-
bursed the proceeds to the individual members on a share basis.

With this development fell into disuse the measures by which in earlier times the miners had striven to limit the development of inequality among themselves. One of these was the prohibition against the accumulation of mining shares, of which originally not more than three could be united in the same hand. This and all similar restrictions had to disappear, the more certainly as the union itself took in hand the entire conduct of the industry, to an increasing extent as the fields were systematically extended, and as more frequently the enlarged fields were leased to individual shareholders. The new arrangements contrasted with previous conditions, under which the unselective admission of free workers into mining had led to an irrational technique and to irrational sinking of shafts. Furthermore the amalgamation of the unions (Gewerkschaften) progressed, to the end of systematizing operations and of suppressing unproductive shafts, a phenomenon met with in the mining of Freiberg as early as the end of the 15th century.

Such phenomena are suggestive in many ways of the history of the guilds. The development having reached this stage, the lords of the regale began to interfere, from the 16th century on, joining hands for the purpose with the mine laborers. The latter, who were dependent upon the small-capitalist "miners," suffered under the lack of planning and the hazardous character of the industry, as did the individual miners themselves, while at the same time the income of the holder of the regale was decreased. Through interference of the lords of the regale, in the interest of the profitableness of the lease as well as in the interest of the workers, unitary mining rights were es-
tablished, out of which commerce in minerals developed. These rights are the immediate forerunner of the great capitalistic development; they rest on the basis of a rational technical and economic conduct of the industry in general. As a rudiment of the early development there remained the peculiar position of the mining community in the guild-like organization of the workers. On the other hand, the rational union was created by the lords of the regale, as a capitalistic organ of operation, with abstract shares, regulating the obligation of making advances and the right of exploitation. (Originally the number of Kuxe was 128.) The union as a whole employed the workers and dealt with the purchasers of the mineral.

Alongside the mines but independent of them were the smelteries. In common with the mines they belonged to the class of industries which took on relatively early the large scale character. For their operation charcoal was necessary; hence the large forest owners, that is the feudal lords and monasteries, were also typical smeltery owners of early times. Occasionally, though not in the majority of cases, the ownership of a smeltery was combined with mining. Small scale operations dominated down into the 14th century, so that for example a single English monastery might own no less than forty small furnaces. But it was also in connection with the monasteries that the first large furnaces were established. Where smelting and mining were in different hands, the ore buyers came in between, forming from the beginning a guild constantly at war with the miners’ unions (Gewerkschaften). In their policies they are distinguished by the most unscrupulous methods, but in any case we must recognize in their combinations the germ of the first gigantic monopolies which appear at the end of the 15th and the beginning of the 16th century.

Finally, some notice must be given to the most valuable
and most crucial of all products peculiar to the western world, namely coal. Even in the middle ages it was increasing slowly in significance. We find that the monasteries started the first coal mines; the mines of Limburg are mentioned in the 12th century, those of Newcastle began production for the market as early as the 14th, while in the 15th the production of coal was begun in the Saar district. But all these enterprises produced for the requirements of consumers, not those of producers. In London, in the 14th century, the burning of coal was forbidden because it polluted the air, but the prohibition was futile; the English exportation of coal increased so rapidly that special offices had to be established for gauging the shipping.

Smelting of iron with coal instead of charcoal first begins to be typical in the 16th century, thus establishing the fateful union of iron and coal. A necessary result was a rapid deepening of the mine shafts, and the technology was confronted with the new question, how can water be lifted with fire? The idea of the modern steam engine originated in the galleries of mines.
PART THREE

COMMERCE AND EXCHANGE IN THE PRE-CAPITALISTIC AGE\(^1\)
CHAPTER XIV

POINTS OF DEPARTURE IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF COMMERCE

In its beginnings commerce\(^1\) is an affair between ethnic groups; it does not take place between members of the same tribe or of the same community but is in the oldest social communities an external phenomenon, being directed only toward foreign tribes. It may, however, begin as a consequence of specialization in production between groups. In this case there is either tribal trade of producers or peddling trade in products of a foreign tribe. In any case the oldest commerce is an exchange relation between alien tribes.

The trade of a tribe in its own products may appear in various forms. It usually develops to begin with as an auxiliary occupation of peasants and persons engaged in house industry, and in general as a seasonal occupation. Out of this stage grow peddling and huckstering as an independent occupation; tribal communities develop which soon engage in commerce exclusively. But it may also happen that the tribe engaged in some specialized industry is sought out by others. Another possibility is the establishment of a commercial caste, the classical form being found in India. There trade is a monopoly in the hands of certain castes, specifically the banya caste, with ritualistic exclusion of others. Alongside this trade conducted on ethnically restricted lines is found also trade ritualistically restricted to sects, the magical-ritualistic limitations of the members of the sect excluding it from all

\(^1\)
other occupations. This is the case with the Indian sect of the dschaina. The dschaina is forbidden to kill any living thing, especially a weak animal. Consequently, he cannot become a soldier, or pursue a multitude of occupations—for example, those in which fire is utilized, because insects might be destroyed; he cannot make a journey in the rain because he might trample upon earthworms, etc. Thus no occupation is open to the dschaina except trade at a fixed location, and the honorable character of the occupation is as well established as that of the banya caste.

Not essentially different is the development of the Jews as an outcast commercial people. Down to the exile there were all sorts of classes within the Jewish people, knights, peasants, craftsmen, and to a limited extent traders as well. Prophecy and the after effects of the exile transformed the Jews from a people with a fixed territory to an alien people and their ritual thenceforward prohibited fixed settlement on the land. A strict adherent to the Jewish ritual could not become an agriculturalist. Thus the Jews became pariah people of the cities and the contrast between the pharisaical "saint" and the home population outside the law is still discernible in the Gospels.² In this turning to trade, dealing in money was preferred because it alone permitted complete devotion to the study of the Law. Thus there are ritualistic grounds which have impelled the Jews to trade and especially to dealing in money, and have made of their dealings a ritualistically restricted tribal commerce or folk-commerce.

The second possibility open in the development of trade was the establishment of seigniorial trade, a stratum of lords appearing as its supporters. First the idea might occur to territorial lords—and did in fact everywhere occur—to market the surplus products of their estates. For this purpose they attached professional merchants to them-
selves as officials. To this category belongs the *actor* in antiquity, who conducted his affairs in the name of the lord, and similarly the *negotiator* in the middle ages; the latter held as a fief, in consideration of a payment, the marketing of the products of his monastic overlord; his existence is not clearly demonstrable in Germany but his kind occur everywhere else. *Actor* and *negotiator* are not traders in the present sense of the word, but agents of others. Another sort of seigniorial trade originated in consequence of the position outside the law of foreign traders, who everywhere required protection; this was to be secured only through the political power, the noble granting his protection as a concession and for a consideration. Even the medieval princes granted concessions to traders and accepted payments from them in return. Out of this protective arrangement trade on his own account by the lord or prince frequently developed, as especially on all the coasts of Africa, where the chieftains monopolized the transit trade and themselves traded. On this trade monopoly rested their power; as soon as it was broken their position was gone.

Another form of trade which was taken up by princes is gift trade. In the ancient east the political authorities maintained themselves, when they were not at war with each other, by mutual voluntary gifts. The tables of Tell-el-Amarna, especially, from the period after 1400 B.C., show a lively gift trade between the Pharaohs and the Levantine rulers. The common objects of exchange were gold and war chariots against horses and slaves. Here originally the free gift was the custom. Numerous breaches of faith and trust which occurred in this connection gradually led to the imposition of mutual considerations so that a genuine trade on an accurate quantitative basis grew out of the gift trade.
Finally, in many places, economic history reveals trade by princes on their own account. Very old examples on the most extensive scale are furnished by the Egyptian Pharaohs, who as ship-owners carried on exportation and importation. Later examples are the doges of Venice, in the earliest period of their city, and finally, the princes of numerous patrimonial states of Asia and Europe, including the Hapsburgs to well along in the 18th century. This trade could be carried on either under the direction of the prince himself, or he could exploit his monopoly by granting a concession or leasing the privilege. In adopting the latter measures he gave the impulse to the development of an independent professional trading class.
CHAPTER XV

TECHNICAL REQUISITES FOR THE TRANSPORTATION OF GOODS

For the existence of commerce as an independent occupation, specific technological conditions are prerequisite. In the first place there must be regular and reasonably reliable transport opportunities. One must, to be sure, think of these in the most primitive possible terms through long ages. Not only in the Assyrian and Babylonian times were inflated goat skins used for the diagonal crossing of rivers, but even in the Mohammedan period, skin-bag boats long dominated the river traffic.

On land the trader had recourse far into the middle ages to primitive transport media. The first was his own back, on which he carried his goods down to the 13th century; then pack animals or a two wheeled cart drawn by one or at the most two horses, the merchant being restricted to commercial routes as roads in our sense are not to be thought of. Only in the east and in the interior of Africa does caravan trade with slaves as porters appear to occur fairly early. In general even there, the pack animal is the rule. The typical animal of the south is the ass or the mule; the camel does not appear until late, in the Egyptian monuments, and the horse still later; it was originally used for war and found application in the transport of goods only in more recent times.

Traffic by sea had to make use of equally primitive means of transportation. In antiquity, and likewise in the early middle ages, the boat propelled by oars was the rule. The
CHAPTER XVI

FORMS OF ORGANIZATION OF TRANSPORTATION AND
OF COMMERCE

(A) THE ALIEN TRADER

Commerce by sea is everywhere originally conjoined with piracy; the warship, pirate ship, and merchant ship are to begin with not distinguished from each other. The differentiation came about through the warship developing away from the merchant ship and not conversely, the warship being brought to such a technical development by the increase in the number of banks of oars and other innovations, that, in view of the costs and limited usefulness of the room left available for cargo, it was no longer available as a merchant ship. In antiquity the Pharaohs and the Egyptian temples are the first ship owners, so that we find in Egypt no privately owned shipping whatever. On the other hand private shipping is characteristic of the Greeks in Homeric times, and of the Phenicians. Among the Greeks the city king originally held possession of the ships both for trade and for piracy. But he could not prevent the growth of great families which shared in ship owning and finally tolerated him only as a primus inter pares.

Among the Romans in the earliest times, overseas trade was one of the main sources of the significance of the city. We do not know certainly how great was the ownership of tonnage, or the export trade; apparently, however, the Romans did not come to equal the Carthaginians in this
field. Later they went over to a purely import or debit commerce. After the Punic Wars private shipping rose from a zero level in Rome. But the Roman policy was so strongly continental in character that the possession of shipping was originally regarded as unbecoming for a senator; under the Republic and even in the imperial period he was forbidden to have more ships than were necessary to market his own surplus products.

We do not know how the operation of shipping in antiquity was organized from an economic point of view. The only certainty is the increasing use of slaves as a means of propulsion. The officers of the ships were skilled craftsmen. We find on Roman and Greek ships, the captain, helmsman, and a flutist who gives the rhythm to the rowers. Again, we have no clear idea of the relation between ship owners and merchants. Originally the former were merchants themselves, but a special class of traders by sea in connection with foreign commerce is soon met with, the ἐκτιθεμένοι of the Greek cities. This foreign trade must have been very slight in extent, for as regards goods for the masses, especially the grain requirements of the large cities of antiquity, provision must have been on a basis of communal self-sufficiency. In Athens the ship owners were obliged to bring back grain to the city as return cargo, while in Rome the state took in hand the provision of ships and supply of grain and regulated both far down into the imperial period. This arrangement did indeed assure peace and security to the sea traffic and was very favorable to the foreign commerce, but it was not permanent. The financial needs of the emperors, arising out of the necessity for a standing army on the frontier, forced upon them a leiturgical or compulsory service organization of state functions. To an increasing degree these were taken care of not through taxation but leiturgically, the fisc organ-
izing the various occupations along guild lines and laying upon them the labor burdens of the state. In consideration of this duty they received a monopoly of their respective branches of industry. This system led to a leiturgical organization of shipping also and consequently to an early retrograde development. In the third century the private marine disappeared, as did the navy at the same time, giving piracy a chance for a new and strong development.

For knowledge of the arrangements brought about in antiquity by the requirement of legal forms for trade, we are restricted to very few remains. We possess for one thing the *lex Rhodia de iactu* concerning shipping hazards. It shows that a number of merchants were generally carried on a ship. If goods had to be thrown overboard in a time of distress, the loss was borne equally by the participants. Another institution, the sea loan (*foenus nauticum*), which was taken over by the middle ages from antiquity, is a consequence of the fact that trade by sea was affected by extraordinarily high risks. If a loan was made on goods to go overseas, neither the lender nor the borrower reckoned upon repayment in case of loss of the ship. The danger which both incurred was shared in such a way that the creditor received exceptionally high interest,—probably 30%—in exchange for which he bore the entire risk, and in the case of a partial loss his payment was also reduced. From the court pleas of the Attic orators, Demosthenes and others, we know that sea loans resulted in affording to the lenders the possibility of getting sea commerce in their power to a large extent. They prescribed to the ship owner the course and duration of the voyage and where he should market the goods. The extensive dependence of the sea merchants upon the capitalists which finds expression in this arrangement leads us to
infer that the former were weak in capital. In order to
distribute the risk a number of lenders usually participated
in the loan upon a single ship. Furthermore, it often hap-
penned that a slave of the creditor accompanied the cargo
overseas, another indication of the dependence in which his
trade stood in relation to the money power. The sea loan
dominated the whole period of antiquity until Justinian
forbade it as usurious. This prohibition had no permanent
effect, resulting mainly in a change in the form of shipping
credit.

Conditions in the middle ages are obscure. In harmony
with pre-capitalistic institutions the shipyards belonged to
the cities and were leased to the ship building guilds. Sea
trade bore a less capitalistic character than in antiquity.
The common form under which it was carried on was that
of the association of all those interested in the same trading
enterprise. During the whole medieval period a ship
almost never went out on the account of a single individual,
because of the risk, but was always built for a number of
share holders; that is, partnership possession dominated.
On the other hand, the various partners would be concerned
in the ownership of several vessels. Like ship building
and ownership, the individual venture was usually the oc-
casion for an association. This included the ship owner,
the officers, the crew, and finally the merchants. They were
all brought together in a company and took goods with
them, although the merchants often sent a representative
or factor, an employee, instead of going themselves. The
danger was borne in common and gain or loss distributed
according to a fixed rule.

Alongside this organized community of risk existed the
sea loan of the capitalists. The latter was preferred by the
traveling merchants of the middle ages because it was
advantageous for them to buy goods by means of loans and
shift the risk to the creditors. According to the *constitutum usus* of the maritime law of Pisa, the rate of interest was 35%; it fluctuated around this level but varied according to a tariff of grades of risk. Originally, all the merchants included in the risk community themselves went on the voyage and took the goods with them; those involved were small merchants who peddled their wares. This custom declined gradually and in its place appeared the commenda, and apparently the *societas maris* was of contemporary growth. The commenda is found in Babylonian and Arabian as well as Italian law and in a modified form in the Hanseatic. The essence of it is that in the same organization two types of associates are included, one of which stays in the home port while the other takes the goods overseas. The relation originally represented only personal convenience, certain ones out of a number of merchants, chosen in rotation, marketing the goods of the others. Later it became an arrangement for the investment of capital. Those who furnished the money were in part professional traders but in part, especially in the south, money capitalists, such as nobles who wished to employ their surplus wealth for gain in commerce. The organization was carried out according to the plan that to the traveling *socius* was given money or goods estimated in money; this investment formed the trading capital and was called by the technical name *commenda*. The goods were sold overseas and others bought with the proceeds, which again on the return to the home port were appraised and sold. The mode of dividing the gain was as follows: if the *socius* who remained at home furnished all the capital he received three-fourths; if, however, the investment was provided by him and the traveling socius jointly—generally in the ratio of two-thirds to one-third—the sharing was by halves. The characteristic feature of this business was that capitalistic
accounting was employed for the first time; the capital at
the end of the operation was compared with that at the
beginning, and the excess determined and distributed as
gain. As to form, however, there was no permanent
capitalistic enterprise but only an individual venture, the
accounts being closed after each expedition. This arrange-
ment dominated sea trade throughout the middle ages and
after the transition to permanent capitalistic business had
taken place it remained the accounting form for the in-
dividual venture.

The turnover of medieval commerce as measured by
modern standards was extremely small. It was carried on
by mere small dealers who worked with trifling quantities.
In 1277 the English exports of wool amounted to 30,000
double cwt. In this quantity 250 merchants shared, so
that 120 double cwt. fell to each in a single year. The
average amount of a commenda in Genoa in the 12th cen-
tury was about 250 American dollars or 50 pounds ster-
ling in silver. In the 14th century in the domain of the
Hanseatic League, it was forbidden to take up more than
one commenda and the amount was not higher than that
given above. The total trade between England and the
Hanseatic League at the time of its highest development
came to less than 4,000 dollars or 800 pounds. For Reval
the conditions can be followed in the customs registers; in
1369 there were 178 merchants concerned in 12 ships leav-
ing the port, each of whom was involved for some 400 dol-
ars on the average. In Venice the typical cargo amounted
to $1,500, in the Hanseatic League in the 14th century to
$1,250. The number of ships annually entering the port
of Reval in the 15th century was 32 and for Luebeck, the
most important Hanseatic port, in 1368, it is 430—against
which are 870 departures. It was a crew of petty capital-
istic traders who traveled themselves or got others to travel
for them, and this fact explains the organization into com-
panies.

On account of the danger from pirates, a single ship was
not in a position to determine independently its time of
sailing. Ships formed themselves into caravans and were
either convoyed by armed vessels or were themselves armed.
The average duration of the voyage of a marine caravan in
the Mediterranean varied from a half year to a year. In
Genoa only one caravan a year went to the Orient, in Venice
two. The voyage in caravans resulted in an extremely
slow turnover of the capital.

In spite of these conditions the significance of the com-
merce as a source of income must not be underestimated.
In 1368 the turnover in all the Baltic ports together
amounted to nearly $4,000,000 measured in silver—three
times as much as the king of England received as the total
revenue of the state.

In land commerce the risk was less, as the only danger
came from robbers and not from natural catastrophes in
addition; but in compensation the expenses were incom-
parably higher. Corresponding to the limited risk the
company organization was absent; likewise any land loan
analogous to the sea loan. Attempts were made to estab-
lish such an institution, but the Curia interposed against it
as a notoriously usurious business.

In land commerce also it was the rule for the merchant
to accompany his goods. Not until the 13th century were
transport conditions secure enough that the merchant was
released from regularly accompanying his goods, making
instead the *victarius* responsible for them, a condition
which presupposed established business relations between
consignor and consignee. Land commerce suffered under
technical difficulties as a result of the condition of the
roads. The Roman roads have been a subject of much talk but conditions were far from ideal on these also. Cato and Varro warned against using them on account of the low persons who frequented them and also the vermin, and counseled against putting up in any tavern near the road on account of the excessive charges imposed on travelers. In the outer provinces the Roman roads may have served for commerce also, but they were not primarily intended for this purpose and their straight line courses had no regard for its needs. In addition, in the Roman period, protection was given only to those roads which were important for the provisioning of the capital or for military and political purposes. Their upkeep was imposed on peasants as a governmental function, on consideration of exemption from taxation.

In the middle ages the feudal lords were interested in the maintenance of commercial routes from a fiscal standpoint. They cared for the roads through their scararii—peasants upon whom the maintenance of roads and bridges was imposed as one of the most oppressive burdens which the feudal organization knows at all—and tolls were collected in return. There was no agreement among the lords establishing a rational layout of the roads; each located the road in a way to make sure of recouping its cost in duties and toll. A systematic planning of roads is first found in Lombardy in the days of the Lombard League.

In consequence of all these facts the volume of land trade in the middle ages was much smaller even than that of trade by sea. As late as the 16th century the factor of a large commercial house traveled from Augsburg to Venice to get 16 bags of cotton. It has been computed that the goods which went over the St. Gothard pass in one year at the end of the middle ages would have filled only from one
to one and a half freight trains. Considering the smallness of the volume the profit must have been correspondingly high to cover the duties and the costs of subsistence during the journey. In view of the condition of the roads the duration of the journey was also long. Even on land the merchant could not choose at will the time of the trip. The insecurity of the roads made it necessary to secure an escort, and the latter would wait until a considerable number of travelers came together.

Thus land trade, like that by sea, was bound to a caravan system. This is a primitive phenomenon and is found in Babylon as well as in the middle ages. In antiquity and in the orient there were officially designated caravan leaders. In the middle ages these were provided by the towns. Not until the peaceful conditions of the 14th and 15th centuries had established tolerable security could one begin to travel as an individual. On the technical side this was made possible through an organization of land transport in the form of the so-called pack train (*Rottfuhr*). The train system developed out of feudal arrangements, in which again the monasteries took the lead. The lord of the land placed horses, pack animals, carts, etc., at the disposal of the public for hire. The carts were provided in rotation by the possessors of certain peasant holdings upon which this burden was imposed. The feudal organization gradually gave place to a professional class, but a systematized industry only developed after the towns took the business of the trains in hand. The train workers organized themselves into a guild within the town, placing themselves under the strict discipline of the elected "forwarder" (*Aufgeber*) who dealt with the merchants and distributed the vehicles among the various members of the guild. Responsibility of the train leader was a principle generally recognized.
TRANSPORTATION AND COMMERCE

For inland shipping various forms of organization came into existence. The use of feudal or monastic ships and rafts often rested on the compulsion of a banalité, so that the lords actually had a monopoly over the movement of goods. In general, however, they were not able to exploit it themselves but transferred it to the union (Einung) of transport workers. Then this union of highly specialized workers secured possession of the monopoly and the lord was expropriated. In addition there arose rather early, though in general after the development of towns, free shipping guilds who regularly practised a system of rotation of the work. They transported goods in their own small vessels, the opportunities for gain being distributed according to rigorous rule by the guild. It also happened that the urban community took in hand the organization of shipping. On the Iser the burghers of Mittenwald had a monopoly of the rafting, the right to transport cargoes rotating among them in serial order. From the agricultural establishments at higher elevations heavy goods were rafted down stream, while goods of high value were hauled back to the higher regions. Finally, closed associations arose which took the shipping in hand, developing out of the feudal or guild organization—out of the former, for example, on the Salzach and the Inn. Originally the archbishop of Salzburg held the shipping monopoly as a fief; then arose a union of the ship operators who constituted themselves an inland merchant marine. The organization owned the ships, hired the transport workers, and took over the monopoly from the archbishop. In the 15th century he repurchased the privilege and granted it as a fief. On the Murg also, shipping rested on an industrial association of the forest shipping men, which grew out of the monopoly of wood and hence pertained to the owners of forest land. The large supply of wood in the
Black Forest resulted in the Murg shipping organization extending its field of operations to the Rhine, and it became divided into a Forest organization and a Rhine organization. Finally, the company took up the transportation of foreign goods with a view to the freight earnings. The Danube shipping organization in Austria and the Upper Rhine shipping organization developed out of guilds; thus in a way analogous to the situation of the mining community, shipping came into the hands of associations of workers.

The requirements to which these relations gave rise among the merchants, looked first in the direction of personal protection. Occasionally this provision took on a sacerdotal character, the foreign merchant being placed under the protection of the gods or of the chieftain. Another form was the conclusion of safe conduct agreements with the political powers of the region, as in upper Italy during the middle ages. Here later the burghers, by capturing their fortified places, forced the knights who threatened the trade to move into the towns and in part themselves took over the protection of the merchants. The fees for conduct were at one time the leading source of income for those living along the roads, as for example in Switzerland.

The second great requirement of commerce was legal protection. The merchant was an alien and would not have the same legal opportunities as a member of the nation or tribe, and therefore required special legal arrangements. One institution which served the purpose is that of reprisal. If a debtor of Genoa or Pisa, for example, could not or would not pay a debt in Florence or in Frankfort, pressure was brought to bear on his compatriots. This was unfair and in the long run intolerable, and the oldest commercial treaties aim at preventing such reprisals. Be-
ginning with this primitive rule of retaliation the need of
the merchant for legal protection gave rise to various in-
stitutions. Since the merchant as a foreigner could not
appear before the court, he had to provide a patron who
represented him; hence arose in antiquity the phenomenon
of the proxenia, which manifests a combination of hospital-
ity and representation of an interest. To it corresponds
the law of hostage in the middle ages; the foreign mer-
chant was authorized and required to place himself under
the protection of a citizen, with whom he had to store his
goods, and the host in turn was obliged to guard them on
behalf of the community.

In contrast with these arrangements it constituted a
great step in progress when with the increase in number of
the merchants a hanse was organized. This was ordinarily
a guild of foreign merchants carrying on trade in a distant
city, who organized for mutual protection. It goes with-
out saying that the organization pre-supposed a permit
from the ruler of the city. With this organization of the
merchants in a foreign country was regularly associated
the establishment of special merchant settlements, which
relieved the merchants of the necessity of immediately sell-
ing their goods. This purpose was served the world over
by the caravansaries of the land trade and factories for sea
commerce of the middle ages—the fondachi, warehouses
and sales rooms. In this connection there were two alter-
atives. First, the sales rooms might be set up by the
foreign merchants in their own interests, as was possible
when their activity made them indispensable to the place
where they settled. In this case they became autonomous,
choosing their own governor, as for example the merchants
of the German hanse in London. On the other hand, the
home merchants might set up institutions for the foreigners,
to control their access to the market and hold them in leash.
An example is the *fondaco* of the German merchants in Venice.

Finally, it became necessary to establish fixed times for trading; the buyer and seller must be able to find one another. This requirement was met by the fixed markets and gave rise to the market concessions. Markets were everywhere established for the foreign traders by concession from the princes,—in Egypt, India, and European antiquity, and in the middle ages. The object of such a concession was on the one hand the provision for the needs of the authority granting the concession, and on the other the promotion of fiscal aims; the prince wished to profit by the trade in the market. As a result the regulation of transport, for a consideration, was regularly associated with the market concession, as was also the establishment of a market court, partly in the interest of the prince who drew from it the court fees, and partly in the interest of the foreign traders who could not come before the regular domestic courts. There were also regulations affecting measures, weights and coinage and the time and method of trading. As compensation for these services the prince collected the market dues.

Out of this original relation between the merchants visiting the market and the authority granting the concession, evolved still other institutions. The merchants needed large quarters for having their goods tested, weighed and stored. An early development was a *banalité* involving compulsory use of the crane belonging to the prince, imposed as a method of taxation. Primarily, however, the fiscal interest was promoted by compulsory brokerage. The merchants also had to be checked in regard to the amount of their dealings, as payments were to be made on the basis of these. Accordingly brokers were established, an institution taken over by the west from the orient (*sim-*)
sarius, sensarius, hence Italian sensal). In addition to these requirements was that of compulsory routing. Since the prince had to guarantee the safety of the merchant the latter must utilize the roads belonging to the prince. Finally, there was the compulsion of the market, requiring that, with a view to control, the trade of the foreign merchants must take place publicly, in the market or the warehouse.

(B) The Resident Trader

The conditions pictured in the preceding section apply not only to the trade of the early middle ages but also to Arabia and the world in general, so long as the foreign trader predominates. Totally different conditions arose when the class of resident merchants developed.

Typically, the phenomenon of the resident trader is a product of the development of towns, although undoubtedly there were resident merchants previously, in the market settlements in the neighborhood of fortresses. The resident merchant was technically designated mercator. By this term the middle ages understood a trader who had acquired the privilege of settlement in the town, and primarily a retailer, whether he sold his own products or those of foreigners. In certain legal sources the term is used as equivalent to merchant in modern commercial law; a mercator is one who buys and sells, lucri causa. But this usage, which appears especially in Rhenish documents, cannot be taken as the common one for the middle ages. In the population structure of the medieval towns the mercator was not a wholesaler but rather anyone who brought something to market, the craftsman as well as the professional trader.

The professional trading class of the towns developed in
the following way. The resident merchant is to begin with an itinerant trader. He travels periodically in order to market products at a distance or to secure products from a distance and is a peddler who has acquired a fixed residence. The next stage is that in which he has the traveling done for him, either by an employee or servant or by a partner; the one arrangement goes over into the other. The third stage is formed by the system of factories. The trader has increased in capital power to a point where he founds independent settlements at distant points, or at least maintains employees there, and so establishes an interlocal system of relations. Finally, the resident trader becomes completely fixed in his location and deals with distant regions by correspondence only. This condition did not become possible until the late middle ages because there was not sufficient interterritorial legal security.

The center of gravity in medieval trade lies in retailing. Even the merchant who brought in goods from a distance, as from the orient, centered his interest in selling directly to the consumers. The risk was less, the gain more steady and secure, and in general higher than would have been the case with wholesale trade, and the business possessed in a degree a monopolistic character. Even the Hansards were not merchants in the present sense, but emphasized chiefly the control of retail trade in foreign lands, seeking to exclude foreign competition in retailing in Russia, Sweden, Norway, and England. Even in the 16th century the Merchant Adventurers in England, to whom Elizabeth granted privileges, pursued this policy. Wholesalers in the proper sense perhaps did not exist at all in the early middle ages, and toward the end of the period only in small and slowly increasing numbers, in the large commercial centers of southern Europe; in the north they were still exceptional.¹

The resident traders as a class had to contend against
other groups. One series of such struggles were external, such as the struggle to maintain the monopoly of the urban market. This was contested by the non-resident tribal and clan trade, especially in distant commerce connected with tribal industry, and the trade of non-resident foreign trading peoples. Out of the wish to suppress such competition grew the conflict with the Jews. In the early middle ages no hostility to them can be found in Germany. Even in the 11th century the bishop of Speyer invited Jews to the town in order, as he expressed it, to increase the glory of his city. It was in the time of the crusades that the first wave of anti-semitism broke over Europe, under the two-fold influence of the war between the faiths and the competition of the Jews, although we find anti-semitic movements even in antiquity. Tacitus condemned the Jews on the ground of "superstition," and as a Roman despised all oriental "extasis" as contemptible. This struggle against the Jews and other foreign peoples—Causines, Lombards, and Syrians—is a symptom of the development of a national commercial class.

The resident trader also contended with the merchants settled in the country, on the land. This struggle ended in the 15th century with the complete victory of the urban merchants; Duke Louis the Rich of Bavaria for example, (1450–1479), prided himself especially on having in the interest of control forced the rural merchants in his territory into the towns. Again, there was a struggle against retailing by other merchants, a struggle which took various forms. In part, the urban merchants established the requirement that foreign merchants could offer their wares for sale only on certain days. Sale direct to consumers was forbidden to them, and likewise, in the interest of control, all trade with each other, and finally compulsory disposal was imposed upon them; that is, the requirement
of selling at a given time and place whatever goods they had brought to that place at that time, whether to consumers or to local merchants.

The resident merchants succeeded in still further intensifying their control over the foreigners. They imposed the compulsion of hosting, the obligation of taking up residence with particular citizens who should watch over their activities (see above, page 213). Since this gave rise to the danger of forbidden dealings between guest and host, they devised public warehouses with compulsory occupation of these. Frequently, though not always, the two arrangements were combined, as in the case of the *fondaco dei tedeschi* in Venice. Every German merchant must live in this *fondaco* and store all his goods there. The *fondaco* had almost no power of self-government; its officers were imposed on the German merchants by the city, which itself controlled them through brokers. Compulsory brokerage, which was one of the most effective of all these measures, prevented trading between the foreigners and local persons. The rise of the brokerage system was due to the monopolistic tendencies of the resident trade and to the wish of the city to control every single transaction of the foreigners. The broker could not transact any business of his own or enter into any partnership relation; he was officially dependent upon the fees which came to him in connection with the business under his supervision.

The second great object of contention in the merchant class was in regard to internal equality of opportunity. One of the members protected by the group must not have better chances than another, and this applied especially to retailing. This purpose was served by the prohibition of pre-sale or "forestalling," and the right of sharing. The first of these rules prohibited dealers from selling goods before they had been brought into the town.
TRANSPORTATION AND COMMERCE  219

On the other hand, if one merchant, due to superior capital power, had bought more goods than another, the right of sharing became operative; it specified that any member of the association could demand that a part of the goods in question be given up to him on payment of their actual cost. This provision was endurable only in the case of retailers; wholesale trade, insofar as it affected goods from a distance, could not be subjected to such stipulations without being prevented from developing altogether. As a result a bitter struggle set in as the wholesale trade succeeded in winning greater freedom.

A third conflict which had to be fought out by the resident trading class was the conflict over the field of action as such. This related to the endeavor to exploit the opportunities of the town to the greatest possible extent. It gave rise to the struggle over the staple compulsion and restriction as to streets, that is, the right to compel all merchants to use a specified street at a specified place and to market goods at a specified point or port. This requirement was to begin with rather favorable for the development of the trade; without the monopoly which it created with reference to specific places and streets it would have been impossible in view of the small volume of the trade, to provide the technical requirements and meet the costs of the necessary port and street development. But this does not alter the fact that for those who secured the monopoly, especially the town lords and the princes, purely fiscal considerations ruled. Every territorial lord attempted by war to gain possession of staple and street rights. The conflicts which arose were very violent in Germany, especially during the 14th and 15th centuries. The staple and street rights formed both an objective and a resource in the struggle. If the right was once attached to a certain place the lord in control could inflict serious damage by obstruct-
ing and barricading the streets, and also by political means. The history of English-French relations in the later centuries of the middle ages is full of examples.

Finally, the resident merchant class was in conflict with the consumer’s interests, and was divided internally according as it was interested in the local market or in distant trade. The consumers wished as far as possible to buy at first hand from the foreign traders, while the interest of the great majority of the local merchants was opposed, looking toward regulating the market from the point of view of the retailer, while keeping open the possibility of securing supplies. In the long run it proved impossible to secure both interests. With the recognition of this fact began the splitting off of a wholesale trading interest and an opposition of interest within the mercantile group, while the interests of the retailer and the consumer began to draw together.

(C) THE TRADE OF THE FAIRS

The regular activities of both the foreign and the resident merchant looked toward the consumers. In contrast, the first form of trade between merchant and merchant is met with at the fairs. Since in the middle ages the retailer with purely local interest predominated, the fair developed as the most important form of interlocal trade organization. It is characteristic, in the first place, that the fair is visited not by local men but by traveling merchants who come for the purpose, and second, that the trade is concerned with goods in hand. The latter point distinguishes it from the exchange of the present day, on which goods not present and often not yet produced are dealt in.

The typical fair is exemplified by those of Champagne.
In the four principal cities of Champagne six fairs were held, each of which lasted for 50 days, including the business of arranging and opening the fair, the payment of exchange, etc., so that with exception of holidays the year was filled by the six fairs. They were organized from above; there was a court of the fair, the custodes mun-dinarum, composed of a civis and, in view of the question of safe conduct, a miles. The fairs are first mentioned in 1174 and reached their highest development in the 13th and 14th centuries. They had police and financial power over those who attended them and as the extreme penalty could impose exclusion. This measure was adopted by other powers, notably the church; not infrequently was excommunication threatened on political or fiscal grounds in order to exclude an offender from the fair, and entire communes have met this fate. Champagne derived its commercial significance from the fact that it lay between the English wool producing region and the wool manufacturing region of Flanders on the one side, and Italy, the great importer of oriental goods, on the other. Consequently, among the goods which were dealt in, the first place was taken by wool and wool manufactures, especially cheap cloth. In exchange for these the south brought articles of high value, fine tanned sheepskins, spices, alum, fine wood for the inlaying of furniture, dies for coloring cloth, wax, saffron, camphor, gum, lace—a mixture of the products of southern climes and of the east. The cloth fair was the most important of all the fairs of Champagne and had the largest turnover. All the coinages of the world met there. In consequence Champagne was the first home of the money changing business and the classical point for the settlement of debts, especially for the repayment of the debts of the Church. The man of power in the worldly sense who did not pay his debts was in fact invulnerable
to the merchant in his "Burg." Quite different the prelate who must expect to be excommunicated by his spiritual superior if he broke his word. The special credit reliability of the high spiritual orders thus established came to expression in the fact that a considerable portion of the bills of exchange were drawn upon prelates and were payable, on pain of excommunication, at the latest four days before the beginning of the general settlement. The purpose of this rule was to secure to the merchant hard cash for the business of the fair; it was mitigated by the fact that the obligation of the prelate enforceable by church action corresponded to an increased security of remittances to him, which were similarly guaranteed by ecclesiastical penalties.

No other fair of the period achieved so great significance. In Germany there was an attempt to establish a fair at Frankfort; it did develop gradually but never achieved the rank of the Champagne fairs or even that of Lyons. In Eastern Europe Novgorod, later Nijni-Novgorod, was a point of exchange between the Hanseatic merchants and the fur traders and peasant producers of Russia. In England, there were numerous fair towns but none was the equal of the fairs of Champagne.
CHAPTER XVII

FORMS OF COMMERCIAL ENTERPRISE

Rational commerce is the field in which quantitative reckoning first appeared, to become dominant finally over the whole extent of economic life. The necessity of exact calculation first arose wherever business was done by companies. In the beginning commerce was concerned with a turnover so slow and a profit so large that exact computation was not necessary. Goods were bought at a price which was fixed traditionally, and the trader could confine his efforts to getting as much as he could in sale. When trade was carried on by groups it was necessary to proceed to exact bookkeeping in order to render an accounting.

The technical means of computation were crude, down almost to the beginning of the modern period. Our system of characters, with values depending on their position, was an invention of the Hindus, from whom the Arabs took it over and was perhaps brought to Europe by the Jews. But not until the time of the crusades was it really known generally enough to serve as a method of computation; yet without this system, rational planning was impossible. All peoples who used a literal system of notation like that of antiquity and of the Chinese, had to have in addition some mechanical aid to computation. In antiquity and down to the late middle ages, the counting frame or abacus served this purpose and was still employed
after the Arabic position digits had long been known. For as the column system made its way into Europe it was at first viewed as a disreputable means of securing an immoral advantage in competition, since it worked in favor of the competitors of the virtuous merchant who disdained its use. Consequently it was first sought to exclude it by prohibitions, and even the highly developed Florentine cloth making guilds repudiated it for a time. But the abacus made dividing difficult, and it was ranked as an obscure mystery; the computations which have come down to us from the Florence of that time, which were carried through with literal notation, are wrong to the extent of three-fourths or four-fifths. On the grounds of this antipathy, the Roman numerals were still written for making the entries in the account books after the computations were actually carried out with Arabic figures. Down to the 15th or 16th century, the position system of notation struggled for official recognition.

The first books on computation usable by merchants come from the 15th century, the older literature, going back to the 13th, not being popular enough. Occidental bookkeeping was built up on the basis of familiarity with the position notation; the like of it had not been seen in the world and only foreshadowings are found in classical antiquity. The occidental world alone became the abode of money computation, while in the orient computation in kind has remained the rule; (the accounting in terms of grain certificates in Egypt will be recalled—above p. 58).

It is true that there was bookkeeping in antiquity, in the banking business—the Greek τραπεζίταυ and the Roman argentarii. The entries, however, were documentary in character; they were not designed as an instrument of control in connection with income. Genuine bookkeeping first arose in medieval Italy, and as late as the 16th cen-
tury, a German clerk traveled to Venice to secure instruction in the art.

Bookkeeping grew up on the basis of the trading company. The family is everywhere the oldest unit supporting a continuous trading activity, in China and Babylonia, in India, and in the early middle ages. The son of a trading family was the confidential clerk and later the partner of the father. So through generations one and the same family functioned as capitalists and lenders, as did the house of Igibi in Babylonia in the 6th century B.C. It is true that in this case the transactions concerned were not extensive and complicated like those of today, but were of a simple sort. It is characteristic that we hear nothing more of bookkeeping either from Babylonia or Indian trading houses, although at least in India the position numerals were known. The reason apparently is that there, as in general in the orient and in China, the trading association remained a closed family affair and accountability was therefore unnecessary. The trading association extending beyond the members of a family first became general in the west.

The first form of group organization was occasional in character, the commenda, already referred to. The continual participation in such ventures might gradually lead to a permanent enterprise. This evolution in fact took place, although with characteristic differences between southern and northern Europe. In the south the traveling merchant was regularly the entrepreneur, to whom the commenda was given, because in view of his year long absence in the orient he could not be controlled. He became the entrepreneur and received commendas from various parties, up to ten or twenty, accounting to each commendator separately. In the north, in contrast, the socius who remained at home was just as regularly the
entrepreneur; he was the one who entered into relations with numerous traveling socii whom he provided with commendas. The traveling factor was regularly forbidden to undertake more than one commenda and this brought him into dependence upon the settled partner who thus evolved into a managerial functionary. The reason is found in the difference between the commerce of the south and the north. In the south the journeys involved notably greater risk since they led into the orient.

With the spread of the commenda organization, developed permanent industrial enterprise. First, accountability penetrated into the family circle due to business connections with tractators from outside the family, since an accounting had to be made for each separate venture even when the particular commenda pertained to a member of the family. In Italy this development went forward more rapidly than in Germany, the south again taking the lead over the north. As late as the 16th century the Fuggers would indeed admit foreign capital into their affairs, but very reluctantly. (The Welsers were more broad-minded in this regard.) In contrast, the association of outsiders in family business spread in Italy with increasing rapidity. Originally there was no separation between the household and the business. Such a separation gradually became established on the basis of the medieval money accounting while, as we have seen, it remained unknown in India and China. In the great Florentine commercial families such as the Medici, household expenditures and capital transactions were entered in the books indiscriminately; closing of the accounts was carried out first with reference to the outside commenda business while internally everything remained in the "family kettle" of the household community.

The prime mover in the separation of household and
business accounting, and hence in the development of the early capitalistic institutions, was the need for credit. The separation remained in abeyance as long as dealings were in cash only; but as soon as transactions were suspended over a long interval, the question of guaranteeing credit intruded. To provide this guaranty, various means were used. The first was the maintenance of the wealth of the family in all its ramifications, through maintaining the house-community even to remote degrees of kinship, an objective to which for example the palaces of the great commercial families in Florence owe their origin. Associated with this was the institution of joint responsibility of those who lived together; every member of the house-community was answerable for a debt of any other member.

Apparently this joint responsibility grew out of a traditional criminal liability; in the case of high treason the house of the guilty person was razed and his family destroyed as suspect. This idea of joint responsibility no doubt passed over into the civil law. With the permeation of outside capital and outside persons into the family business for the purpose of trade, it was renewed at irregular intervals. Out of it arose the necessity for an agreed allocation of the resources at the disposal of the individual for personal use and of the power to represent the house in external matters. In the nature of the case, the house-father could everywhere bind the family, but this joint responsibility nowhere developed to such lengths as in occidental commercial law. In Italy its root was in the household community and the stages in its development are the common dwelling, the common workshop, and finally the common firm. It was otherwise in the north, where the large family community was unknown. Here the credit requirement was met by having all the participants in the trading venture sign together the document establishing the re-
responsibility. Then each participant was responsible for the group, usually without limit, though in the reverse direction the whole was not responsible for the parts. Finally, the principle became established that each participant was responsible for every other, even if he had not signed the document. In England the same result was achieved by the common seal or the power of attorney. After the 13th century in Italy, and after the 14th in the north, joint responsibility of all the members of a company for the debts of the firm as such was fully established.

The final stage in the development established as the most effective means for securing credit standing, and the method which outlived all the rest, separation of the property of the trading company as such from the private wealth of the associates. This separation is found at the beginning of the 14th century in Florence and toward the end of the same century in the north also. The step was unavoidable since to an increasing extent persons not members of the family belonged to the trading units; in addition it could not be avoided within the family itself when the latter came repeatedly to employ outside capital. Expenses for the family on one hand and personal expenses on the other were separated from business disbursements, a specified money capital being allocated to the business. Out of the property of the firm, for which we find the designation *corpo della compagnia*, evolved the capital concept.

In detail the development took various courses. In the south the field of its development was the great family commercial houses, not only in Italy but in Germany as well, as illustrated by the Fuggers and Welsers. In the north the course of development was through small-families and associations of small traders. The crucial fact was that the center of large money dealings and political money power lay in the south, as did also the bulk of the
mineral trade and oriental commerce, while the north remained the abode of small capitalism. In consequence the forms of organization which developed in the two regions were quite different. The type of the southern commercial company was the *commandite*, in which one partner carried on the business and was personally responsible, the other participating through his investment and sharing in the gain. This development arose from the fact that in the south the traveling merchant holding the commenda was the typical entrepreneur, and when he took up a fixed abode he became the center of the permanent enterprise which took on the form of the commenda. In the north the relation was reversed. The sources from the Hanseatic region at first give the impression that there was no permanent enterprise but that the trade was split up into purely occasional ventures and into a number of inextricably confused individual transactions. In reality these individual ventures were permanent enterprises and are accounted for individually because the Italian (double entry) bookkeeping was not introduced until later.

The forms of organization are the *Sendeve* and the *Wedderleginge*. Under the first the traveling partner was given goods on commission, receiving a share in the gain; the latter was designed to enlist his interest in the business by ascribing to him a share in the capital of the transactions from which he was excluded.
CHAPTER XVIII

MERCANTILE GUILDS

The mercantile guild is not a specifically German institution; it is found spread over the entire world, except that there are no unquestionable records of it in antiquity and in any case it did not in antiquity play a political role. In form the guild is either an organization of foreign traders for the purpose of legal protection against those of the locality, or it is an organization of native merchants. In the latter case it develops out of tribal industry and trade, as in China. The two forms are also found in combination.

In the occident, for example, we find to begin with only guilds of foreigners in particular localities; for example, the German trading guild in London of the 14th century, which established a storehouse called the "Steel-yard." Of an interlocal character were the hanses, a designation met with in Germany, England, and France, whose development varied much in detail. Closely related to them technically is the institution of the Hansgraf or count of the hanse, found in a number of towns. The hansgraf is an official granted a concession by the political authority, if not constituted by it, who is responsible for the legal protection of the merchant population engaged in interlocal trade represented by him; he never interferes in the form of trade itself.

Of the second type of guild, made up of resident merchants with the object of monopolizing the trade of a dis-
trict, there is an example in China, in the tea traders' guild of Shanghai. Another is the kohong guild in Canton, whose 13 firms dominated the whole of external commerce as a monopoly down to the Peace of Nanking in 1842. The Chinese guild practised price regulation and guaranty of debts, and held the power of taxation over its members. Its criminal power was draconic; a breach of regulations led to lynch justice on the part of the guild members and even in the 19th century there were executions for violation of the set maximum number of apprentices. In domestic commerce, bankers' guilds, and trading guilds existed in China, as for example the bankers' guild in Niu-Chwang. The Chinese guilds possessed great significance for the development of the monetary institutions of the country. Debasement of coinage by the Mongol emperors resulted in the disintegration of the coinage system. The ensuing paper money regime led to the use of silver in bars in the wholesale trade, and the guilds took in hand their preparation. Thus the guild became the center of monetary policy, achieving control of the determination of weights and measures, and appropriating to itself criminal jurisdiction.

In India, the guilds appear in the time of Buddhism, from the sixth to the fourth century B.C., and reach their greatest development from the third century on. They were hereditary organizations of traders with hereditary rulers. Their highest development was reached when they became money lenders to the various princes who were in competition with each other, and their decay was the result of the revival of castes which had been partly pushed into the background by Buddhism; after the Indian middle ages the policies of the princes again became dominant. Thus was formed the caste of the lamani or banjari which appeared in the 16th century in the pursuit of the corn and
salt trade and the provisioning of the army and was perhaps one of the roots of the present day banya or trading caste. In India we also meet with the differentiation of forms of trade according to various confessional sects. The dschaina sect is restricted by ritualistic considerations to trading at fixed points; the wholesale and distant trade based on credit is a monopoly in the hands of the Parsees, who are not restricted by ritualistic considerations and are distinguished by responsibility and truthfulness. Finally, the bhaniya caste carries on retail trade and is to be found in every connection where gain which is off-color from an ethical standpoint is to be made. Thus its members engage in tax farming, official money lending, etc.

In contrast with China, the regulation of the coinage, weights, and measures has in the west remained in the possession of the political authority, which either itself exercised the power or turned it over to the political agencies, but has never granted it to guilds. The great power of the guilds in this part of the world rests entirely on political privileges. The forms of guilds are various. First to be noticed is the city guild. This is a group which dominates the city and controls especially in the economic interests of industrial and trading policy. It is met with in a twofold form. Either it is a military union, such as the *compania communis* in Venice and Genoa, or it may be a separate union of the traders within the town (*mercadanza*), growing up with the craft guild. The second main type is the guild as a taxation unit, which is a specifically English institution. The English guilds derive their power from the fact that they took over from the king the function of collecting taxes (*firma burgi*). Only those who paid taxes were members and one who paid none was excluded and possessed no right to trade. The English
MERCANTILE GUILDS

guild owed to this fact its control over citizenship in the city.

In detail the evolution of the occidental guilds was highly various. The English guild merchant reached the peak of development of its power in the 13th century, after which began a series of internal economic revolutions. In the 14th century followed its separation from craft work; one who wished to remain in the guild must renounce craft activity. Immediately, however, the trading members began to come to the fore in the craft guilds and separated out as "livery companies," that is as members in full standing, being raised above the poorer craft workers by the cost of the livery or regalia, which the latter were unable to meet.

The separation of the wholesale traders from the retail was not yet complete in the 16th century, although at that time the first guild of foreign traders, the Merchant Adventurers, was founded by a concession. It is true that English legislation endeavored to restrict the guilds along craft lines, permitting their members to trade only in one type of goods. On the other hand, the power of a strong state always stood over the guilds in England, although their interests were also represented in Parliament. In consequence the cities never had the power over the country which they obtained in Germany, and rural traders and land holders were always admitted to the guilds.

In Italy the development went forward within the individual city states. The guilds kept their purely local character; after the separation-leagues (Sonderbund) obtained the victory over the consular constitution, there began a struggle within the guilds, between the craft guilds and trading guilds. In Germany we find at first traces of a development similar to that in Italy. A symptom is the
appearance of the burgomaster, who to begin with was an illegitimate guild master and whose position suggests that of the Italian capitano del popolo. In addition we find in many cities of north Germany a development resembling the English, a guild merchant determining the economic policy of the city. In a number of old rich cities of middle Germany we find, on the other hand, a guild which manages the city unofficially, as in Cologne the "Richerzeche," the guild of the rich merchants which financed the revolution against the archbishops, binding the citizens together under oath against the town lords and thenceforward ruling permanently in the city and controlling admission to citizenship. The rule in Germany, however, is the presence of trading guilds, among which the shop keepers and merchant tailors stand out. The shop keepers correspond to the retailers of today. The merchant tailors, who cut up imported cloth and sold it to consumers, became dominant in the smaller towns in the north; they always had to contest the market with the weavers, but generally obtained the victory, while in the large towns the patrician families stood over them in rank and dignity.

One cannot speak of a systematic trading policy on the part of the towns dominated by guilds, and especially of the town leagues, in the middle ages. The towns carried on no trade on their own account; this did not begin until the 16th century. The policy of the German Hanse may stand as an exception. It alone consciously pursued a consistent commercial policy, which shows the following characteristics.

1. Only the citizens of the Hanse had a right to share in the commercial privileges which the Hanse secured.
2. It aimed at direct retail trade in foreign countries and abstained from the forwarding or commission business, a policy on the basis of which it went to pieces as soon as
a local commercial class arose in England, Scandinavia, and Russia. 3. The Hansards made use in trade of their own ships only; they could not lease those of outsiders nor sell Hanse ships or shares in them to outsiders. 4. The Hansards carried on trade in merchandise only, entering into neither money transmission nor the banking business as did the Florentines. 5. The Hanse everywhere secured concessions for settlements and warehouses in order to keep its own members under control. All its business activities were subjected to strict regulation; weights and measures were prescribed; no credit business could be transacted with outsiders, the object being to prevent outside capital from becoming influential in the organization; even marriage with non-members was prohibited. 6. The Hanse made the first effort toward standardization, carrying on trade in fixed types of goods—wax, salt, metals, fabrics.

7. On the negative side, the Hanse had no customs policy; at most it collected duties for war purposes. Its internal policy was directed toward the dominance of a market aristocracy, and especially in the sense of suppressing the craft guilds. In the aggregate these measures represent a policy organized in the interest of a resident foreign trading class.
CHAPTER XIX

MONEY AND MONETARY HISTORY

From the evolutionary standpoint, money is the father of private property; it possesses this character from the beginning, and conversely, there is no object with the character of money which does not have that of individual ownership. The oldest private property consists in objects of individual handiwork, the tools and weapons of the man, and articles of adornment of both men and women. They are subject to a special law of inheritance from person to person, and in the field of such objects the origin of money is primarily to be sought.

Today, money has two special functions, serving as a prescribed means of payment and a general medium of exchange. Historically, the function of a prescribed means of payment is the older of the two. In this stage money does not enter into exchange, a characteristic made possible by the fact that many transfers of value take place from one economic unit to another which do not involve exchange but yet require a means of payment. Such are tribal gifts between chieftains, the bride price, dowries, head money, damage payments, and fines—payments which must be made in a standard medium. On a secondary level there become included payments from the chieftain to his followers, in contrast with those from subject to chieftain—that is the wage which the lord gives to his vassals in the form of a gift—and still later payments of generals to their soldiers. Even in a city like Carthage, and exclusively in

236
the Persian Empire, the coinage of money appears only for the purpose of providing a means for making military payments, not as a medium of exchange.

In this stage of development, money in the unitary sense of today is not to be thought of; rather in each economic zone different sorts of services rendered correspond to specific sorts of goods which mediate the payment function, so that different species of money exist side by side. For example, never and nowhere could a man buy a wife for shells, but only for cattle, while in small transactions the shells were accepted because they were available in small denominations. Money which develops in this way in connection with intra-group payments we call internal money.

A further function, which is less characteristic of money today but which it has performed through long periods of history, is that of a medium for accumulating treasure. The chieftain who wished to maintain himself in his position must be prepared to support his followers and to compensate them by gifts on special occasions. Hence the extraordinary value which was placed on the thesaurus such as was possessed by every Indian rajah and every Merovingian king. The Nibelungen hoard is nothing else than such a thesaurus. As means of accumulation, various typical objects were employed, such things as the prince was accustomed to give as presents to his followers and which at the same time constituted objects valued for the purpose of making payments. Here again money was not a means of exchange but merely an object of class possession; one who possessed it kept it only on grounds of prestige and for nourishing his social self-esteem. In this function money required one of the most important characteristics which is demanded of it today, namely, that of durability, in contrast with that of portability. Elephant tusks and huge stones of a certain quality, and
later gold, silver, copper, and metals of all kinds, serve as money and as a medium for accumulation. This class character money finds expression in two facts. The first is that in the primitive stage of development it is differentiated according to the sexes, the woman not daring to possess the same type of money goods as the man; thus the possession of certain aragonite stones was reserved to men while pearl shells were women’s money only and were used for the morning-gift of the husband to the bride. In addition, class differentiation involved distinguishing chieftain money from that of the subjects; shells of a certain size could only be acquired and possessed by the chieftain and were paid out by him only in case of war or as presents.

The function of money as a general medium of exchange originated in foreign trade. Its source is in some cases a regular commerce by gifts outside the group, such as that revealed for Egypt and the ancient east in the Tell-el-Amarna tablets.

A state of peace between two peoples presupposed continual gifts between their rulers; this is really a quasi-commercial exchange between the chieftains, out of which chieftain trade as such develops. To omit the gifts means war. A second source is a foreign product of wide spread use. The typical clan and tribal trade imparts to certain objects, not obtainable locally and therefore highly prized, the function of a medium of exchange. This external money took over the internal function where quasi-commercial payments were to be made, such as duties or road tolls. The chieftain provided the safe conduct but had to permit the merchants to pay with the medium which they carried with them. In this way the external money made its way into the internal economy.

At this stage of development money appears in nu-
MONEY AND MONETARY HISTORY

Numerous forms: 1. As objects of personal adornment. The type is the cowry shell in Africa and the regions of the Indian Ocean, extending into the interior of Asia. In addition there has been a great quantity of objects serving as means of payment or exchange in circles of varying extent—beads, amber, coral, elephant tusks, and certain kinds of scalps. Regularly and primarily decorative money was internal money; it became a general medium of exchange where the same means of payment was used in different tribes. 2. Utility money. This was primarily external money. As a means for carrying out obligatory payments or evaluating other goods, various objects of general use are met with; for example, grain, as in Java, also cattle and slaves. It is not generally, however, such articles of common use but rather means of enjoyment such as tobacco, brandy, salt, iron tools, and weapons. 3. Clothing money. This primarily performed the functions of internal as well as external money. As clothing money we meet with furs, skins, and fabrics, which are not produced in the locality. 4. Token money. Under conditions which have not the least relation to modern monetary conditions it happens that after people have become accustomed to certain objects on social grounds or accustomed to making certain payments in them, the monetary function becomes attached to them as mere symbols which have no value or significance in themselves. Thus in interior British India Chinese game counters are found as money. In Russia there has been fur money, consisting of bits of fur with no use value, and similarly in southern regions the use of quantities of cotton as money developed into the preparation of strips in a form which excluded real value but adapted them for service as token money.

Since in this stage not one means of payment alone but
many circulate side by side, some scale of relative values is necessary. They are generally brought together in a scale, not in the sense that a unit of one is made equivalent to so many units of another but that several objects together form a value unit. Thus in Java the value unit consists of a certain very valuable stone and 20 pearl shells. Of the Missouri River Indians it is reported that the purchase price for a wife consisted of two knives, a pair of trousers, a blanket, a flint-lock, a horse, and a leather tepee. The meaning is that a woman is of equal value with a complete equipment for an Indian warrior and is sold by her tribe for this amount. It follows that the basis of such value scales is not merely economic qualities but the customary worth of the goods, their traditionally imposed social significance, and also the requirement for round numbers easily handled. In this connection again the decimal figures play a special role. Thus there are tribes in which ten cocoanuts equal in value a certain quantity of tobacco, 300 dolphin teeth correspond to a woman, etc.

Head money and expiatory payments also, and other considerations expressed in money, have no relation to economic values but to social valuation exclusively. The head money (wergeld) of a free Frank amounted to 200 solidi. This amount was fixed because it had to be brought into a certain relation with the head money for a half-free or servile person. Only traditionally imposed evaluations find expression in these principles. As soon as economic exchange relations make headway, as was already the case in the early middle ages, head money is no longer determined in terms of a claim for restitution of damage but it becomes a typical phenomenon that a larger amount is insisted upon. Evaluation in terms of a given monetary good by no means always implies payment in the same good, but may be only a standard in which the payment
of the individual is measured. The latter may depend upon the capacity to pay of the dispenser—"in quo potu-erit"—not according to a tariff but signifying rather a traditionally fixed consideration for restitution.

Out of the conditions just described evolved the distinctive position of the "noble" metals as a nominal basis of monetary organization. The determining conditions of this evolution are purely technical. The precious metals oxidize with difficulty and hence are not easily destroyed, while in consequence of their relative scarcity they have a high value for the specific use of objects of adornment; finally, they are relatively easy to shape and to subdivide. The decisive fact was that the scales could be applied to them, and were applied at a very early date. The grain of wheat seems to have served as the earliest comparative weight. It goes without saying that the precious metals have also been employed in the form of objects of utility, but were specialized as a means of payment even long before they became media of exchange. In the former case they appear first in the chieftain trade; the tablets of Tell-el-Amarna show that the western Asiatic rulers expected from the Pharaohs more than anything else shipments of decorative gold. A preferred form for the gift of the prince to his followers was the gold ring; in the skaldic language the king is specifically called the ring spender.

In the form of coinage, money first appears in the 7th century before Christ. The oldest mints were located in Lydia, probably on the coast, and arose out of the cooperation of the Lydian king and the Greek colonists. A forerunner of coined money was precious metal in bars privately stamped by merchants, which appear in Indian commerce and later in Babylonia and in China. The shekel is nothing but a piece of silver with the stamp of a certain mercantile family, which was recognized for
conscientiousness in weighing. The Chinese tael is similarly a piece of bar silver stamped by the mercantile guilds. Not until later did the political power take over the coinage, and shortly afterwards assume a monopoly of the activity. The last seems however to have been the case in Lydia. The Great King of Persia stamped the darics as a means for paying his Greek mercenaries.

The Greeks introduced coins into commerce as a medium of exchange. On the other hand, Carthage did not attempt coinage until three centuries after its invention, and even then the purpose was not to secure a medium of exchange but merely a means for paying its mercenary armies. In general the Phenician commerce was carried on entirely without money, and it was especially the technical advantage of coins which helped to establish the superiority of Greek trading activity. Even Rome, which carried on an export trade in primitive times, went over to coinage very late and to begin with only to the coinage of copper. It tolerated the stamping of precious metal in Capua, while in Rome itself the most diverse sorts of coins circulated until 269 B.C. when the coinage of silver was taken up. In India coinage is first met with between 500 and 400 B.C. and was in fact taken over from the west; really usable coins in the technical sense are first found after the Alexandrian period. In eastern Asia the conditions are obscure; perhaps an independent origin of coinage is to be assumed. Today, it is limited to the coinage of copper, in consequence of the persistent debasement by the mandarins.

The technology of manufacturing coins had little in common with that of today before the 17th century. In antiquity the coins were cast, in the middle ages "struck," that is stamped, but until the 13th century it was purely a handicraft operation. The coin had to pass through the hands of not less than ten to twelve different craftsmen who
worked with hand tools only. The costs of the process were extremely high, amounting to a fourth of the value for the small coins and was still as much as 10 per cent in the 14th and 15th centuries, while today it may be placed at 10 per thousand. In consequence of the primitive technique the accuracy even of the best coins varied; even with the English gold crown, in spite of relative perfection of the process, the variation was still 10%. Commerce reacted to these errors by accepting the coins where possible only by weight. For fineness the stamp was a fairly secure guaranty. The first relatively exact coins which were also maintained constant were the famous Florentine gold gulden, after 1252. A really reliable coinage in the technical sense dates, however, only from the end of the 17th century, although the use of machinery in coining occurs somewhat earlier.

By a metallic standard we today understand in the first place the enforcement of certain coinage as a means of payments, either in all amounts (standard money) or up to a certain maximum amount (subsidiary coins); in the second place, connected with this is the principle of free coinage of the standard money which with the deduction of minimal costs of manufacture anyone at any time has the right to have made and with it to make payments to an unlimited extent. The standard may be mono-metallic or bi-metallic. In the latter case the only conception which seems possible to us is the so-called double standard, that is the several metals are set by law in a fixed relation to each other, as for example in the Latin Monetary Union gold stands to silver in the ratio of 1 to $15\frac{1}{2}$. The second possibility, which was much more prevalent earlier, is that of parallel standards. Under this rule there was either actual unrestricted coinage of the metals, with in general no scheduled value relation or only a periodical adjust-
ment of a varying value relation. In the choice of the
metal for coinage the matter of the needs of trade were de-
cisive. Internal and local trade could use only a metal
with a value not too high, and here we find silver or cop-
per or both. Distant commerce could and from necessity
did for a time get along with silver, but after the commerce
grew in importance it preferred gold. For the actual cir-
culation of gold, however, the legal relation to silver was
decisive; whenever one of the metals was given an un-
favorable valuation in comparison with the available sup-
ply, the consequence was that the coins stamped from that
metal would be melted up and used in commerce in this
condition.

The history of the value relation between the different
metals shows a sharp contrast as between eastern Asia on
the one hand and the western Asiatic and European con-
ditions on the other. Because the eastern Asiatic coun-
tries were cut off from the outer world an abnormal rela-
tion arose and it was possible to maintain a relative valu-
atation which never existed in the west. Thus in Japan for
a time gold was valued only 5 times as high as silver. In
contrast, the continuity was never completely broken in
the west. In Babylon values were reckoned in terms of
silver, which however was not coined by state agencies,
but circulated in the form of privately stamped silver bars
or shekels. The value of silver in comparison with gold
was set at 13½ to 1 and this relation remained the standard
for antiquity. The Egyptians took over the Babylonian
silver bars in the form of deben but reckoned in terms of
copper, silver, and finally gold, side by side, large amounts
being paid in gold.

For later antiquity and the time down to the Merovin-
gians, the monetary policy of Rome was definitive. Here
originally parallel standards of copper and silver prevailed
and the effort was made to fix the ratio at 112 to 1. The important measure was the manufacture of the silver sestertium equal to a pound of metal. Gold was coined merely as a commercial coin while copper progressively declined to the level of credit money for small transactions and came finally to have the character of token money. Coinage was in fact predominantly in the hands of military generals whose names the gold and silver coins almost always bore, even in the republican period; they were preferred as payment for spoils of war, and served the purposes not of commerce but of paying the army.

When Cæsar took over the imperial power the first real regulation of standards was instituted, Cæsar going over to the gold standard. His _aureus_ was intended to be equal to a hundred silver _sestercis_ on the basis of a ratio of 11.9 to 1. Hence silver had somewhat increased in value, a sign of the fact that trade experienced an increasing need for it. The aureus maintained itself down to the time of Constantine, while silver was variously experimented with. Nero decreed the _denarius_, increasing the prestige of the aureus. Caracalla pursued the debasement of coinage systematically as a business, and his successors, the barrack emperors, followed in his path. This coinage policy, and not the alleged outflow of the precious metals to India or a failure of mining, ruined the Roman monetary organization. It was restored by Constantine the Great. He replaced the aureus with the gold _solidus_ of which he coined 72 from a pound (327.45g.) of metal. In commerce the _solidus_ probably passed by weight.

The gold _solidus_ outlived the Roman empire. In the Merovingian period, it possessed the highest prestige in Germany within the area of the former Roman economic penetration, while to the east of the Rhine the older Roman silver coins circulated in a way somewhat similar to the
Maria Theresa dollar later in Africa. The change to the Carolingian rulers meant politically a shifting of the center of gravity from the western to the eastern portion of the Frankish empire; but in coinage policy, although much gold was imported into the empire from the east, it meant a change from a gold to a silver standard. Charlemagne after many measures not clear as to their import, established a unit pound of 409 grams—though this assumption is not undisputed,—and out of this pound coined 20 silver solidi of 12 denarii each. Officially, the Carolingian coinage system, the last survival of which is the English units of pounds sterling, shillings, and pence, remained in force to the end of the middle ages and with it, over by far the greater part of the continent, the silver standard.

The central problem for the coinage policy of the middle ages, however, was not that of the standard, but was raised by questions of an economic and social character which affected the production of coins. Antiquity took seriously the coinage monopoly of the state. In the middle ages on the contrary, the rule was appropriation of the coinage function by numerous territorial coinage jurisdictions and their proprietors. As a result, after around the middle of the 11th century, the Carolingian coinage system everywhere had only a common-law significance. The coinage right, it is true, remained officially reserved to the king, or emperor; but the manufacture of coins was carried out by an association of handicraft producers and the revenue from the coinage business fell to the individual coinage lord. Infeudation of the coinage right to individual coinage lords involved an incentive to debasement which was practised on a wide scale throughout the middle ages. In Germany the solidus sank from the 13th to the 16th century to a sixth of its original content; likewise in England
the *denarius* from the 12th to the 14th century; in France, was originated the *solidus grossus*, a thick coin stamped on both sides, which competed intensively with the thin *denarius* coined in Germany in the 12th and 13th centuries and stamped on only one side (*Brakteaten*); but the new coin sank from the 14th to the 16th century to a seventh of its value.

The coinage debasement which affected silver led to the result that in commerce, which has to compute in stable units, the prestige of gold was increased. In consequence it was an epoch-making event when in 1252 the city of Florence minted a gold *solidus* of $3\frac{1}{2}$ grams weight (*florinus, florin*) and maintained it at a weight as nearly uniform as was technically possible. Everywhere the new coinage was accepted, and it became the general monetary unit of commerce. Nevertheless we observe a pronounced increase in the price of silver, which can only have been caused by the urgent demand of the growing money economy for silver for use in trade. Toward 1500 the ratio between silver and gold increased from $12\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 to $10\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. At the same time there was an irrational fluctuation of the currencies in relation to each other and a difference between bullion and “pagament” or metal in the form of coin. While in wholesale trade men computed in terms of bars or Florentine gold gulden, in retail transactions the various coins were evaluated by agreement.

It was not only the greed of the coinage lords which was responsible for the debasement; it was due largely to the automatic working of the variation between specimens of the same coinage, which amounted to as much as 10%. Only the worst of the coins struck would remain in circulation, while the best made would be melted up at once, or in any case sorted out. It is true that the greed of the monetary lords contributed; they employed their monopoly
to put out new coins, cancelling and calling in the old. But the latter were to a large extent in circulation outside their home district. The monopoly which a coinage lord officially claimed, he never could fully put into effect in his territory; a change could only be brought about through an agreement between several princes. Thus, aside from the coinage and good faith of the Florentines, the middle ages remained a period of coinage irrationality. Precisely because of this irrational condition in the production of coins, unrestricted coinage went without saying; since the coinage lord by increasing the mintage could secure an advantage from his business he strove to secure all the precious metal for his own mint. The possessors of precious metal were subjected to pressure in this connection; prohibitions on export were of common occurrence, especially in districts containing mines, and miners and shareholders in the mines of precious metals seemingly had no choice as to whether they should bring the metal to the mint of the coinage lord or not. Yet all these measures remained without effect. Not only was an enormous amount of smuggling carried on, but the coinage lord had to arrange by agreement to concede a supply of metal to the mints of other lords who possessed no mines, and this metal constantly returned to his district in the form of foreign coins. An irrational trade in coins persisted throughout the middle ages; the demand for the various sorts of coins could not be determined and the extreme fluctuations in the seigniorage operated to prevent adjustment of supply to demand; only the competition among the coinage lords caused them to renounce seigniorage.

After the 16th century the increased inflow of precious metal to Europe provided the economic basis for the establishment of more stable relations in the field of coinage, and
at least in western Europe the absolute states had already cleared out the multiplicity of coinage lords with their competition among themselves. Down to the date mentioned Europe had been a region of permanent exportation of the precious metals; only the period of the crusades, lasting for about 150 years, with their spoils in gold, and also the produce of the plantations, had formed an interruption to this condition. At this time the discovery of the sea route to the East Indies by Vasco de Gama and Albuquerque broke the monopoly of the Arabs over the transit trade. The exploitation of the Mexican and Peruvian silver mines brought great quantities of American metal to Europe, while the discovery of an effective process for extracting silver, by amalgamation with mercury, contributed to the result. The quantity of precious metal obtained from Mexico and South America has been estimated for the period from 1493 to 1800 at nearly 2 1/2 million kilograms of gold and 90 to 100 million kilograms of silver.

The increase in the production of the metal meant immediately a sharp increase in the supply of coined silver. The silver standard permeated to the farthest confines of trade in Europe and reached its expression in the money of account. In Germany, the Florentine gold gulden was even brought out in silver (the Joachimstaler). This condition obtained until the Brazilian deposits of gold were opened up. Although exploitation of these lasted only for a short time—from the beginning to the middle of the 18th century—it dominated the market and resulted in the change of England to the gold standard, against the will of the English law makers and the advice especially of Isaac Newton. After the middle of the 18th century, silver production again came to the fore and influenced
the French legislature at the time of the revolution, calling into being the French double standard.

But the rationalization of coinage could not at once be carried out. The condition which obtained before it was completed may be described by saying that innumerable kinds of coins were in circulation, yet no money, in the present day sense of the word. Even the imperial coinage edict of Ferdinand I in 1859 was forced to recognize thirty types of foreign coin. The extraordinary range of variation in the content of the same type of coin, due to the imperfection of the technique of manufacturing, especially in the case of the smaller coins, in connection with the great volume of the mintage, led to a restriction in Germany in the 16th century of the legal tender power of the silver coins, but without the transformation of these into subsidiary coins; the definite rational establishment of subsidiary coinage was reserved for English monetary policy to introduce. The official monetary unit was the gold gulden coined in silver, the Joachimstaler, but in fact the following development took place in the commercial field.

After the 13th and 14th centuries, commerce emancipated itself from coinage and reckoned in bullion, accepting coins only by weight, specifying payment in a certain type of coin, which had to be recognized as customary by the empire. Finally, it went over to deposit banking. The prototype of the latter was provided by China. Here the debasement of the coins had led to the establishment of metallic deposit banks for the commerce of the merchants. With the fixation of a weight unit the silver payments were made either by checks or instruments similar to checks, drawn on a bank in which the individual merchant kept his deposit of bar silver, or else by means of silver in stamped bars—taels—which, however, played no consider-
able role in comparison with the payment by checks. Thus was created a bank money based on the possession of bullion by the merchants concerned and which was the exclusive means of payment for the persons connected with the deposit system.

Imitations of this prototype are found in the west as early as the 16th century: in Venice the Rialto bank; in Amsterdam, the Wisselbank, 1609; in Nuremburg in 1621; in Hamburg in 1629. These banks reckoned by weight and only coined pieces were accepted in payment. The individual account was usually subject to a minimum, as were the payments; thus in Amsterdam the minimum size of the draft or order were 300 gulden. On the other hand, no payment above 600 gulden could be made in any other way than through the medium of the bank. In Hamburg this bank standard persisted down to 1873.

Modern monetary policy is distinguished from that of the past by the absence of the fiscal motif; only general economic interests resting on the need of commerce for a stable basis of capital computation determine its character. In this connection England took the lead of all other countries.

Originally, silver was in England the effective means of payment for all internal commerce while international trade was based on a gold money of account. After the Brazilian discoveries, increasing amounts of gold flowed to England and the English government was subject to increasing embarrassment by the parallel system. After gold became cheap it flowed to the mints and at the same time the silver circulation was endangered by the melting up of the silver coins. As all loans had to be repaid in silver, capitalistic enterprise was interested in preventing the outflow of the silver. At first the government attempted to maintain the parallel coinage by arbitrary
measures, until in 1717 it decided to carry out a new de-
finitive valuation.

Under the guidance of Isaac Newton the typical English
gold coin, the guinea, was fixed in value at 21 shillings
even though gold was still over-valued. When in the
course of the 18th century gold continued to flow in, silver
flowed out and the government proceeded to radical pre-
ventive measures. Gold was made the standard metal and
all silver degraded to the position of subsidiary coin. It
lost its unlimited legal tender and was alloyed and coined
at more than its bullion value so that the danger of its
leaving the country was removed.

After much experimenting, the French government
finally adopted during the revolution a double standard,
the basis of which was silver; 1000 francs were coined from
9 pounds of silver (222⅔ to the kilogram) and the ratio
of silver to gold was fixed at the current relative value of
15½ to 1. The extraordinary domestic demand for coin
in France, which was stronger than that of England, led
in fact to a stabilization in the value relation between gold
and silver over a long period.

In Germany, the silver system had to be left intact dur-
ing the 19th century, the first part of which shows a period
of decreasing metal production. There was no central au-
thority in a position to effect a transition of gold. Gold
was however minted as a commercial coin with a legalized
value, especially in Prussia; but the attempt to give gold a
different position in the monetary standard was unsuccess-
ful. The war indemnity of 1871 first enabled Germany to
go over to the gold standard, a step which was facilitated
by the sharp increase in the world's stock of gold which
followed the Californian discoveries, while on the other
hand the value ratio of 15½ to 1 was gradually destroyed.
These conditions determined the creation of the German Reichsmark equal to one-third Taler; since 30 Taler equalled a pound of silver, the ratio of $15\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 made the pound of gold equal to 1395 marks.
CHAPTER XX

BANKING AND DEALINGS IN MONEY
IN THE PRE-CAPITALISTIC AGE

Prior to the period of capitalism the activity of a bank consisted primarily, wherever a plurality of kinds of money were in circulation, in the business of exchanging money. To this was added the necessity of a money disbursing business, especially that of making payments at a distance. In antiquity as a whole, and especially in Greece, we find as the typical banking transaction the assumption of obligations to make payments and the issue of letters of credit to travelers as a means of making payments at a distance, and in addition, not indeed exchange operations in the modern sense, but the creation of means of payment which suggest the check of the present day. Furthermore, the function of providing for the safekeeping of money, or deposit business, belongs to the very oldest of banking operations. It was so in Egypt, where the bankers were to a large extent administrators of property, and also in Rome. Where there was no coinage of any kind, as in Babylonia, and also in China and India, the business of money changing was absent. In its place the bankers were the agencies which stamped the silver bars which circulated as money, as in the case of the tael, and hence carried on the business of providing money.

Thus in the pre-capitalistic age the banks transacted a deposit business with transfer or assignment of credits for
the elimination of cash payments. The arrangement pre- 
supposed that the depositor-customer permanently main-
tained a deposit in the bank in question; correspondingly 
we find bank "notes" even in Babylon. Yet one must not 
think in this connection of bank notes in our sense, for the 
modern bank note circulates independently of any deposit 
by a particular individual. In contrast, the Babylonian 
bank notes or tickets were merely a means for the more 
rapid and secure transmission of payments between 
depositor-customers. The extent of this more ancient de-
posit business is unknown; in any case one must guard 
against thinking of conditions in terms too modern. The 
relations were generally restricted to strictly local transac-
tions and to those taking place between merchants; conse-
quently the bank tickets were not a medium for general 
circulation.

Peculiar to Babylon was the development out of the de-
posit business of the role of the banker as a lender of 
credit. The professional banker made loans on a small 
scale against pledges or personal security. The credit 
function of the Babylonian banker was based on the ab-
sence of coinage. Payments were reckoned in silver 
shekels, but these were not used for payment, so that the 
banker was necessary as an intermediary; and in this con-
nection he arranged for postponement, since he was also 
often in a position to provide the means for payment in 
cash, and afforded certainty to the seller by substituting 
himself for the future payer. Another peculiarity in 
Babylonia was that the banker regularly furnished com-
menda credit, that is, capital for enterprise; a large number 
of commenda contracts have come down to us in cuneiform 
writing, while we have no other example of such credit 
business in the ancient world. The reason is that where 
coined money was in use the banking business developed
out of coinage, but in Babylon it developed out of money, that is to say, credit, dealings.

In Rome, the occupation of the banker exhibits two special features. The first, which is of no particular concern to economic history, is that the banker was the professional auctioneer. In the second place, we find here for the first time the transaction of an account-current deposit business in the modern sense, and its recognition as a specific means for the liquidation of debts with the aid of the banker. In Rome the purpose of this business was originally to provide a uniform and secure means of payment, in view of the fact that the coinage of silver was not introduced until late and that the amount of the coinage depended upon the booty secured by the generals. This backwardness of coinage relations in Rome affords the simplest explanation for the fact that the deposit (receptum), and the order or draft (actio receptitia) drawn only against the balance of the account current, possessed so much significance, and that the bookkeeping of the banker was there subject to a unified legal regulation. The books of the Roman argentarii speak of receipts and expenditures, though not in the sense of the modern bookkeeping. A special book was kept for each individual customer, in which he was credited and debited (acceptum ferre, expensum ferre). These entries served to prove that payment had been made. Beyond this too little has survived of the bookkeeping of the argentarii to permit of more exact statements.

In general, however, the banks of antiquity were only exceptionally private undertakings, and these were subject to an extensive competition by temple banks and state banks. The temple of antiquity first served as a depository. Insofar as they served as banks this was their primary function, and in this connection they were much
more famous than the depository of the private bankers. The deposits in the temple were sacred and could not be stolen without committing sacrilege. The temple at Delphi was a storehouse for numerous private persons, and especially for the savings of slaves. Numerous inscriptions tell how the liberty of slaves has been purchased by the god; in reality the purchase was made out of the savings of the slaves which were given over to the temple for safekeeping in order to protect them from the master. The same function as depositories was performed by numerous temples in Babylon, Egypt, and Greece, while in Rome they lost this character in early times. In consequence, the temples in antiquity also became important lending agencies, especially for the princes, who secured more favorable terms from them than from private money lenders. It is true that we find the large money lender, even in the code of Hammurabi, but in general the treasury of the state and its money lender was the temple. This function was fulfilled in Babylon by the temple of the sun god Sippar, and in Egypt by the temple of Ammon; the treasury of the Attic maritime league was the temple of Athena.

A second source of competition for the private banker grew up in the state banks. The making of banking into a public function resulted, where it happened, not in consequence of mismanagement and bankruptcy of the bankers as in the middle ages, but from fiscal considerations. Not only had the money changing business developed into a fruitful source of profit, but for political reasons also it seemed advantageous to be in possession of the largest possible quantity of private deposits. In almost all the Hellenistic states, especially in Ptolemaic Egypt, the result was a royal banking monopoly. It is true that these establishments had nothing to do with the tasks of the modern state bank, such as note issue, regulation of standards, and
coinage policy; they were purely fiscal institutions. The extraordinary power of the capitalistic knights as a class in Rome rested essentially on the fact that they succeeded in preventing such a monopolization of the banking function by the state.

The beginnings of medieval banking are diverse in character. In the 11th century we meet with campsores, money changers, who secured a considerable profit from their work. At the end of the 12th century the business of making payments at a distance was in their hands; it was carried out by means of the cambium or exchange letter, a device taken over from the Arabs. In contrast with antiquity, the business of lending money was only assumed by the resident banker relatively late or not at all; as a rule they loaned only large sums and only to the political powers. The small scale business in money was in the hands of an alien class, the Jews, Lombards, the Caursines, the two latter designations being used to include southerners of every sort. This consumptive credit in the hands of aliens was originally emergency credit at a very high rate of interest, and based on a pledge or other security. Alongside it appears at an early date the business of commenda credit. In the granting of such credit the bankers also took part, but were subject—in contrast with Babylonian conditions—to the competition of merchants dealing in goods of the most various sorts, and also that of private money lenders. The deposit business was called into existence by the continual monetary debasement. Communal banks arose among the merchant class with deposits in metal or in various coins at their bullion value, on the basis of which payments were made by deposit transfers or checks, limited to a certain minimum. For a time, deposit banking business was in the hands of the money changers, but in the long run they
did not enjoy sufficient confidence, and large company banks arose.

In the field of medieval banking is further included the collection of taxes, corresponding roughly to the tax farming of antiquity. From the beginning of the 13th to the end of the 14th century this was the main source of the large fortunes, especially those of the Florentine banking families, the Acciajuoli, the Peruzzi, and the Medici. As these maintained their factors in all large commercial places, they were the natural agency for gathering from all quarters the taxes of the Curia, which was the greatest taxing power of the age; also they kept the most accurate accounts and accepted only full value money in the sense of the Florentine gold gulden. This function brought the collectors, as in the case of the mandarins in China, very large opportunities for profit, as it lay in their hands to evaluate the money of the various regions in terms of the coin demanded by the Curia.

Finally, the business of financing is to be named among the functions of medieval banking. By this, however, is not to be understood the financing of large enterprises in the present sense. The need for financing operations existed only exceptionally, and generally in connection with military ventures. In this field it was undertaken in Genoa as early as the 12th century. In this way, for example, the great sea expeditions of the Genoese against Cyprus were financed through the formation of a "manda," a share commenda enterprise for the conquest and exploitation of the island. In the same way to a large extent the wars of the cities among themselves were financed by organizations of creditors. For roughly a hundred years together the total tax and harbor customs receipts of Genoa were administered exclusively in the interests of such a consortium. Far beyond these limits went the
financing operations of the great Florentine bankers in the Franco-English wars of the 14th century.

To the extent to which these transactions remained in private hands arose the questions out of what source the funds came, where the money went, and by what means the banks were at all able to meet an effective obligation to pay, which in fact tended to collapse. That is, we are confronted by the problem of the "liquidity" of the medieval bank. The liquidity of the institutions we have described was very poor. The money which the Peruzzi or other great Florentine bankers advanced to the citizens of Florence for their wars did not come out of their own capital, which would not have been at all sufficient, but out of deposits which they received on the grounds of their prestige, out of every circle of the population down to the lowest strata, and for a low rate of interest. But these deposits were payable on short notice while the war loans ran for long periods. Consequently the financial operations ended in bankruptcy as soon as the military ventures in which they were employed resulted unfavorably. This applies even to the Fuggers, for the way in which they finally settled with the Spanish crown meant that not only did they suffer enormous losses but also that the remainder of their wealth was tied up in forms on which they could not realize.

The private means of the large banking houses being insufficient for the financing of large enterprises of the state, and their liquidity being easily lost, the pressure of events was in the direction of monopolistic banking. The political authority which required money for its purposes received it only in return for a grant of various monopolies, of trade, of the customs, and of the banking business also. The prince, or the city, made banking a public enterprise and granted the privilege as a monopoly, or farmed it out
to private persons in return for a loan of money. The oldest example of such a banking monopoly is the Banca di San Giorgio in Genoa, and the latest the Bank of England. Even this latter did not arise out of a voluntary organization of merchants but was a purely political undertaking which financed the War of the Spanish Succession. The distinction between it and the medieval banks lies only in the manner in which it was able to establish its business, namely on the basis of bills of exchange.

The present day bill of exchange is a means of payment characterized by the fact that three persons are involved in it; besides the receiver there are the drawer and the drawee. Of these the drawer is always responsible, as is also the drawee or acceptor, from the moment of acceptance. In addition, when the bill is transferred to third parties by endorsement, every individual endorser becomes responsible, with no question raised regarding the transaction in connection with which the bill was drawn. In case of non-payment a special process of execution is available which in the middle ages involved imprisonment for debt. The significance of the bill of exchange for the bank of today lies in these characteristics; they impart to it the certainty that specific sums can be drawn at a specified time and hence give it liquidity. In the middle ages there was no such possibility. It is true that the bill of exchange was known, but it then signified only an instrument similar to our checks. It was a mere means of payment, ordinarily of payment at a distance, by means of which one paid debts with money to which one had a claim at some other place; difference in place between the one who promised payment and the point where payment was made was essential to the instrument, especially as the canon law condemned with all its power the use of local bills as a usurious business.

The typical medieval bill originally consisted of two
separate documents. One of these, the "open letter," (litera aperta), was what we should call a domiciled bill. The merchant A in Genoa promised to pay to B in Barcelona on a certain day a certain sum, through C, the debtor of A. If the bill was issued by a prince it was drawn upon his treasury which had to pay to the court a certain sum. The second document, the "closed letter" (litera clausa) or "draft" evolved into the present bill. It informed the debtor of the drawer that he was to pay the sum on account of his creditor the drawer. The literae apertae had to be drawn up and witnessed officially while the literae clausae were ordinary letters. Both documents were placed in the hands of the person in favor of whom the bill was drawn. The further development consisted in the gradual dropping of the literae apertae on account of the expense. The binding promise which they originally contained became included in the draft and recognized as a part of the latter, which thus increased in significance; but it was still distinguished from the modern bill in that it was not negotiable by endorsement, which character it did not achieve until the 17th century.

It is true that it contained the formula promitto tibi vel tuo certo nuntio, which made it possible to place it in the possession of a third party and to legalize his receipt of the payment in place of the named receiver; but this order clause disappeared later because a regular machinery for making payments developed in the large fairs. These afforded the possibility of liquidating bills without incurring the risk of transporting money, by turning it over to a clearing house for entry, with payment only of net balances. Actually the bills were only discount instruments in connection with which it was tacitly assumed that they would be liquidated through a deposit bank or a local merchants' association. This condition worked to the advantage of the
merchants engaged in the exchange business, giving them an interest in securing a monopoly of the fees for effecting exchange transfers, and they opposed endorsement. Thus even in the 16th century when any exchange was transferred a new bill had to be drawn instead of endorsing the old one. It is true again that in the 16th century the law of exchange had reached its present development, and equivocation on legal grounds was excluded by the maxim "chi accetta paghi" (the acceptor must pay). This unconditional assurance of payment made it possible for the bill of exchange to become the bank paper of today.

The part of the medieval banker in payments consisted in accepting the bill; the banker of today discounts it, that is, he pays it, with the deduction of the discount with the view of cashing it later and thus invests his operating capital in bills. The institution which first consistently carried on such an exchange business is the Bank of England.

English banking history before the founding of the Bank of England shows that the goldsmiths, as dealers in the precious metals and owners of stocks of metal, were in a position to carry on a banking business and often had a monopoly of the testing of coins as to weight and fineness, but that they never played the role of bankers in the sense described above. They received deposits in the manner of the medieval banker, and financed political enterprises, those of the Stuarts as well as of Cromwell. They also transacted a deposit business and in connection therewith issued paper means of payment, to their customers first, but the circulation of these "goldsmith notes" did not remain confined to this circle. The state bankruptcy of 1672 put an end to all this. When, at that time, the English government declared that it could not repay its debts but would pay interest on them only, while the depositor-
customers of the goldsmiths were entitled to withdraw their capital at any time, the result was inability of the goldsmiths to meet the demand for payment of deposits. The result was that in England at this time, as earlier in the Italian cities, there was a clamor among the depositors for a public monopoly bank.

The political authorities took advantage of this demand to monopolize the banking business and secure a share in its profits for the state. The merchants hoped for loans at a low interest through the fact that a state bank, in view of the security which it offered, would be in a position to attract to itself deposits in large volume, and also hoped for release from their coinage difficulties—although we cannot be sure how they argued. On the other hand, we must not assume as applicable to that time the modern view according to which a large bank of issue undertakes the task of using its credit through a suitable discount policy to draw gold into the country or to force an accumulated stock into circulation. Rather it was hoped that the bank would function as a deposit bank, that is, circulate its notes on the basis of a definite quantity of metal and so assist in reducing the fluctuations in the ratio between gold and silver.

The final establishment of the Bank of England in 1694 was based on purely political motives with a view of financing the war of William of Orange with Louis XIV. In its establishment the procedure customary to the country was employed; certain payments, especially the salt tax, were pledged to the money lenders, and the participating creditors were organized as governors into a company with legal privileges.

The new establishment was combated by many interests. Opposed to the project were, in the first place, the Tories, as opponents of William of Orange, and, on the other hand, the Whigs who on general principles feared the strengthen-
BANKING IN PRE-CAPITALISTIC AGE 265

ing of the position of the king. Hence the bank could only be organized as an independent private corporation, not as a state bank, and it was necessary to include in the act the specification that money could be advanced to the state only on the basis of a special authorization by Parliament. Hence in the view of the Tories the bank was consistent only with a republic, not a monarchy; they contended that a bank with such an organization presupposed a kingdom under the control of the capitalist groups interested in the bank. Finally the goldsmiths also opposed the bank because they were excluded from the business, and also because, in common with the nobility, they feared the political and economic power of the merchant class.

The bank came into existence with a share capital of £1,200,000, all of which disappeared into the pockets of the state. In exchange it received the right to deal in bills of exchange. The last named right was by far the most important, since it was connected with the issue of notes. The use which the bank would later make of this right through its discount policy was in fact foreseen by no one. In any case, however, it was the first institution to begin systematically to purchase exchange, thereby shortening for producers as well as merchants the interval before the product reached the final consumer, by discounting the bills before maturity. With the Bank of England the acceleration of capital turnover is the clearly conceived purpose of exchange dealings; it pursued this business in a systematic way as no bank had done before.

Only in part does the development of banking outside of Europe offer a parallel to that in Europe itself. In India and China, banking retained down to the last few decades the character which it had in antiquity and in the middle ages. It is distinguished from occidental banking by its extraordinary power in connection with the regulation
of monetary standards. In China the banker conducts the stamping of the *taels*; he determines the conditions of credit, fixes the rate of interest, and designates all the conditions of making payments, so that the standardization of commercial settlements lies entirely in his hands. But this mechanism of settlement is a credit business insofar as foreign trade is concerned, which in Canton for example, is in the hands of a few large Chinese houses. As long as the independent Chinese states existed the banks also carried on war financing, as in Europe; with the establishment of the unitary Chinese empire this opportunity was lost.

In India the banking business in its entirety is strictly regulated by sects or castes. Here also in the period of the great independent states political credit was financed by the banks, and here also the unitary state of the Grand Mogul put an end to this; subsequently political monetary dealings were involved only in connection with governmental budgeting and the anticipation of income through loans. The functions of the banks in India and China today still consist essentially of the business of making payments and small or occasional credit operations. There is no business credit in any way systematized, no business organization which could make any use of our discount policy; the native Asiatic commerce knows only checks and payment assignments of the most various sorts, but not the bill of exchange. That in addition the Chinese bankers still possess a monopolistic control over the regulation of standards is explained by the enormous misuse of paper money in China.
CHAPTER XXI

INTERESTS IN THE PRE-CAPITALISTIC PERIOD

In its beginnings interest is a phenomenon either of international or feudal law. Within a tribal village, or clan community, there is neither interest nor lending, since transfers of value in consideration for a payment are unknown. Where outside resources are used in economic life it is done under the form of neighborly help, such as invitation work in connection with house building or assistance in case of emergency, which rests on the duty of helping the clan brother without compensation. Even the Roman *mutuum*, a loan without interest, is a survival of these primitive conditions. The obligation to help in case of need receives an extension when it is taken over by religious communities and imposed upon brothers in the faith; the best known example is that of the Israelites. It is not the fact that they took interest which is peculiar to the Jews, for interest has been received everywhere in the world, including the medieval monasteries themselves; rather it was exceptional and repugnant to the western peoples that the Jews took interest from Christians but not from each other.

The prohibition in the Torah against taking interest or usury from the brother rests partly on military and partly on religious grounds. In the first place, the clan brother must not be imprisoned for debt and thus lost to the army. For this reason the ancient Egyptian religious code ascribed to the curse of the poor, a special force with the divine
powers and this idea passed over into the book of Deuteronomy. The distinction thus set up between internal and external ethics survived the exile; and after the Israelites became the Jews, interest was still forbidden between compatriots while it might be taken from foreigners ("Gojim"). Thus Maimonides could ask the question whether the Jew was under obligation to take interest from them.¹

The prohibition of interest taking from a brother is also characteristic of early Islam and of Brahminism. Interest everywhere arises in the field of lending to foreigners outside the tribe or that of loans between classes. In this connection the contrast between creditor and debtor was originally always a contrast between a town-dwelling patritiate and rural peasants; it was so in China, India, and Rome, and the same conception also dominates in the Old Testament. The possibility that a prohibition against interest should arise rested on the fact that all credit was originally emergency credit and purely for consumptive purposes, so that the idea of a brotherly obligation could arise in opposition to the demand for interest by the master class; a further consideration is that behind the warning against interest there was a strong military interest since the creditor ran the risk of being reduced to the condition of a landless proletarian who would not be in a position to equip himself for war.

The occasion for breaking through the prohibition against interest was provided by the loan of concrete property. The first case is the cattle loan. Among nomads, the contrast between propertied and non-propertied persons is fearfully sharp. The man who owns no cattle is forthwith outlawed and can only hope to rise again to full citizenship through a loan of stock and stock breeding. Of
similar import is the seed loan, which in Babylonia especially, confronts us as a customary usage. In the one case as in the other the object of the loan replaces itself manifold and it did not appear an unjust conception if the creditor reserved for himself a part of the fruits of his cattle or grain. In addition, the prohibition against interest was broken wherever town life developed.

In the Christian occident the need for credit for industrial purposes originally found expression rarely in the form of a loan with a definite interest but rather in that of an association. It was not the prohibition of usury by the church which was behind this arrangement, so much as the risk connected with oversea business ventures. In view of this risk a definite interest rate was not so much at issue in such transactions; instead, the creditor participated in the gain as compensation for the risk to which the capital he provided was subject. Hence the Italian commenda, the dare ad proficuum de mari, with an interest rate depending in accordance with a scale, on the port of destination. These primitive trading credit transactions were not affected by the ecclesiastical prohibitions of usury. On the contrary, a fixed loan against fixed interest became customary in connection with land transportation because the risk here was less than in overseas trade. The formula salvum in terra signified that the capital loan must be without reference to the result of the enterprise.

At the same time, however, the opposition to usury on the part of the church increased in energy. Hence the prohibition of interest is not a product of an age of purely natural economy, but the movement reached its full development only as it was allowed to lapse in the face of a growing money economy. Pope Gregory IX even condemned sea loans as usury. Equally false is the assertion
that the church pursued an opportunistic policy in connection with interest and favored the development of capitalism. In fact it pursued the war against interest with increased determination and forced many a man to restore interest on his death bed just as today the confessional enforces restitution of goods stolen from a master. But the more money economy developed, the oftener was the prohibition evaded, and the church had to meet the situation by general indulgences. Finally, in the face of the power of the great Florentine bankers in the 15th century it was confronted by facts which made all opposition fruitless. Theology then attempted to interpret the prohibition as leniently as possible, but the tragedy was that the church itself as a temporal power was forced to have recourse to loans at interest.

At first, before the church itself undertook the establishment of lending institutions (the montes pietatis) a way out was found in the money lending of the Jews. This was characterized by the fact that it afforded the political authorities the possibility of adopting a "sponge policy"; that is, the population was exploited through their payments of interest to the Jews and at irregular intervals the state confiscated the profit and the outstanding loans and simultaneously banished the Jewish creditors. In this way the Jews were hounded from city to city and from country to country; formal pools for robbing them were established between the princes, as for example between the Bishop of Bamberg and the Hohenzollern Burgrave of Nuremberg to the effect that they shared in the booty when the Jews fled from the jurisdiction of one to that of the other. Meanwhile the attitude of the church to the taking of interest became increasingly cautious. It is true that a formal suspension of the prohibition was never decreed, but in the course of the 19th century ecclesiastic depositions re-
repeatedly recognized as legal the taking of interest under specified conditions.

In northern Europe the prohibition against usury was broken up by Protestantism, although not immediately. In the Calvinistic synods we repeatedly meet with the conception that a lender and his wife must not be admitted to the Lord’s Supper, but Calvin himself declared in the *Constitutio Christiana* that the purpose of the prohibition of interest was only the protection of the poor against destitution and not the protection of the rich who carried on business with borrowed money. Finally, it was the Calvinistic leader in the field of classical philology, Claudia Salmasius, who in his book *De Usuris* in 1638, and in a number of later tracts, undermined the theoretical foundations of the prohibition against interest.
PART FOUR

THE ORIGIN OF MODERN CAPITALISM
CHAPTER XXII

THE MEANING AND PRESUPPOSITIONS OF MODERN CAPITALISM

Capitalism is present wherever the industrial provision for the needs of a human group is carried out by the method of enterprise, irrespective of what need is involved. More specifically, a rational capitalistic establishment is one with capital accounting, that is, an establishment which determines its income yielding power by calculation according to the methods of modern bookkeeping and the striking of a balance. The device of the balance was first insisted upon by the Dutch theorist Simon Stevin in the year 1698.

It goes without saying that an individual economy may be conducted along capitalistic lines to the most widely varying extent; parts of the economic provision may be organized capitalistically and other parts on the handicraft or the manorial pattern. Thus at a very early time the city of Genoa had a part of its political needs, namely those for the prosecution of war, provided in capitalistic fashion, through stock companies. In the Roman empire, the supply of the population of the capital city with grain was carried out by officials, who however for this purpose, besides control over their subalterns, had the right to command the services of transport organizations; thus the leiturgical or forced contribution type of organization was combined with administration of public resources. Today, in contrast with the greater part of the past, our everyday needs are supplied capitalistically, our political
needs however through compulsory contributions, that is, by the performance of political duties of citizenship such as the obligation to military service, jury duty, etc. A whole epoch can be designated as typically capitalistic only as the provision for wants is capitalistically organized to such a predominant degree that if we imagine this form of organization taken away the whole economic system must collapse.

While capitalism of various forms is met with in all periods of history, the provision of the everyday wants by capitalistic methods is characteristic of the occident alone and even here has been the inevitable method only since the middle of the 19th century. Such capitalistic beginnings as are found in earlier centuries were merely anticipatory, and even the somewhat capitalistic establishments of the 16th century may be removed in thought from the economic life of the time without introducing any overwhelming change.

The most general presupposition for the existence of this present-day capitalism is that of rational capital accounting as the norm for all large industrial undertakings which are concerned with provision for everyday wants. Such accounting involves, again, first, the appropriation of all physical means of production—land, apparatus, machinery, tools, etc. as disposable property of autonomous private industrial enterprises. This is a phenomenon known only to our time, when the army alone forms a universal exception to it. In the second place, it involves freedom of the market, that is, the absence of irrational limitations on trading in the market. Such limitations might be of a class character, if a certain mode of life were prescribed for a certain class or consumption were standardized along class lines, or if class monopoly existed, as for example if the townsman were not allowed to own an estate or the
knights or peasants to carry on industry; in such cases neither a free labor market nor a commodity market exists. Third, capitalistic accounting presupposes rational technology, that is, one reduced to calculation to the largest possible degree, which implies mechanization. This applies to both production and commerce, the outlays for preparing as well as moving goods.

The fourth characteristic is that of calculable law. The capitalistic form of industrial organization, if it is to operate rationally, must be able to depend upon calculable adjudication and administration. Neither in the age of the Greek city-state (polis) nor in the patrimonial state of Asia nor in western countries down to the Stuarts was this condition fulfilled. The royal "cheap justice" with its remissions by royal grace introduced continual disturbances into the calculations of economic life. The proposition that the Bank of England was suited only to a republic, not to a monarchy, referred to above (page 265) was related in this way to the conditions of the time. The fifth feature is free labor. Persons must be present who are not only legally in the position, but are also economically compelled, to sell their labor on the market without restriction. It is in contradiction to the essence of capitalism, and the development of capitalism is impossible, if such a propertyless stratum is absent, a class compelled to sell its labor services to live; and it is likewise impossible if only unfree labor is at hand. Rational capitalistic calculation is possible only on the basis of free labor; only where in consequence of the existence of workers who in the formal sense voluntarily, but actually under the compulsion of the whip of hunger, offer themselves, the costs of products may be unambiguously determined by agreement in advance. The sixth and final condition is the commercialization of economic life. By this we mean the general use of commercial
instruments to represent share rights in enterprise, and also in property ownership.

To sum up, it must be possible to conduct the provision for needs exclusively on the basis of market opportunities and the calculation of net income. The addition of this commercialization to the other characteristics of capitalism involves intensification of the significance of another factor not yet mentioned, namely speculation. Speculation reaches its full significance only from the moment when property takes on the form of negotiable paper.
CHAPTER XXIII

THE EXTERNAL FACTS IN THE EVOLUTION OF CAPITALISM

Commercialization involves, in the first place, the appearance of paper representing shares in enterprise, and, in the second place, paper representing rights to income, especially in the form of state bonds and mortgage indebtedness. This development has taken place only in the modern western world. Forerunners are indeed found in antiquity in the share-commandite companies of the Roman publicani, who divided the gains with the public through such share paper. But this is an isolated phenomenon and without importance for the provision for needs in Roman life; if it had been wanting entirely, the picture presented by the economic life of Rome would not have been changed.

In modern economic life the issue of credit instruments is a means for the rational assembly of capital. Under this head belongs especially the stock company. This represents a culmination of two different lines of development. In the first place, share capital may be brought together for the purpose of anticipating revenues. The political authority wishes to secure command over a definite capital sum or to know upon what income it may reckon; hence it sells or leases its revenues to a stock company. The Bank of St. George in Genoa is the most outstanding example of such financial operations, and along the same line are the income certificates of the German cities and treasury notes (Rentenmeisterbriefe) especially in Flanders. The significance of this system is that in place of the original con-

279
dition under which unusual state requirements were covered by compulsory law, usually without interest and frequently never repaid, loans come to be floated which appeal to the voluntary economic interests of the participants. The conduct of war by the state becomes a business operation of the possessing classes. War loans bearing a high interest rate were unknown in antiquity; if the subjects were not in a position to supply the necessary means the state must turn to a foreign financier whose advances were secured by a claim against the spoils of war. If the war terminated unfortunately his money was lost. The securing of money for state purposes, and especially for war purposes, by appeal to the universal economic interest, is a creation of the middle ages, especially of the cities.

Another and economically more important form of association is that for the purpose of financing commercial enterprise—although the evolution toward the form of association most familiar today in the industrial field, the stock company, went forward very gradually from this beginning. Two types of such organizations are to be distinguished; first, large enterprises of an inter-regional character which exceeded the resources of a single commercial house, and second, inter-regional colonial undertakings.

For inter-regional enterprises which could not be financed by individual entrepreneurs, finance by groups was typical, especially in the operations of the cities in the 15th and 16th centuries. In part the cities themselves carried on inter-regional trade, but for economic history the other case is more important, in which the city went before the public and invited share participation in the commercial enterprise which it organized. This was done on a considerable scale. When the city appealed to the public, compulsion was exercised on the company thus formed to admit any citizen; hence the amount of share capital was
FACTS IN EVOLUTION OF CAPITALISM

unlimited. Frequently the capital first collected was insufficient and an additional contribution was demanded, where today the liability of the share holder is limited to his share. The city frequently set a maximum limit to the individual contribution so that the entire citizenship might participate. This was often done by arranging the citizens in groups according to the taxes paid or their wealth and reserving a definite fraction of the capital for each class. In contrast with the modern stock company the investment was often rescindable, while the share of the individual was not freely transferable. Hence the whole enterprise represented a stock company only in an embryonic sense. Official supervision was exercised over the conduct of operations.

In this form the so-called "regulated" company was common, especially in the iron trade as in Steier, and it was occasionally used in the cloth trade, as in Iglau. A consequence of the structure of the organizations just described was the absence of fixed capital and, as in the case of the workers' association, the absence of capital accounting in the modern sense. Share holders included not only merchants, but princes, professors, courtiers, and in general the public in the strict sense, which participated gladly and to great profit. The distribution of the dividends was carried out in a completely irrational way, according to the gross income alone, without reserves of any kind. All that was necessary was the removal of the official control and the modern stock company was at hand.

The great colonization companies formed another preliminary stage in the development of the modern stock company. The most significant of these were the Dutch and English East India companies, which were not stock companies in the modern sense. On account of the jealousy of the citizens of the provinces of the country the Dutch East
India Company raised its capital by distributing the shares among them, not permitting all the stock to be bought up by any single city. The government, that is the federation, participated in the administration, especially because it reserved the right to use the ships and cannon of the company for its own needs. Modern capital accounting was absent as was free transferability of shares, although relatively extensive dealings in the latter soon took place. It was these great successful companies which made the device of share capital generally known and popular; from them it was taken over by all the continental states of Europe. Stock companies created by the state, and granted privileges for the purpose, came to regulate the conditions of participation in business enterprise in general, while the state itself in a supervisory capacity was involved in the most remote details of business activity. Not until the 18th century did the annual balance and inventory become established customs, and it required many terrible bankruptcies to force their acceptance.

Alongside the financing of state needs through stock companies stands direct financing by measures of the state itself. This begins with compulsory loans against a pledge of resources and the issue of certificates of indebtedness against anticipated revenues. The cities of the middle ages secured extraordinary income by bonds, pledging their fixed property and taxing power. These annuities may be regarded as the forerunners of the modern consols, yet only within limitations; for to a large extent the income ran for the life of the purchaser, and they were tied up with other considerations. In addition to these devices the necessity of raising money gave rise to various expedients down to the 17th century. The emperor Leopold I attempted to raise a "cavalier loan," sending mounted messengers around to the nobility to solicit subscriptions; but
in general he received for answer the injunction to turn to those who had the money.

If one desires to understand the financial operations of a German city as late as the close of the middle ages, one must bear in mind that there was at that time no such thing as an orderly budget. The city, like the territorial lord, lived from week to week as is done today in a small household. Expenditures were readjusted momentarily as income fluctuated. The device of tax farming was of assistance in overcoming the difficulty of management without a budget. It gave the administration some security as to the sums which it might expect each year, and assisted it in planning its expenditures. Hence the tax farm operated as an outstanding instrument of financial rationalization, and was called into use by the European states occasionally at first and then permanently. It also made possible the discounting of public revenues for war purposes, and in this connection achieved especial significance. Rational administration of taxation was an accomplishment of the Italian cities in the period after the loss of their freedom. The Italian nobility is the first political power to order its finances in accordance with the principle of mercantile bookkeeping obtaining at the time, although this did not then include double entry. From the Italian cities the system spread abroad and came into German territory through Burgundy, France, and the Hapsburg states. It was especially the tax payers who clamored to have the finances put in order.

A second point of departure for rational forms of administration was the English exchequer system, of which the word "check" is a last survival and reminder. This was a sort of checker board device by means of which the payments due the state were computed, in the absence of the necessary facility in operating with figures. Regu-
larly, however, the finances were not conducted through setting up a budget in which all receipts and disbursements were included, but a special-fund system was used. That is, certain receipts were designated and raised for the purpose of specified expenditures only. The reason for this procedure is found in the conflicts between the princely power and the citizens. The latter mistrusted the princes and thought this the only way to protect themselves against having the taxes squandered for the personal ends of the ruler.

In the 16th and 17th centuries an additional force working for the rationalization of the financial operations of rulers appeared in the monopoly policy of the princes. In part they assumed commercial monopolies themselves and in part they granted monopolistic concessions, involving of course the payment of notable sums to the political authority. An example is the exploitation of the quicksilver mines of Idria, in the Austrian province of Carniola, which were of great importance on account of the process of amalgamating silver. These mines were the subject of protracted bargaining between the two lines of the Hapsburgs and yielded notable revenues to both the German and the Spanish houses. The first example of this policy of monopoly concession was the attempt of the Emperor Frederick II to establish a grain monopoly for Sicily. The policy was most extensively employed in England and was developed in an especially systematic manner by the Stuarts, and there also it first broke down, under the protests of Parliament. Each new industry and establishment of the Stuart period was for this purpose bound up with a royal concession and granted a monopoly. The king secured important revenues from the privileges, which provided him with the resources for his struggle against Parliament. But these industrial monopolies established
for fiscal purposes broke down almost without exception after the triumph of Parliament. This in itself proves how incorrect it is to regard, as some writers have done, modern western capitalism as an outgrowth of the monopolistic policies of princes.
CHAPTER XXIV

THE FIRST GREAT SPECULATIVE CRISSES

We have recognized as characteristics and pre-requisites of capitalistic enterprise the following: appropriation of the physical means of production by the entrepreneur, freedom of the market, rational technology, rational law, free labor, and finally the commercialization of economic life. A further motif is speculation, which becomes important from the moment when property can be represented by freely negotiable paper. Its early development is marked by the great economic crises which it called forth.

The great tulip craze of Holland in the 1630's is often numbered among the great speculative crises, but it should not be so included. Tulips had become an article of luxury among the patricians who had grown rich in colonial trade, and suddenly commanded fantastic prices. The public was misled by the wish to make easy profits until with equal suddenness the whole craze collapsed and many individuals were ruined. But all of that had no significance for the economic development of Holland; in all periods it has happened that objects connected with gaming have become subject to speculation and led to crises. It is quite otherwise with John Law and the great speculation in France and the contemporary South Sea speculation in England, in the second decade of the 18th century.

In the financial practice of the large states it had long been customary to anticipate revenues by the issue of certificates, to be redeemed later. In consequence of the War of the Spanish Succession, the financial requirements of
the government rose to an extraordinary height in England as well as in France. The founding of the Bank of England supplied the financial needs of that country, but in France the state was already hopelessly in debt, and on the death of Louis XIV no one knew how the excessive debt was to be taken care of. Under the regency came forward the Scotchman, John Law, who thought he had learned something from the founding of the Bank of England, and had a theory of his own regarding financial affairs, although he had had no luck with it in England. He saw in inflation, that is the utmost possible increase in the medium of circulation, a stimulus to production.

In 1716, Law received a concession for a private bank which at first presented no exceptional character. It was merely specified that the credit obligations of the state must be received in payment for the capital, while the notes of the bank were to be accepted in the payment of taxes. In contrast with the Bank of England there was no clear plan as to the manner in which the bank was to have a regular and secure income so as to maintain the liquid character of its issues. In connection with this bank Law founded the Mississippi Company. The Louisiana territory was to be financed to the extent of a hundred million livres; the company accepted the same amount of obligations of the state as payment for stock and received in exchange the monopoly of the trade in a territory to be determined. If one examines the Louisiana plan it will be observed that a century would have been required before Louisiana would have yielded sufficient revenue to make possible the repayment of the capital. To begin with, Law intended to carry out an undertaking similar to the East India Company, entirely overlooking the fact that Louisiana was not, like India, an ancient civilized country, but a forest waste inhabited by Indians.
When, in 1718, he saw himself threatened by the competition of a stock company which wished to lease the indirect taxes, he combined the Mississippi Company with the Compagnie des Indes. The new company was to carry on the trade with India and China, but the political power was not available to secure for France the share in the Asiatic trade which England already possessed. However, the regency was induced to give to Law the right of coinage and the lease on all the taxes, involving power of life and death over the state, in exchange for a loan at 3% by means of which the gigantic floating debt was to be taken care of. At this point the public embarked on an insane course of speculation. The first year a 200% dividend was declared and the price of shares rose from 500 to 9,000. This phase of the development can be explained only by the fact that short selling was impracticable since there was as yet no systematic exchange mechanism.

In 1720 Law succeeded in getting himself appointed Comptroller General of Finances. But the whole enterprise quickly disintegrated. In vain the state decreed that only John-Law-notes should be legal money; in vain it sought to sustain them by drastic restriction on the trade in precious metals. Law’s fall was inevitable simply because neither Louisiana nor the Chinese or East India trade had yielded sufficient profit to pay interest on even a fraction of his capital. It is true that the bank had received deposits, but it possessed no liquid external resources for repayment. The end was a complete bankruptcy and the declaration that the notes were of no value. A result was an enduring discouragement on the part of the French public, but at the same time freely transferable share certificates, made to bearer, had been popularized.

In the same years a parallel phenomenon was exhibited by England, except that the course of development was not
so wild as that in France. Soon after founding of the Bank of England, the idea of a competing institution became current (1696). This was the land bank project resting on the same ideas later presented in the proposals of the German agrarians, namely, of using land credit instead of bills of exchange as a cover for bank notes. But this project was not carried out because in England it was well understood that the necessary liquidity would be absent. This, however, did not prevent the occurrence that in 1711, after the fall of the Whig government, the Tories adopted a course similar to that followed a few years later by John Law.

The English nobility wished to create a centralized power in opposition to the specifically Puritan basis of the Bank of England, and at the same time the gigantic public debt was to be paid off. For this purpose was founded the South Sea Company, which made considerable advances to the state and in return received a monopoly of the South Pacific trade. The Bank of England was not shrewd enough to keep aloof from the project; it even outbid the founders and it was due only to the Tories, who on the ground of political repugnance refused it participation, that its offer was not accepted.

The course of events was similar to that of John Law’s institution. Here also bankruptcy was unavoidable because the South Sea trade was not sufficient to pay interest on the sums advanced. Yet prior to this eventuality, just as in France, speculation gave rise to transferable certificates. The result was that enormous property was dissipated while many adventurers came out of it smiling, and the state—in a way none too honorable—achieved a substantial lightening of its burden of interest. The Bank of England remained standing in all its former prestige, being the only financial institution based on the rational
discounting of exchange and hence possessing the requisite current liquidity. The explanation is that exchange represents nothing but goods already sold, and such a regular and sufficient turnover of goods no place in the world except London at that time could provide.

Speculative crises of a similar sort have taken place from that time forward, but never since on the same scale. The first crises in rational speculation began a full hundred years later, after the conclusion of the Wars of Liberation, and since that time they have recurred almost regularly at intervals of about 10 years—1815, 1825, 1835, 1847 etc. It was these which Karl Marx had in view when in the Communist Manifesto he prophesied the downfall of capitalism. The first of these crises and their periodic recurrence were based on the possibility of speculation and the resultant participation of outside interests in large business undertakings.

The collapse has resulted from the fact that in consequence of over-speculation, means of production, though not production itself, grew faster than the need for consumption of goods. In 1815 the prospect of the lifting of the continental blockade had led to a regular rage for founding factories; but the war had destroyed the buying power of the continent and it could no longer take the English products. This crisis was barely overcome, and the continent had begun to develop buying power, when in 1825 a new crisis set in because means of production, though not goods, had been speculatively produced on a scale never known before and out of correspondence with the needs.

That it was possible to create means of production to such an extent is due to the fact that with the 19th century the age of iron had begun. The discovery of the coking process, the blast furnace, and the carrying of mining operations to unprecedented depths, introduced iron as the basis
of creating means of production, where the machines of the 18th century were built only of wood. Thus production was freed from the organic limitations in which nature had held it confined. At the same time, however, crises became an imminent factor of the economic order. Crises in the broader sense of chronic unemployment, destitution, glutting of the market and political disturbances which destroy all industrial life, have existed always and everywhere. But there is great difference between the fact that a Chinese or Japanese peasant is hungry and knows the while that the Deity is unfavorable to him or the spirits are disturbed and consequently nature does not give rain or sunshine at the right time, and the fact that the social order itself may be held responsible for the crisis, even to the poorest laborer. In the first case, men turn to religion; in the second, the work of men is held at fault and the laboring man draws the conclusion that it must be changed. Rational socialism would never have originated in the absence of crises.
CHAPTER XXV

FREE WHOLESALE TRADE

In the course of the 18th century the wholesaler becomes finally separated from the retailer and comes to constitute a definite branch of the merchant class, whereas the Hansards, for example, were not yet typically wholesalers. Wholesale trade is significant, first, because it evolved new commercial forms. One of these is the auction, which is the means by which the importing wholesaler turns over his goods as quickly as possible and secures the means for making his payment abroad. The typical form of export trade, which takes the place of the fair as an institution, is consignment trading. It consists in the sending of goods to be sold to a third party, the consignee, who must market them according to the directions of the consignor. Thus consignor and consignee do not meet as the earlier traders did, at the fair, but the goods are sent abroad on a speculation. A positive prerequisite for trading on consignment is the establishment of regular exchange quotations on the point of destination, since otherwise the risk in consignment would be unbearably high. A negative requirement is that trading on the basis of samples is not yet established and hence the goods must be seen by the purchaser himself. Consignment trading is ordinarily overseas trade; it prevails where the merchant has no connection with the retailer.

Further development consists in the appearance of a buying commission man alongside the one who sells, the
former buying abroad without sight of the goods. The oldest form of such trade was based on samples. It is true that selling at a distance existed before this development, "merchantable goods" being bought and sold which must come up to the traditionally established quality; whether they did so was decided by mercantile courts of arbitration. Sale by sample, however, is a specifically modern form of trading at a distance. It played a fundamental role in commerce in the latter part of the 18th and the 19th centuries, being displaced by standardization and the specification of grades, which makes it possible to do away with the sending of samples. The new practice requires that grades be definitely established. It was on the basis of trading by grades that speculation and exchange dealings in connection with commodities became possible in the 18th century.

The fair is a prior stage of the exchange. The two have this in common, that trading takes place between merchants only; the difference consists in the physical presence of the goods in the case of the fair, and also in the periodical repetition of the fair itself. An intermediate type between the exchange and the fair is the so-called "permanent fair." In all the great commercial centers there arose in the 16th to the 18th centuries establishments which bore the name of exchange or "bourse." However, exchange dealings in the strict sense did not yet take place in them since the majority of those who frequented them were not local persons but non-resident merchants who resorted to the "exchange" because of its connection with the fair and because the goods were typically on the spot or represented by samples and were dealt in on this basis and not according to standard grades. Exchange dealing in the modern sense first developed in the field of negotiable paper and money, not in that of goods, the former being standardized.
by nature. Only in the course of the 19th century were those commodities added which could be graded with sufficient accuracy.

The innovation in developed exchange dealings is the system of rational dealing in futures or speculation for a rise, i.e., selling with a view to buying the goods at a lower figure before the date of delivery. The absence of such trading involved the possibility of such crises as those of the Tulip Craze and the Mississippi Company. It is true that agreements to deliver goods not in possession of the salesman were earlier met with, but they were generally prohibited because it was feared that they would facilitate the buying up of goods to the disadvantage of consumers. It could nowhere be systematically carried out as in a modern exchange, where speculation for a rise is always present in opposition to speculation for a fall. The first objects subject to futures trading were money, especially paper money and bank notes, state annuities, and colonial paper. Here there could be difference of opinion as to the effect of political occurrences or the yield of enterprise and hence these instruments were an appropriate object for the practice of speculation. In contrast, industrial paper is entirely absent from the earliest price current bulletins. Such speculation underwent an enormous expansion with the building of railroads; these provided the paper which first unchained the speculative urge. Under the head of goods, grains, and a few colonial products available in large volume, and then other goods, were drawn into the circle of exchange speculation during the 19th century.

For the development of a wholesale trade carried out in such fashion, and specifically for speculative trade, the indispensable prerequisite was the presence of an adequate news service and an adequate commercial organization. A public news service, such as forms the basis of exchange
dealings today, developed quite late. In the 18th century, not only did the English Parliament keep its proceedings secret, but the exchanges, which regarded themselves as merchants' clubs, followed the same policy in regard to their news information. They feared that the publication of general prices would lead to ill feeling and might destroy their business. The newspaper as an institution came into the service of commerce at an astonishingly late date.

The newspaper, as an institution, is not a product of capitalism. It brought together in the first place political news and then mainly all sorts of curiosities from the world at large. The advertisement, however, made its way into the newspaper very late. It was never entirely absent but originally it related to family announcements, while the advertisement as a notice by the merchant, directed toward finding a market, first becomes an established phenomenon at the end of the 18th century—in the journal which for a century was the first in the world, the "Times." Official price bulletins did not become general until the 19th century; originally all the exchanges were closed clubs, as they have remained in America virtually down to the present. Hence in the 18th century, business depended on the organized exchange of letters. Rational trading between regions was impossible without secure transmission of letters. This was accomplished partly by the merchant guilds and in part by butchers, wheelwrights, etc. The final stage in the rationalization of transmission of letters was brought about by the post, which collected letters and in connection therewith made tariff agreements with commercial houses. In Germany, the family of Thurn and Taxis, who held the postal concession, made notable advances in the rationalization of communication by letter. Yet the volume of correspondence is in the beginning surprisingly small. In 1633, a million letters were posted in all Eng-
land while today a place of 4,000 population will equal the number.

In the field of commercial organization nothing was changed, at least in principle, in the period before the introduction of the railroads. In the 18th century, ocean ships had reached very little greater displacement than those of Venice at the close of the middle ages. It is true that their number was greater, and the size of warships had increased. This provided a stimulus for the multiplication and enlargement of merchant ships also, but the impulse could not be followed out in the epoch of wood construction. Inland shipping had been facilitated by the construction of locks, but it retained its guild organization down into the 19th century and in consequence experienced no startling innovations. Land transport also remained as before. The post produced no change; it merely forwarded letters and small packages, but did not concern itself with large scale production, which was decisive for economic life.

Only the roads underwent an extraordinary improvement, through the construction of turnpikes. In this the French government under Sully took the lead, while England leased the roads to private enterprisers who collected tolls for their use. The building of the turnpikes wrought a revolution in commercial life comparable to no other before the appearance of the railways. There is no comparison between the present density of road traffic and that of this period. In 1793, 70,000 horses went through the little town of Lüneburg while as late as 1846 only 40,000 were used in freight transport in all Germany. The costs of land carriage amounted to ten or twenty times the freight on the railways at a later time, and were three to four times as high as the charges for inland shipping at the same period. A half billion ton-kilometers was the highest fig-
ure for transportation for the movement on land in Germany, while in 1913, 67 billions were carried on the railroads.

The railway is the most revolutionary instrumentality known to history, for economic life in general and not merely for commerce, but the railway was dependent on the age of iron; and it also like so many other things, was the plaything of princely and courtier interests.
CHAPTER XXVI

COLONIAL POLICY FROM THE SIXTEENTH TO THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

At this point it is pertinent to inquire into the significance which the acquisition and exploitation of the great non-European regions had for the development of modern capitalism, although only the most characteristic features of the older colonial policy can be mentioned here. The acquisition of colonies by the European states led to a gigantic acquisition of wealth in Europe for all of them. The means of this accumulation was the monopolizing of colonial products, and also of the markets of the colonies, that is the right to take goods into them, and, finally, the profits of transportation between mother land and colony; the last were ensured especially by the English Navigation Act of 1651. This accumulation was secured by force, without exception and by all countries. The operations might take various forms. Either the state drew a profit from the colonies directly, administering them by its own agencies, or it leased them, in return for a payment, to companies. Two main types of exploitation are met with: the feudal type in the Spanish and Portuguese colonies, the capitalistic in the Dutch and English.

Forerunners of the feudal colonization form are especially the Venetian and Genoese colonies in the Levant, and those of the Templars. In both cases the opportunity for securing a money income was afforded by the subdivision of
the region to be exploited into fiefs, "encomiendas" in the case of Spain.

The capitalistic colonies regularly developed into plantations. Labor power was furnished by the natives. The opportunities for application of this labor system, from which favorable results had been secured in Asia and Africa, seemed about to expand enormously when it was transferred to trans-oceanic lands. It was found however that the American Indians were entirely unsuitable for plantation labor,² and importation of black slaves to the West Indies took the place of their use and gradually grew into a regular commerce of enormous extent.³ It was carried on on the basis of slave trading privileges ("assiento") the first of which was granted by the emperor Charles V in 1517 to the Flemings. These slave trading privileges played a large role in international relations well into the 18th century. In the treaty of Utrecht, England secured the right to import slaves into the Spanish possessions in South America, to the exclusion of all other powers, and at the same time assumed the obligation of delivering a certain minimum number. The results of the slave trade were considerable. It may be estimated that at the beginning of the 19th century some seven million slaves were living in the territory of the European colonies. Their mortality was extraordinarily high, running in the 19th century to 25% and to a multiple of that figure earlier. From 1807 to 1848, a further five million slaves were imported from Africa, and the aggregate of slaves transported thence overseas can be set equal to the population of a first class European power in the 18th century.

In addition to the black slaves there were white half-slaves, the "indentured servants"; they were especially numerous in the English North American colonies where in the 17th century their number surpassed that of the
negroes. In part they were deported criminals, in part poor wretches who attempted in this way to earn their passage money, a small fortune.

The profits of the slave labor were by no means small. In England in the 18th century they were estimated at fifteen to twenty pounds sterling per slave per year. The profitableness of slave labor depended upon strict plantation discipline, ruthless driving of the slave, and perpetual importation—since the slaves did not perpetuate themselves—and finally exploitative agriculture.

This accumulation of wealth brought about through colonial trade has been of little significance for the development of modern capitalism—a fact which must be emphasized in opposition to Werner Sombart. It is true that the colonial trade made possible the accumulation of wealth to an enormous extent, but this did not further the specifically occidental form of the organization of labor, since colonial trade itself rested on the principle of exploitation and not that of securing an income through market operations. Furthermore, we know that in Bengal for example, the English garrison cost five times as much as the money value of all the goods carried thither. It follows that the markets for domestic industry furnished by the colonies under the conditions of the time were relatively unimportant, and that the main profit was derived from the transport business.

The end of the capitalistic method of exploiting colonies coincides with the abolition of slavery. Only in part did this come about through ethical motives. The only Christian sect which persistently and uniformly combated slavery was the Quakers; neither the Calvinists nor the Catholics nor any other denomination consistently and constantly advocated its abolition. A decisive event was the loss of the North American colonies. Even during the
War for Independence, the northern colonies prohibited slavery, and in fact from purely democratic political principles, because the people wished to avoid the development of a plantation system and a planter aristocracy. A religious motive also played a part in the shape of the traditional repugnance of the Puritans to feudalism of any sort. In 1794 the French Convention declared for the abolition of slavery on political equalitarian grounds, which were dressed up in an appropriate ideology. In the meantime, in 1815, the Congress of Vienna prohibited the slave trade. The interest of England in slavery was much reduced through the loss of the principal slave consuming region, its North American colonies. The decrees of the Congress made it possible for the English to suppress the foreign slave trade and at the same time themselves to carry on a buoyant smuggling business. From 1807 to 1847, five million human beings were carried from Africa to the English colonial territories in this way, with the actual sufferance of the government. Only after the parliamentary reform in 1833, was slavery really prohibited in England and by England for all its colonies, and the prohibition was at once treated seriously.

In the period from the 16th to the 18th century, slavery signified as little for the economic organization of Europe as it did much for the accumulation of wealth in Europe. It produced a large number of annuitants, but contributed in very small degree toward bringing about the development of the capitalistic organization of industry and of economic life.
CHAPTER XXVII

THE DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTRIAL TECHNIQUE

It is not easy to define accurately the concept of the factory. We think at once of the steam engine and the mechanization of work, but the machine had its forerunner in what we call "apparatus"—labor appliances which had to be utilized in the same way as the machine but which as a rule were driven by water power. The distinction is that the apparatus works as the servant of the man while in modern machines the inverse relation holds. The real distinguishing characteristic of the modern factory is in general, however, not the implements of work applied, but the concentration of ownership of workplace, means of work, source of power and raw material in one and the same hand, that of the entrepreneur. This combination was only exceptionally met with before the 18th century.

Tracing the English development, which determined the character of the evolution of capitalism—although England followed the example of other countries such as Italy—we find the following stages. 1. The oldest real factory which can be identified (though it was still driven by water power) was a silk factory at Derwent, near Derby, in 1719. It was conducted on the basis of a patent, the owner of which had stolen the invention in Italy. In Italy there had long been silk manufacture with various property relations, but the product was destined for luxury requirements and belonged to an epoch which is not yet
characteristic for modern capitalism, although it must be named here because the implements of work and all material and product belonged to an entrepreneur. 2. The establishment of wool manufacture (1738) on the basis of a patent after the invention of an apparatus for running a hundred bobbins at once by the aid of water power. 3. The development of half-linen production. 4. The systematic development of the pottery industry through experiments in Staffordshire. Earthen vessels were produced under a modern division of labor and the application of water power and with the ownership of work place and implements by an entrepreneur. 5. The manufacture of paper, beginning with the 18th century, its permanent basis being the development of the modern use of documents and of the newspaper.

The decisive factor, however, in the triumph of the mechanization and rationalization of work was the fate of cotton manufacture. This industry was transplanted from the continent to England in the 17th century and there immediately began a struggle against the old national industry established since the 15th century, namely, wool, a struggle as intense as that in which wool had previously been involved against linen. The power of the wool producers was so great that they secured restrictions and prohibitions on the production of half-linen, which was not restored until the Manchester Act of 1736. The factory production of cotton stuff was originally limited by the fact that, while the loom had been improved and enlarged, the spindle remained on the medieval level, so that the necessary quantity of spun material was not available. A succession of technical improvements in the spindle after 1769 reversed this relation and with the help of water power and mechanical aids great quantities of usable yarn could be provided while it was impossible to weave the same
quantity with corresponding speed. The discrepancy was removed in 1785 through the construction of the power loom by Cartwright, one of the first inventors who combined technology with science and handled the problems of the former in terms of theoretical considerations.

But for all this revolution in the means of work the development might have stopped and modern capitalism in its most characteristic form never have appeared. Its victory was decided by coal and iron. We know that coal had been used in consumption, even in the middle ages, as in London, in Luttich and Zwickau (above p. 191). But until the 18th century the technique was determined by the fact that smelting and all preparation of iron was done with charcoal. The deforestation of England resulted, while Germany was saved from this fate by the circumstance that in the 17th and 18th centuries it was untouched by the capitalistic development. Everywhere the destruction of the forests brought the industrial development to a standstill at a certain point. Smelting was only released from its attachment to organic materials of the plant world by the application of coal. It must be noted that the first blast furnaces appear as early as the 15th century, but they were fed with wood and were used not for private consumption but for war purposes, and in part also in connection with ocean shipping. In the 15th century, furthermore, was invented the iron drill for the preparation of cannon barrels. At the same time appeared the large heavy trip hammer, up to a thousand pounds weight, driven by water power, so that in addition to the handling of cast iron with the drill, mechanical forging was also possible. Finally, in the 17th century the rolling process was also applied in the modern sense of the word.

In the face of the further development arose two difficult problems. These were set, on the one hand, by the dan-
ger of deforestation and, on the other, by the perpetual inroads of water in the mines. The first question was the more pressing because in contrast with the expansion of the textile industry the English iron industry had shrunk step by step until at the beginning of the 18th century it gave the impression of having reached its end. The solution of the problem was reached through the coking of coal, which was discovered in 1735, and the use of coke in blast furnace operation, which was undertaken in 1740. Another step in advance was made in 1784 when the puddling process was introduced as an innovation. The threat to mining was removed by the invention of the steam engine. Crude attempts first showed the possibility of lifting water with fire and between 1670 and 1770, and further toward the end of the 18th century, the steam engine arrived at the stage of serviceability which made it possible to produce the amount of coal necessary for modern industry.

The significance of the development just portrayed is to be found in three consequences. In the first place, coal and iron released technology and productive possibilities from the limitations of the qualities inherent in organic materials; from this time forward industry was no longer dependent upon animal power or plant growth. Through a process of exhaustive exploitation, fossil fuel, and by its aid iron ore, were brought up to the light of day, and by means of both men achieved the possibility of extending production to a degree which would have previously been beyond bounds of the conceivable. Thus iron became the most important factor in the development of capitalism; what would have happened to this system or to Europe in the absence of this development we do not know. ²

The second point is that the mechanization of the production process through the steam engine liberated pro-
duction from the organic limitations of human labor. Not altogether, it is true, for it goes without saying that labor was indispensable for the tending of machines. But the mechanizing process has always and everywhere been introduced to the definite end of releasing labor; every new invention signifies the extensive displacement of hand workers by a relatively small man power for machine supervision.

Finally, through the union with science, the production of goods was emancipated from all the bonds of inherited tradition, and came under the dominance of the freely roving intelligence. It is true that most of the inventions of the 18th century were not made in a scientific manner; when the coking process was discovered no one suspected what its chemical significance might be. The connection of industry with modern science, especially the systematic work of the laboratories, beginning with Justus von Liebig, enabled industry to become what it is today and so brought capitalism to its full development.

The recruiting of the labor force for the new form of production, as it developed in England in the 18th century, resting upon the concentration of all the means of production in the hands of the entrepreneur, was carried out by means of compulsion, though of an indirect sort. Under this head belong especially the Poor Law, and the Statute of Apprentices of Queen Elizabeth. These measures had become necessary in consequence of the large number of people wandering about the country who had been rendered destitute by the revolution in the agricultural system. Its displacement of the small dependent peasant by large renters and the transformation of arable land into sheep pastures—although the latter has occasionally been overestimated—worked together constantly to reduce the amount of labor force required on the land and to bring
into being a surplus population, which was subjected to compulsory labor. Anyone who did not take a job voluntarily was thrust into the workhouse with its strict discipline; and anyone who left a position without a certificate from the master or entrepreneur was treated as a vagabond. No unemployed person was supported except under the compulsion of entering the workhouse.

In this way the first labor force for the factories was recruited. With difficulty the people adapted themselves to the discipline of the work. But the power of the possessing classes was too great; they secured the support of the political authority through the justices of the peace, who in the absence of binding law operated on the basis of a maze of instructions and largely according to their own dictates. Down into the second half of the 19th century they exercised an arbitrary control over the labor force and fed the workers into the newly arising industries. From the beginning of the 18th century, on the other hand, begins the regulation of relations between entrepreneur and laborer, presaging the modern control of labor conditions. The first anti-trucking laws were passed under Queen Anne and George I. While during the whole middle ages the worker had struggled for the right to bring the product of his own labor to market, from now on legislation had to protect him against being paid for his work in the products of others and to secure for him remuneration in money. Another source of labor power was in England the small master class, the great majority of whom were transformed into a proletariat of factory laborers.

In the market for the products of these newly established industries, two great sources of demand appeared, namely war and luxury, the military administration and court requirements. The military administration became a consumer of the products of industry to the extent that the
great mercenary armies developed and the more so as army discipline and the rationalization of arms and all military technique progressed. In the textile industry the production of uniforms was fundamental, as these could by no means be the product of the army itself but were a means of discipline in the interest of unitary regimentation, and in order to keep the soldiers under control. The production of cannon and fire arms occupied the iron industry, and the provision of supplies did the same for trade. In addition to the land army there was the navy; the increasing size of the war ships was one of the factors which created a market for industry. While the size of merchant ships had changed little before the end of the 18th century and as late as 1750 the ships entering London were typically of about 140 tons burden, war ships had grown to a size of a thousand tons in the 16th century and in the 18th this became the normal burden. The demand of the navy, like that of the army, increased further with the growth in the number and extent of the voyages (and this also applies to merchant ships) especially after the 16th century. Down to that time the Levant cruise had normally occupied a year; at this time ships began to remain much longer at sea and at the same time the increasing magnitude of campaigns on land necessitated a more extensive provision with supplies, munitions, etc. Finally, the speed of ship building and of the construction of cannon increased with extraordinary rapidity after the 17th century.

Sombart has assumed that the standardized mass provision for war is among the decisive conditions affecting the development of modern capitalism. This theory must be reduced to its proper proportions. It is correct that annually enormous sums were spent for army and navy purposes; in Spain 70% of the revenues of the state went for this purpose and in other countries two-thirds or more.
But we also find outside the western world, as in the Mogul Empire and in China, enormous armies equipped with artillery (although not yet with uniforms), yet no impulse toward a capitalistic development followed from the fact. Moreover, even in the west the army needs were met to an increasing extent, developing in parallelism with capitalism itself, by the military administration on its own account, in its own workshops and arms and munition factories; that is, it proceeded along non-capitalistic lines. Hence, it is a false conclusion to ascribe to war as such, through the army demands, the role of prime mover in the creation of modern capitalism. It is true that it was involved in capitalism, and not only in Europe; but this motive was not decisive for the development. Otherwise the increasing provision of army requirements by direct action of the state would again have forced capitalism into the background, a development which did not take place.

For the luxury demand of the court and the nobility, France became the typical country. For a time in the 16th century, the king spent 10 million livres a year directly or indirectly for luxury goods. This expenditure by the royal family and the highest social classes constituted a strong stimulus to quite a number of industries. The most important articles, aside from such means of enjoyment as chocolate and coffee, are embroidery (16th century), linen goods, for the treatment of which ironing develops (17th century), stockings (16th century), umbrellas (17th century), indigo dyeing (16th century), tapestry (17th century), and carpets (18th century). With regard to the volume of the demand the two last named were the most important of the luxury industries; they signified a democratization of luxury which is the crucial direction of capitalistic production.

Court luxury existed in China and India, on a scale un-
known in Europe; and yet no significant stimulus to capitalism or capitalistic industry proceeded from the fact. The reason is that the provision for this demand was arranged leiturgically through compulsory contributions. This system maintained itself so tenaciously that down to our own time the peasants in the region of Peking have been obliged to furnish to the imperial court the same objects as 3000 years ago, although they did not know how to produce them and were compelled to buy them from producers. In India and China the army requirements were also met by forced labor and contributions in kind. In Europe itself the leiturgical contributions of the east are not unknown, although they appear in a different form. Here the princes transformed the workers in luxury industry into compulsory laborers by indirect means, binding them to their places of work by grants of land, long period contracts, and various privileges—although in France, the country which took the lead in luxury industries, this was not the case; here the handicraft form of establishment maintained itself, partly under a putting-out organization and partly under a workshop system, and neither the technology nor the economic organization of the industries was transformed in any revolutionary way.

The decisive impetus toward capitalism could come only from one source, namely a mass market demand, which again could arise only in a small proportion of the luxury industries through the democratization of the demand, especially along the line of production of substitutes for the luxury goods of the upper classes. This phenomenon is characterized by price competition, while the luxury industries working for the court follow the handicraft principle of competition in quality. The first example of the policy of a state organization entering upon price competition is afforded in England at the close of the 15th cen-
tury, when the effort was made to undersell Flemish wool, an object which was promoted by numerous export prohibitions.

The great price revolution of the 16th and 17th centuries provided a powerful lever for the specifically capitalistic tendencies of seeking profit through cheapening production and lowering the price. This revolution is rightly ascribed to the continuous inflow of precious metals, in consequence of the great overseas discoveries. It lasted from the thirties of the 16th century down to the time of the Thirty Years' War, but affected different branches of economic life in quite different ways. In the case of agricultural products an almost universal rise in price set in, making it possible for them to go over to production for the market. It was quite otherwise with the course of prices for industrial products. By and large these remained stable or rose in price relatively little, thus really falling, in comparison with the agricultural products. This relative decline was made possible only through a shift in technology and economics, and exerted a pressure in the direction of increasing profit by repeated cheapening of production. Thus the development did not follow the order that capitalism set in first and the decline in prices followed, but the reverse; first the prices fell relatively and then came capitalism.

The tendency toward rationalizing technology and economic relations with a view to reducing prices in relation to costs, generated in the 17th century a feverish pursuit of invention. All the inventors of the period are dominated by the object of cheapening production; the notion of perpetual motion as a source of energy is only one of many objectives of this quite universal movement. The inventor as a type goes back much farther. But if one scrutinizes the devices of the greatest inventor of pre-capitalistic times, Leonardo da Vinci—(for experimenta-
tion originated in the field of art and not that of science)—one observes that his urge was not that of cheapening production but the rational mastery of technical problems as such. The inventors of the pre-capitalistic age worked empirically; their inventions had more or less the character of accidents. An exception is mining, and in consequence it is the problems of mining in connection with which deliberate technical progress took place.

A positive innovation in connection with invention is the first rational patent law, the English law of 1623, which contains all the essential provisions of a modern statute. Down to that time the exploitation of inventions had been arranged through a special grant in consideration of a payment; in contrast the law of 1623 limits the protection of the invention to 14 years and makes its subsequent utilization by an entrepreneur conditional upon an adequate royalty for the original inventor. Without the stimulus of this patent law the inventions crucial for the development of capitalism in the field of textile industry in the 18th century would not have been possible.

Drawing together once more the distinguishing characteristics of western capitalism and its causes, we find the following factors. First, this institution alone produced a rational organization of labor, which nowhere previously existed. Everywhere and always there has been trade; it can be traced back into the stone age. Likewise we find in the most varied epochs and cultures war finance, state contributions, tax farming, farming of offices, etc., but not a rational organization of labor. Furthermore we find everywhere else a primitive, strictly integrated internal economy such that there is no question of any freedom of economic action between members of the same tribe or clan, associated with absolute freedom of trade externally. Internal and external ethics are distinguished,
and in connection with the latter there is complete ruthlessness in financial procedure; nothing can be more rigidly prescribed than the clan economy of China or the caste economy of India, and on the other hand nothing so unscrupulous as the conduct of the Hindu foreign trader. In contrast with this, the second characteristic of western capitalism is a lifting of the barrier between the internal economy and external economy, between internal and external ethics, and the entry of the commercial principle into the internal economy, with the organization of labor on this basis. Finally, the disintegration of primitive economic fixity is also met with elsewhere, as for example in Babylon; but nowhere else do we find the entrepreneur organization of labor as it is known in the western world.

If this development took place only in the occident the reason is to be found in the special features of its general cultural evolution which are peculiar to it. Only the occident knows the state in the modern sense, with a professional administration, specialized officialdom, and law based on the concept of citizenship. Beginnings of this institution in antiquity and in the orient were never able to develop. Only the occident knows rational law, made by jurists and rationally interpreted and applied, and only in the occident is found the concept of citizen (civis Romanus, citoyen, bourgeois) because only in the occident again are there cities in the specific sense. Furthermore, only the occident possesses science in the present-day sense of the word. Theology, philosophy, reflection on the ultimate problems of life, were known to the Chinese and the Hindu, perhaps even of a depth unreached by the European; but a rational science and in connection with it a rational technology remained unknown to those civilizations. Finally, western civilization is further distinguished from every other by the presence of men with a rational ethic for the
conduct of life. Magic and religion are found everywhere; but a religious basis for the ordering of life which consistently followed out must lead to explicit rationalism is again peculiar to western civilization alone.
CHAPTER XXVIII

CITIZENSHIP

In the concept of citizenship (Bürgentum) as it is used in social history are bound up three distinct significations. First, citizenship may include certain social categories or classes which have some specific communal or economic interest. As thus defined the class citizen is not unitary; there are greater citizens and lesser citizens; entrepreneurs and hand workers belong to the class. Second, in the political sense, citizenship signifies membership in the state, with its connotation as the holder of certain political rights. Finally, by citizens in the class sense, we understand those strata which are drawn together, in contrast with the bureaucracy or the proletariat and others outside their circle, as "persons of property and culture," entrepreneurs, recipients of funded incomes, and in general all persons of academic culture, a certain class standard of living, and a certain social prestige.

The first of these concepts is economic in character and is peculiar to western civilization. There are and have been everywhere hand laborers and entrepreneurs, but never and nowhere were they included in a unitary social class. The notion of the citizen of the state has its fore-runners in antiquity and in the medieval city. Here there were citizens as holders of political rights, while outside of the occident only traces of this relation are met with, as in the Babylonian patriciate and the Josherim, the inhabitants of a city with full legal rights, in the Old Testament.
The farther east we go the fewer are these traces; the notion of citizens of the state is unknown to the world of Islam, and to India and China. Finally, the social class signification of citizen as the man of property and culture, or of one or the other, in contrast with the nobility, on the one hand, and the proletariat, on the other, is likewise a specifically modern and western concept, like that of the bourgeoisie. It is true that in antiquity and in the middle ages, citizen was a class concept; membership in specific class groups made the person a citizen. The difference is that in this case the citizen was privileged in a negative as well as a positive sense. In the positive sense in that he only—in the medieval city for example—might pursue certain occupations; negatively in that certain legal requirements were waived, such as the qualification for holding a fief, the qualification for the tourney, and that for membership in the religious community. The citizen in the quality of membership in a class is always a citizen of a particular city, and the city in this sense, has existed only in the western world, or elsewhere, as in the early period in Mesopotamia, only in an incipient stage.

The contributions of the city in the whole field of culture are extensive. The city created the party and the demagogue. It is true that we find all through history struggles between cliques, factions of nobles, and office-seekers, but nowhere outside the occidental cities are there parties in the present-day sense of the word, and as little are there demagogues in the sense of party leaders and seekers for ministerial posts. The city and it alone has brought forth the phenomena of the history of art. Hellenic and Gothic art, in contrast with Mycænean and Roman, are city art. So also the city produced science in the modern sense. In the city civilization of the Greeks the discipline out of which scientific thinking developed,
CITIZENSHIP

naturally mathematics, was given the form under which it continuously developed down to modern times. The city culture of the Babylonians stands in an analogous relation to the foundation of astronomy. Furthermore, the city is the basis of specific religious institutions. Not only was Judaism, in contrast with the religion of Israel, a thoroughly urban construction—a peasant could not conform with the ritual of the law—but early Christianity is also a city phenomenon; the larger the city the greater was the percentage of Christians, and the case of Puritanism and Pietism was also the same. That a peasant could function as a member of a religious group is a strictly modern phenomenon. In Christian antiquity the word *paganus* signified at the same time heathen and village dweller, just as in the post-exilic period the town-dwelling Pharisee looked with contempt on the Am-ha-aretz who was ignorant of the law. Even Thomas Aquinas, in discussing the different social classes and their relative worth, speaks with extreme contempt of the peasant. Finally, the city alone produced theological thought, and on the other hand again, it alone harbored thought untrammeled by priestcraft. The phenomenon of Plato, with his question of how to make men useful citizens as the dominant problem of his thought, is unthinkable outside the environment of a city.

The question whether a place is to be regarded as a city is not answered on the basis of its spatial extent. From the economic standpoint, rather, both in the occident and elsewhere, the city is in the first place the seat of commerce and industry, and requires a continuous provision of the means of subsistence from without. From an economic standpoint, the various categories of large places are distinguished by the source from which supplies come and the means by which they are paid for. A large place which does not live on its own agricultural production may pay
for its imports by its own products, that is industrial products, or through trade or rents, or finally by means of pensions. The "rents" represent salaries of officials or land rents; subsistence on pensions is illustrated by Wiesbaden, where the cost of imports is met by the pensions of political officials and army officers. Large places may be classified according to the dominance of these sources of income to pay for the imports of subsistence goods, but this is a condition common to the world at large; it belongs to large places and does not distinguish a city.

A further general characteristic of a city is the fact that in the past it was generally a fortress; throughout long periods a place was recognized as a city only if and so long as it was a fortified point. In this connection the city was regularly the seat of government, both political and ecclesiastical. In some cases in the occident a *civitas* was understood to mean a place which was the seat of a bishop. In China it is a decisive characteristic that the city is the seat of a mandarin, and cities are classified on the basis of the rank of their mandarins. Even in the Italian Renaissance the cities were distinguished by the grade of their officials and upper class residents, and the rank of the resident nobility.

It is true that outside the western world there were cities in the sense of a fortified point and the seat of political and hierarchical administration. But outside the occident there have not been cities in the sense of a unitary community. In the middle ages, the distinguishing characteristic was the possession of its own law and court and an autonomous administration of whatever extent. The citizen of the middle ages was a citizen because and insofar as he came under this law and participated in the choice of administrative officials. That cities have not existed outside the occident in the sense of a political community is a fact
CITIZENSHIP

calling for explanation. That the reason was economic in character is very doubtful. As little is it the specific "Germanic spirit" which produced the unity, for in China and India there were unitary groups much more cohesive than those of the occident, and yet the particular union in cities is not found there.

The inquiry must be carried back to certain ultimate fundamental facts. We cannot explain the phenomena on the basis of the feudal or political grants of the middle ages or in terms of the founding of cities by Alexander the Great on his march to India. The earliest references to cities as political units designate rather their revolutionary character. The occidental city arose through the establishment of a fraternity, the συνοικισμός in antiquity, the coniuratio in the middle ages. The juristic forms, always relating to externals, in which the resulting struggles and conflicts of the middle ages are clothed, and the facts which lie behind them, cannot be distinguished. The pronouncements of the Staufers against cities prohibit none of the specific presumptions of citizenship, but rather the coniuratio, the brotherhood in arms for mutual aid and protection, involving the usurpation of political power.

The first example in the middle ages is the revolutionary movement in 726 which led to the secession of Italy from the Byzantine rule and which centered in Venice. It was called forth especially by opposition to the attack on images carried out by the emperors under military pressure, and hence the religious element, although not the only factor, was the motive which precipitated the revolution. Previous to that time the dux (later doge) of Venice had been appointed by the emperor, although, on the other hand, there were certain families whose members were constantly to a predominant extent appointed military tribunes or district commandants. From then on the choice of the
tribunes and of the dux was in the hands of persons liable to military service, that is, those who were in a position to serve as knights. Thus the movement was started. It requires 400 years longer before in 1143 the name Commune Venetiarum turns up. Quite similar was the "synoecism" of antiquity, as for example the procedure of Nehemiah in Jerusalem. This leader caused the leading families and a selected portion of the people on the land to band themselves together under oath for the purpose of administration and defense of the city. We must assume the same background for the origin of every ancient city. The polis is always the product of such a confraternity or synoecism, not always an actual settlement in proximity but a definite oath of brotherhood which signified that a common ritualistic meal is established and a ritualistic union formed and that only those had a part in this ritualistic group who buried their dead on the acropolis and had their dwellings in the city.

For the fact that this development took place only in the occident there are two reasons. The first is the peculiar character of the organization for defense. The occidental city is in its beginnings first of all a defense group, an organization of those economically competent to bear arms, to equip and train themselves. Whether the military organization is based on the principle of self-equipment or on that of equipment by a military overlord who furnishes horses, arms and provisions, is a distinction quite as fundamental for social history as is the question whether the means of economic production are the property of the worker or of a capitalistic entrepreneur. Everywhere outside the west the development of the city was prevented by the fact that the army of the prince is older than the city. The earliest Chinese epics do not, like the Homeric, speak of the hero who fares forth to battle in his own chariot, but
only of the officer as a leader of the men. Likewise in India an army led by officers marched out against Alexander the Great. In the west the army equipped by the war lord, and the separation of soldier from the paraphernalia of war, in a way analogous to the separation of the worker from the means of production, is a product of the modern era, while in Asia it stands at the apex of the historical development. There was no Egyptian or Babylonian-Assyrian army which would have presented a picture similar to that of the Homeric mass army, the feudal army of the west, the city army of the ancient polis, or the medieval guild army.

The distinction is based on the fact that in the cultural evolution of Egypt, western Asia, India, and China the question of irrigation was crucial. The water question conditioned the existence of the bureaucracy, the compulsory service of the dependent classes, and the dependence of the subject classes upon the functioning of the bureaucracy of the king. That the king also expressed his power in the form of a military monopoly is the basis of the distinction between the military organization of Asia and that of the west. In the first case the royal official and army officer is from the beginning the central figure of the process, while in the west both were originally absent. The forms of religious brotherhood and self equipment for war made possible the origin and existence of the city. It is true that the beginnings of an analogous development are found in the east. In India we meet with relations which verge upon the establishment of a city in the western sense, namely, the combination of self equipment and legal citizenship; one who could furnish an elephant for the army is in the free city of Vaiçali a full citizen. In ancient Mesopotamia, too, the knights carried on war with each other and established cities with autonomous administration.
But in the one case as in the other these beginnings later disappear as the great kingdom arises on the basis of water regulation. Hence only in the west did the development come to complete maturity.

The second obstacle which prevented the development of the city in the orient was formed by ideas and institutions connected with magic. In India the castes were not in a position to form ritualistic communities and hence a city, because they were ceremonially alien to one another. The same facts explained the peculiar position of the Jews in the middle ages. The cathedral and the eucharist were the symbols of the unity of the city, but the Jews were not permitted to pray in the cathedral or take part in the communion and hence were doomed to form diaspora-communes. On the contrary, the consideration which made it natural for cities to develop in the west was in antiquity the extensive freedom of the priesthood, the absence of any monopoly in the hands of the priests over communion with the gods, such as obtained in Asia. In western antiquity the officials of the city performed the rites, and the resultant proprietorship of the polis over the things belonging to the gods and the priestly treasures was carried to the point of filling the priestly offices by auction, since no magical limitations stood in the way as in India. For the later period in the west three great facts were crucial. The first was prophecy among the Jews, which destroyed magic within the confines of Judaism; magical procedure remained real but was devilish instead of divine. The second fact was the pentecostal miracle, the ceremonial adoption into the spirit of Christ which was a decisive factor in the extraordinary spread of the early Christian enthusiasm. The final factor was the day in Antioch (Gal. 2; 11 ff.) when Paul, in opposition to Peter, espoused fellowship with the uncircumcised. The magical barriers between clans, tribes,
and peoples, which were still known in the ancient *polis* to a considerable degree, were thus set aside and the establishment of the occidental city was made possible.

Although the city in the strict sense is specifically a western institution, there are within the class two fundamental distinctions, first between antiquity and the middle ages and second between southern and northern Europe. In the first period of development of the city communities, the similarity between the ancient and medieval city is very great. In both cases it is those of knightly birth, the families leading an aristocratic existence, who alone are active members in the group, while all the remaining population is merely bound to obedience. That these knightly families became residents of the city is entirely the consequence of the possibility of sharing in trade opportunities. After the success of the Italian revolution against Byzantium, a portion of the Venetian upper class families collected in the Rialto because from that point commerce with the orient was carried on. It is to be remembered that in the sea trade and naval warfare Venice still formed a part of the Byzantine system although it was politically independent. Similarly in antiquity, the wealthy families did not carry on trade on their own account but in the capacity of ship owners or money lenders. It is characteristic that in antiquity there was no city of importance which lay more than a day's journey distant from the sea; only those places flourished which for political or geographical reasons possessed exceptional opportunities for trade. Consequently Sombart is essentially incorrect in asserting that ground rent is the mother of the city and of commerce. The facts stand in the reverse order; settlement in the city is occasioned by the possibility and the intention of employing the rents in trade, and the decisive influence of trade on the founding of cities stands out.
In the early middle ages the course of events in the rise of a new individual in Venice was somewhat as follows. He began as a trader, that is a retailer; then he proceeded to travel overseas, securing from the upper class families a credit of money or goods which he turned over in the Levant, sharing his profit on his return with those who provided the loan. If he was successful he got himself into the Venetian circle either by way of land or ships. As a ship owner or land owner the way was open for his ascent into the nobility, down to the closing of the Grand Council in 1297. The ordinary designation of the members of the aristocracy living on the rent of land and of capital—both resting on trading profit—is in Italy *scioperato*, in Germany *ehrserter Müßiggänger*—"honorable idler." It is true that among the nobility in Venice there were always families which continued to carry on trade as a profession, just as in the period of the Reformation noble families who had lost their wealth turned to the quest of a livelihood by way of industry. But normally the full citizen and member of an urban noble class is a man who possesses land as well as capital, and lives on an income but does not himself take part in trade or industry.

Thus far the medieval development coincides with that of antiquity; but their ways part with the establishment of democracy. At the outset, to be sure, there are similarities to be noted in this connection also: Δῆμος, *plebs*, *popolo* and *Bürgerschaft* are indifferent words which refer in the same way to the breaking in of democracy; they designate the mass of citizens who do not pursue the knightly life. The noble, the man of knightly station and feudal qualifications, is watched, deprived of the suffrage and outlawed, as the Russian bourgeoisie were by Lenin.

The basis of democratization is everywhere purely military in character; it lies in the rise of disciplined infantry,
CITIZENSHIP

the *hoplites* of antiquity, the guild army in the middle ages. The decisive fact was that military discipline proved its superiority over the battle between heroes. Military discipline meant the triumph of democracy because the community wished and was compelled to secure the cooperation of the non-aristocratic masses and hence put arms, and along with arms political power, into their hands. In addition, the money power plays its role, both in antiquity and in the middle ages.

Parallelism is also manifest in the mode in which democracy establishes itself. Like the state in the beginning, the *popolo* carries on its struggle as a separate group with its own officials. Examples are the Spartan ephors as representatives of the democracy against the kings, and the Roman tribunes of the people, while in the Italian cities of the middle ages the *capitano del popolo*, or *della mercanzia*, are such officials. It is characteristic of them that they are the first concededly "illegitimate" officials. The consuls of the Italian cities still prefix the *dei gratia* to their titles but the *capitano del popolo* no longer does so. The source of the power of the tribune is illegitimate; he is *sacrocancutus* precisely because he is not a legitimate official and hence is protected only by divine interference, or popular vengeance.

The two courses of development are also equivalent in regard to their purpose. Social and not economic class interests are decisive; it is a question primarily of protection against the aristocratic families. The *popolani* know that they are rich and have fought and won the great wars of the city along with the nobility; they are armed, and hence feel themselves discriminated against and are no longer content with the subordinate class position which they have previously accepted. Similarity exists also, and finally, in the means available to the officials of the separate organi-
zation (Sonderbund). Everywhere they secure the right of intervention in legal processes in which the plebeians are opposed to the aristocrats. This purpose is served by the right of intercession of the Roman tribune as well as the Florentine capitano del popolo, a right which is carried out through appeal or through lynch justice.\(^5\) The Sonderbund sets up the claim that the statutes of the city shall be valid only after they have been ratified by the plebeians, and finally establishes the principle that only that is law which they have determined. The Roman legal principle: ut quod tributim plebs iussisset populum tenerit has its counterpart in the Florentine ordinamenti della giustizia, and in the exclusion of all non-workers from Lenin's labor dictatorship.

The further instrumentality of democracy in establishing its domination is compulsory entry into the plebs. In antiquity the nobles were forced to enroll in the tribus and in the middle ages in the guilds, although the final significance was not, in many cases, perceived. Finally, there is everywhere a sudden and quite enormous multiplication of offices, a plethora of officialdom called forth by the need of the victorious party for remunerating its members with the spoils of the contest.

Thus far there is coincidence between the democracy of antiquity and that of the middle ages. But alongside the points of agreement there are categorical differences. At the outset there is an ultimate distinction as regards the divisions into which the city falls. In the middle ages these consist of the guilds, while in antiquity they never possessed the guild character. Scrutinizing the medieval guilds from this point of view we notice that different guild strata successively rise to power. In Florence, the classical guild city, the earliest of these strata, became distinguished as the aggregate of the arti maggiori from the arti minori.
CITIZENSHIP.

The first group includes on the one hand merchants, dealers in exchange, jewelers, and in general entrepreneurs who require a considerable industrial capital; on the other hand it includes jurists, physicians, apothecaries, and in general the "persons of property and culture" in the sense of the modern bourgeoisie. In regard to the guilds made up of entrepreneurs one may assume that at least 50% of the members lived on income or soon came to do so. This category of persons of property and culture was known as the popolo grasso, the "fat" people. Exactly the same expression is found in the Psalms, which are specifically the poetry of resentment of the virtuous and pious against the superior class of annuitants and nobility, against the "fat," as they are repeatedly called in the psalms themselves.

In the arti maggiori are included the small capitalists, while to the arti minori belong the butchers, bakers, weavers, etc., who in Italy at least, were situated at the border of the working class although in Germany to some extent they became large entrepreneurs. The mere laborers, on the other hand, the ciompi, only very exceptionally achieved power, as a rule only when the nobility allied itself with the lowest strata against the middle class.

Under the domination of the guilds, the medieval city pursued a special type of policy, called town-economy. Its objective was in the first place to maintain the traditional access to occupation and livelihood, and, in the second place, to make the surrounding country subservient to the town interest to the utmost extent through banalités and compulsory use of the town market. It sought further to restrict competition and prevent the development toward large-scale industry. In spite of all, an opposition developed between trading capital and craft work organized in guilds, with a growth of domestic industry and of a permanent journeyman class as a forerunner of the modern
proletariat. Nothing of all this is to be found in antiquity under the rule of democracy. It is true that in the early period there are vestiges of such conditions. Thus in Rome, the fabri of the military organization of Severus, hand-workers, army smiths etc., are perhaps such a survival. But in the period of fully developed democracy, there is no mention of anything of the sort, and not until the late Roman period are traces again found. Thus in antiquity the guild, as the ruling power in the town, is absent, and with it guild policy, and also the opposition between labor and capital which is present even at the close of the middle ages.

In place of this conflict we find in antiquity the opposition between the land owner and the landless. Proletarius is not, as Mommsen avers, a man who can only serve the state by providing children, but rather the disinherited descendant of a land owner and full citizen, that is of an assiduus. The entire policy of antiquity was directed toward the prevention of such proletarii; to this end servitude for debt was restricted and debtor law alleviated. The ordinary contrast in antiquity was that between urban creditor and peasant debtor. In the city dwelt the money lending patriciate; in the country, the small people to whom it lent its money; and under the ancient law of debt such a condition led readily to the loss of the land and proletarization.

For all these reasons, the ancient city had no subsistence policy like that of the middle ages, but only a policy directed to maintaining the καλόρως, the fundus, on which a man could live and fully equip himself as a soldier. The aim was to guard against weakening the military power of the community. Hence the great reforms of the Gracchi must absolutely not be understood in the modern sense as measures pertaining to a class struggle; their ob-
jective is purely military; they represent the last attempt to maintain the citizen army and avoid the substitution of mercenaries. The opponents of the aristocracy in the middle ages were, on the one hand, the entrepreneurs and, on the other, the craft workers, while in antiquity they were always the peasantry. Corresponding to the distinction between these conflicts, the city of antiquity is divided along different lines than the medieval. In the latter the noble families are compelled to join the guilds while in the ancient city they were forced into villages, (*demos, tribus*), districts made up of rural landholders, in which they came under the same law as the peasant holder. In the middle ages they were made into craftsmen, in antiquity into peasants.

The development of ancient democracies is further characterized by the fact that different strata differentiate within the democracy itself. First, the *classis* rose to power, the stratum of the ὅπλα παρεχομένοι, who were able to equip themselves fully with the coat of mail and shield and who consequently could be employed in the front rank. Next, in consequence of the naval policy in a portion of antiquity, especially Athens, the non-possessing class rose to domination because the fleet could only be manned by including all strata of the population. The Athenian militarism led to the result that in the popular assembly the sailors finally secured the whip hand. In Rome the analogous course of events first took place with the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. However, it did not lead to the granting of citizenship to the soldiers, but to the development of a professional army with its Imperator at the head.

In addition to these distinctions between the ancient and the medieval development, there is a further distinction in class relations. The typical citizen of the medieval guild
city is a merchant or craftsman; he is a full citizen if he is also a householder. In antiquity on the contrary, the full citizen is the landholder. In the guild city, accordingly, class inequality obtains. The non-landholder requires the landholder as his Salmann ("truechander") in order to acquire land; he is at a legal disadvantage and this subordinate legal position is only gradually equalized and not everywhere completely. In his personal relations, however, the citizen of the medieval city is free. The principle "town air makes free" asserted that after a year and a day the lord no longer had a right to recall his runaway serf. Although the principle was not everywhere recognized and was subjected to limitations, especially by the legislation of the Hohenstauffens, it corresponded to the legal consciousness of the city citizenship which on the basis of it pressed its military and taxation interests. Hence the equalization of classes and removal of unfreedom became a dominant tendency in the development of the medieval city.

In contrast, antiquity in the early period emphasized class distinctions similar to those of the middle ages; it recognized the distinction between the patrician and the client, who followed the knightly warrior as a squire; it recognized relations of dependency and slavery as well. But with the growth of the power of the city and its development toward democracy, the sharpness of class distinctions increases; slaves are purchased or shipped in in large numbers and form a lower stratum constantly growing in numbers, while to them are added the freedmen. Hence the city of antiquity, in contrast with that of the middle ages, shows increasing class inequality. Finally, no trace of the medieval guild monopoly is to be found in antiquity. Under the dominance of the Athenian democracy we find in the sources relating to the placing of the
columns of the Erechtheion that free Athenians and slaves worked together in the same voluntary group and slaves are placed over free Athenian workers as foremen, a relation which would have been unthinkable in the middle ages, in view of the existence of a powerful free industrial class.

Taken in its entirety the foregoing argument leads to the conclusion that the city democracy of antiquity is a political guild. It is true that it had distinctive industrial interests and also that these were monopolized; but they were subordinate to military interests. Tribute, booty, the payments of confederate cities, were merely distributed among the citizens. Thus like the craft guild of the closing period of the middle ages, the democratic citizens’ guild of antiquity was also interested in not admitting too many participants. The resulting limitation on the number of citizens was one of the causes of the downfall of the Greek city states. The monopoly of the political guild included cleruchy, the distributing of conquered land among the citizens, and the distribution of the spoils of war; and at the last the city paid out of the proceeds of its political activity theater admissions, allotments of grain, and payments for jury service and for participation in religious rites.

Chronic war was therefore the normal condition of the Greek full citizen, and a demagogue like Cleon was conscious of his reasons for inciting to war; war made the city rich, while a long period of peace meant ruin for the citizenship. Those who engaged in the pursuit of profit by peaceful means were excluded from these opportunities. These included the freedmen and metics; among them we first find something similar to the modern bourgeoisie, excluded from the ownership of land but still well-to-do.

Military reasons explain the fact that the city state of
antiquity, so long as it maintained its characteristic form, developed no craft guilds and nothing similar to them, that instead it erected a political military monopoly for the citizenship and evolved into a soldiers’ guild. The ancient city represented the highest development of military technique in its time; no equivalent force could be sent against a hoplite army or a Roman legion. This explains the form and direction of industry in antiquity with relation to profit through war, and other advantages to be attained by purely political means. Over against the citizen stands the “low-bred”; anyone is low-bred who follows the peaceable quest of profit in the sense of today. In contrast with this the center of gravity of military technique in the early middle ages lay outside the cities, in the knighthood. Nothing else was equal to an armed feudal host. The result was that the guild army of burghers—with the single exception of the battle of Courtray in 1302—never ventured offensive operations but was only defensively employed. The burgher army of the middle ages could therefore never fulfill the acquisitive guild function of the ancient hoplite or legion army.

Within the western world we find during the middle ages a sharp contrast between the cities of the south and those of the north. In the south, the knighthood was generally settled in the city, while in the north the opposite is the case; from the beginning they had their dwellings outside or were even excluded. In the north the grant of privileges for a city included the specification that it might prohibit the residence of high political officials or knights; on the other hand the knighthood of the north closed its ranks against the urban patriciate and treated the latter as inferior by birth. The cause is found in the fact that the founding of the cities took place in different epochs in the two regions. In the time when the Italian communes
began their rise the knightly military technique was at its height; hence the town was forced to take the knights into its pay or to ally itself with them. In their essence the Guelph-Ghibelline wars between the cities are struggles between different knightly groups. Hence the city insisted upon the knights taking up their residence or forced upon them the inurbamento; it did not wish them to operate from their castles to make the roads unsafe and it wished to secure for its citizens the task of providing for their needs.

The most extreme contrast with these conditions is found in the English city which, as distinguished from the German and Italian, never formed a city state and with rare exceptions never was able or never sought to dominate the surrounding country or extend its jurisdiction over it. For this achievement it had neither the military power nor the desire. The independence of the English city rested on the fact that it leased the taxing power from the king, and only those were citizens who shared in this lease, according to which the designated sum was furnished by the city as a unit. The special position of the English city is explained in the first place by the extraordinary concentration of political power in England after William the Conqueror, and further by the fact that after the 13th century the English communes were united in Parliament. If the barons wished to undertake anything against the crown, they were compelled to resort to the pecuniary aid of the towns, as on the other hand the latter were dependent upon them for military support. From the time of their representation in Parliament the impulse and the possibility of a political policy of isolation on the part of the towns were removed. The opposition between city and country disappeared early and the cities accepted numerous landed gentlemen into their citizenship. The town burgh-
ers finally secured the upper hand, although down to the most recent times the nobility retained formal leadership in affairs.

Turning to the question as to the consequences of these relations in connection with the evolution of capitalism, we must emphasize the heterogeneity of industry in antiquity and in the middle ages, and the different species of capitalism itself. In the first place, we are met in the most widely separated periods with a multiplicity of non-rational forms of capitalism. These include first capitalistic enterprises for the purpose of tax farming—in the occident as well as in China and western Asia—and for the purpose of financing war, in China and India, in the period of small separate states; second, capitalism in connection with trade speculation, the trader being entirely absent in almost no epoch of history; third, money-lending capitalism, exploiting the necessities of outsiders. All these forms of capitalism relate to spoils, taxes, the pickings of office or official usury, and finally to tribute and actual need. It is noteworthy that in former times officials were financed as Caesar was by Crassus and endeavored to recoup the sums advanced through misuse of their official position. All this, however, relates to occasional economic activity of an irrational character, while no rational system of labor organization developed out of these arrangements.

Rational capitalism, on the contrary, is organized with a view to market opportunities, hence to economic objectives in the real sense of the word, and the more rational it is the more closely it relates to mass demand and the provision for mass needs. It was reserved to the modern western development after the close of the middle ages to elevate this capitalism into a system, while in all of antiquity there was but one capitalistic class whose rationalism might be compared with that of modern capitalism, namely, the
Roman knighthood. When a Greek city required credit or leased public land or let a contract for supplies, it was forced to incite competition among different interlocutors. Rome, in contrast, was in possession of a rational capitalistic class which from the time of the Gracchi played a determining role in the state. The capitalism of this class was entirely relative to state and governmental opportunities, to the leasing of the *ager publicus* or conquered land, and of domain land, or to tax farming and the financing of political adventures and of wars. It influenced the public policy of Rome in a decisive way at times, although it had to reckon with the constant antagonism of the official nobility.

The capitalism of the late middle ages began to be directed toward market opportunities, and the contrast between it and the capitalism of antiquity appears in the development after the cities have lost their freedom. Here again we find a fundamental distinction in the lines of development as between antiquity and medieval and modern times. In antiquity the freedom of the cities was swept away by a bureaucratically organized world empire within which there was no longer a place for political capitalism. In the beginning the emperors were forced to resort to the financial power of the knighthood but we see them progressively emancipate themselves and exclude the knightly class from the farming of the taxes and hence from the most lucrative source of wealth—just as the Egyptian kings were able to make the provisions for political and military requirements in their realms independent of the capitalist powers and reduce the tax farmers to the position of tax officials. In the imperial period of Rome the leasing of domain land everywhere decreased in extent in favor of permanent hereditary appropriation. The provision for the economic needs of the state was taken care of through
compulsory contributions and compulsory labor of servile persons instead of competitive contracts. The various classes of the population became stratified along occupational lines and the burden of state requirements was imposed on the newly created groups on the principle of joint liability.

This development means the throttling of ancient capitalism. A conscript army takes the place of the mercenaries and ships are provided by compulsory service. The entire harvest of grain, insofar as regions of surplus production are concerned, is distributed among the cities in accordance with their needs, with the exclusion of private trade. The building of roads and every other service which has to be provided for is laid on the shoulders of specific personal groups who become attached by inheritance to the soil and to their occupations. At the end the Roman urban communities, acting through their mayors in a way not very different from the village community through its common meeting, demand the return of the rich city councilmen on property grounds, because the population is jointly responsible for the payments and services due to the state. These services are subject to the principle of the origo which is erected on the pattern of the ißia of Ptolemaic Egypt; the compulsory dues of servile persons can only be rendered in their home commune. After this system became established the political opportunities for securing gain were closed to capitalism; in the late Roman state, based on compulsory contributions (Leiturgiestaat) there was as little place for capitalism as in the Egyptian state organized on the basis of compulsory labor service (Fronstaat).

Quite different was the fate of the city in the modern era. Here again its autonomy was progressively taken away. The English city of the 17th and 18th centuries had ceased
to be anything but a clique of guilds which could lay claim only to financial and social class significance. The German cities of the same period, with the exception of the imperial cities, were merely geographical entities (*Landstadt*) in which everything was ordered from above. In the French cities this development appeared even earlier, while the Spanish cities were deprived of their power by Charles V, in the insurrection of the *communeros*. The Italian cities found themselves in the power of the "signory" and those of Russia never arrived at freedom in the western sense. Everywhere the military, judicial, and industrial authority was taken away from the cities. In form the old rights were as a rule unchanged, but in fact the modern city was deprived of its freedom as effectively as had happened in antiquity with the establishment of the Roman dominion, though in contrast with antiquity they came under the power of competing national states in a condition of perpetual struggle for power in peace or war. This competitive struggle created the largest opportunities for modern western capitalism. The separate states had to compete for mobile capital, which dictated to them the conditions under which it would assist them to power. Out of this alliance of the state with capital, dictated by necessity, arose the national citizen class, the bourgeoisie in the modern sense of the word. Hence it is the closed national state which afforded to capitalism its chance for development—and as long as the national state does not give place to a world empire capitalism also will endure.
CHAPTER XXIX

THE RATIONAL STATE

(A) THE STATE ITSELF; LAW AND OFFICIALDOM

The state in the sense of the rational state has existed only in the western world. Under the old regime in China a thin stratum of so-called officials, the mandarins, existed above the unbroken power of the clans and commercial and industrial guilds. The mandarin is primarily a humanistically educated literatus in the possession of a benefice but not in the least degree trained for administration; he knows no jurisprudence but is a fine writer, can make verses, knows the age-old literature of the Chinese and can interpret it. In the way of political service no importance is attached to him. Such an official performs no administrative work himself; administration lies rather in the hands of the chancery officials. The mandarin is continually transferred from one place to another to prevent his obtaining a foothold in his administrative district, and he could never be assigned to his home province. As he does not understand the dialect of his province he cannot communicate with the public. A state with such officials is something different from the occidental state.

In reality everything is based on the magical theory that the virtue of the empress and the merits of the officials, meaning their perfection in literary culture, keep things in order in normal times. If a drought sets in or any untoward event takes place an edict is promulgated intensi-
fying the examinations in verse-making, or speeding up legal trials in order to quiet the spirits. The empire is an agrarian state; hence the power of the peasant clans who represent nine-tenths of the economic life—the other one-tenth belonging to commercial and trading guild organizations—is entirely unbroken. In essence things are left to take care of themselves. The officials do not rule but only interfere in the event of disturbances or untoward happenings.

Very different is the rational state in which alone modern capitalism can flourish. Its basis is an expert officialdom and rational law. The Chinese state changed over to administration through trained officials in the place of humanistically cultured persons as early as the 7th and 11th centuries but the change could be only temporarily maintained; then the usual eclipse of the moon arrived and arrangements were transformed in reverse order. It cannot be seriously asserted, however, that the spirit of the Chinese people could not tolerate an administration of specialists. Its development, and that of the rational state, was rather prevented by the persistence of reliance upon magic. In consequence of this fact the power of the clans could not be broken, as happened in the occident through the development of the cities and of Christianity.

The rational law of the modern occidental state, on the basis of which the trained official renders his decisions, arose on its formal side, though not as to its content, out of Roman law. The latter was to begin with a product of the Roman city state, which never witnessed the dominion of democracy and its justice in the same form as the Greek city. A Greek heliast court administered a petty justice; the contestants worked upon the judges through pathos, tears, and abusing their opponents. This procedure was also known in Rome in political trials, as the orations of
Cicero show, but not in civil trials where the prætor appointed an index to whom he gave strict instructions as to the conditions requiring a judgment against the accused or the throwing out of the case. Under Justinian the Byzantine bureaucracy brought order and system into this rational law, in consequence of the natural interest of the official in a law which would be systematic and fixed and hence easier to learn.

With the fall of the Roman empire in the west, law came into the hands of the Italian notaries. These, and secondarily the universities, have on their conscience the revival of Roman law. The notaries adhered to the old contractual forms of the Roman empire and re-interpreted them according to the needs of the time. At the same time a systematic legal doctrine was developed in the universities. The essential feature in the development, however, was the rationalization of procedure. As among all primitive peoples the ancient German legal trial was a rigidly formal affair. The party which pronounced wrongly a single word in the formula lost the case, because the formula possessed magical significance and supernatural evils were feared. This magical formalism of the German trial fitted in with the formalism of Roman law. At the same time the French kingdom played a part through the creation of the institution of the representative or advocate whose task it was especially to pronounce the legal formulas correctly, particularly in connection with the canon law. The magnificent administrative organization of the church required fixed forms for its disciplinary ends in relation to the laity and for its own internal discipline. No more than the bourgeoisie could it take up with the Germanic ordeal or judgment of God. The business man could not permit commercial claims to be decided by a competition in reciting formulas, and everywhere secured exemptions from
this legalistic contest and from the ordeal. The church also, after hesitating at first, ended by adopting the view that such procedure was heathenish and not to be tolerated, and established the canonical procedure on lines as rational as possible. This two-fold rationalization of procedure from the profane and spiritual sides spread over the western world.

In the revival of the Roman law has been seen the basis for the downfall of the peasant class, as well as for the development of capitalism. It is true that there were cases in which the application of Roman law principles was disadvantageous to the peasant. An example is the transformation of the old mark community rights into feudal obligations, the individual who stood at the head of the mark community (Obermärker) being recognized as a proprietor in the Roman sense and the holdings of the associates burdened with feudal dues. On the other hand, however, it was especially through the jurists trained in the Roman law that in France the kingdom was able to obstruct the eviction of peasants by the lords.

As little is the Roman law the basis without qualification for the development of capitalism. England, the home of capitalism, never accepted the Roman law, for the reason that in connection with the royal courts existed a class of advocates who guarded the national legal institutions against corruption. This class controlled the development of legal doctrine, for from its ranks were chosen, as they still are, the judges. It prevented Roman law from being taught in English universities, in order that persons from outside the class might not reach the judicial bench.

In fact all the characteristic institutions of modern capitalism have other origins than Roman law. The annuity bond, whether arising out of a personal debt or a war loan, came from medieval law, in which Germanic legal ideas
played their part. Similarly the stock certificate arose out of medieval and modern law and was unknown to the law of antiquity. Likewise the bill of exchange, to the development of which Arabic, Italian, German, and English law contributed. The commercial company is also a medieval product; only the commenda enterprise was current in antiquity. So also the mortgage, with the security of registration, and the deed of trust, as well as the power of attorney, are medieval in origin and do not go back to antiquity.

The reception of the Roman law was crucial only in the sense that it created formal juristic thinking. In its structure every legal system is based either on formal-legalistic or on material principles. By material principles are to be understood utilitarian and economic considerations, such for example as those according to which the Islamic cadi conducts his administration. In every theocracy and every absolutism justice is materially directed as by contrast in every bureaucracy it is formal-legalistic. Frederick the Great hated the jurists because they constantly applied in a formalistic sense his decrees which were based on material principles, and so turned them to ends with which he would have nothing to do. In this connection, as in general, the Roman law was the means of crushing the material legal system in favor of the formal.

This formalistic law, is however, calculable. In China it may happen that a man who has sold a house to another may later come to him and ask to be taken in because in the meantime he has been impoverished. If the purchaser refuses to heed the ancient Chinese command to help a brother, the spirits will be disturbed; hence the impoverished seller comes into the house as a renter who pays no rent. Capitalism cannot operate on the basis of a law so constituted. What it requires is law which can be counted
upon, like a machine; ritualistic-religious and magical considerations must be excluded.

The creation of such a body of law was achieved through the alliance between the modern state and the jurists for the purpose of making good its claims to power. For a time in the 16th century it attempted to work with the humanists, and the first Greek gymnasias were established with the idea that men educated in them would be suitable for state officials; for political contests were carried out to a large extent through the exchange of state papers and only one schooled in Latin and Greek had the necessary equipment. This illusion was shortlived. It was soon found that the products of the gymnasias were not on that account alone equipped for political life, and the jurists were the final resort. In China, where the humanistically cultured mandarin ruled the field, the monarch had no jurists at his disposal, and the struggle among the different philosophical schools as to which of them formed the best statesmen waged to and fro until finally orthodox Confucianism was victorious. India also had writers but no trained jurists. In contrast the western world had at its disposal a formally organized legal system, the product of the Roman genius, and officials trained in this law were superior to all others as technical administrators. From the standpoint of economic history this fact is significant in that the alliance between the state and formal jurisprudence was indirectly favorable to capitalism.

(B) THE ECONOMIC POLICY OF THE RATIONAL STATE

For the state to have an economic policy worthy of the name, that is one which is continuous and consistent, is an institution of exclusively modern origin. The first system which it brought forth is mercantilism, so-called. Before
the development of mercantilism there were two widespread commercial policies, namely, the dominance of fiscal interests and of welfare interests, the last in the sense of the customary standard of living.

In the east it was essentially ritualistic considerations, including caste and clan organizations, which prevented the development of a deliberate economic policy. In China, the political system had undergone extraordinary changes. The country had an epoch of highly developed foreign trade, extending as far as India. Later, however, the Chinese economic policy turned to external exclusiveness to the extent that the entire import and export business was in the hands of only 13 firms and was concentrated in the single port of Canton. Internally, the policy was dominated by religious considerations; only on occasion of natural catastrophes were abuses inquired into. At all times the question of co-operation of the provinces determined the viewpoint, and a leading problem was set by the question whether the needs of the state should be provided by taxation or through compulsory services.

In Japan, the feudal organization led to the same consequences and resulted in complete exclusiveness as regards the outer world. The object was here the stabilization of class relations; it was feared that foreign trade would disturb conditions as to the distribution of property. In Korea, ritualistic grounds determined the exclusive policy. If foreigners, that is profane persons, were to come into the country the wrath of the spirits was to be feared. In the Indian middle ages we find Greek and Roman merchants, as well as Roman soldiers, and also the immigration of Jews with grants of privileges to them; but these germs were unable to develop, for later everything was again stereotyped by the caste system, which made a planned
economic policy impossible. An additional consideration was that Hinduism strongly condemned traveling abroad; one who went abroad had on his return to be re-admitted to his caste.

In the occident down to the 14th century a planned economic policy had a chance to develop only in connection with the towns. It is true that there were beginnings of an economic policy on the part of the princes; in the Carolingian period we find price fixing and public concern for welfare expressed in various directions. But most of this remained on paper only, and with the exception of the coinage reform and the system of weights and measures of Charlemagne, everything disappeared without leaving a trace in the succeeding period. A commercial policy which would have been gladly adopted in relation to the orient was rendered impossible by the absence of shipping.

When the state under its prince gave up the fight, the church interested itself in economic life, endeavoring to impose upon economic dealings a minimum of legal honesty and churchly ethics. One of its most important measures was the support of the public peace, which it attempted to enforce first on certain days and finally as a general principle. In addition, the great ecclesiastical property communities, especially the monasteries, supported a very rational economic life, which cannot be called capitalistic economy but which was the most rational in existence. Later these endeavors more and more fell into discredit as the church revived its old ascetic ideals and adapted them to the times. Among the emperors again are found a few beginnings of commercial policy under Frederick Barbarossa, including price fixing and a customs treaty with England designed to favor German merchants. Frederick II established the public peace but in general pursued
a purely fiscal policy favoring merely the rich merchants; to them he granted privileges, especially customs exemptions.

The single measure of economic policy on the part of the German kings was the conflict over the Rhine tolls, which however was futile in the main, in view of the great number of petty lords along the river. Aside from this there was no planned economic policy. Measures which give the impression of such a policy, such as the embargo of the emperor Sigmund against Venice, or the occasional closing of the Rhine in the struggle with Cologne, are purely political in character. The customs policy was in the hands of the territorial princes, and even here with few exceptions a consistent effort to encourage industry is wanting. Their dominant objectives were, first, to favor local as against distant trade, especially to promote interchange of goods between the towns and the surrounding country; export duties were always to be maintained higher than import duties. Second, to favor local merchants in the customs. Road tolls were differentiated, the prince endeavoring to favor his own roads in order the more conveniently to exploit them as a source of revenue; to this end they even went to the length of requiring the use of certain roads, and systematized the law of the staple. Finally, the city merchants were given privileges; Louis the Rich of Bavaria prided himself on suppressing the rural merchants (above, p. 193).

Protective duties are unknown, with few exceptions, of which the Tirolesse duties on wine, directed against the competition of imports from Italy, are an example. The customs policy as a whole is dominated by the fiscal point of view and that of maintaining the traditional standard of living. The same applies to the customs treaties, which go back to the 13th century. The technique of the customs
fluctuated. The original custom was an ad-valorem duty of one-sixtieth the value; in the 14th century this was increased to a one-twelfth, in view of the fact that the duty was made to function also as an excise. The place of our modern measures of economic policy, such as protective tariffs, was taken by direct prohibitions against trade, which were very frequently suspended when the standard of living of domestic craftsmen, or later of employing factors, was to be protected. Sometimes wholesale trade was allowed and retail trade was prohibited. The first trace of a rational economic policy on the part of the prince appears in the 14th century in England. This was mercantilism, so-called since Adam Smith.

(C) Mercantilism

The essence of mercantilism² consists in carrying the point of view of capitalistic industry into politics; the state is handled as if it consisted exclusively of capitalistic entrepreneurs. External economic policy rests on the principle of taking every advantage of the opponent, importing at the lowest price and selling much higher. The purpose is to strengthen the hand of the government in its external relations. Hence mercantilism signifies the development of the state as a political power, which is to be done directly by increasing the tax paying power of the population.

A presupposition of the mercantilistic policy was the inclusion of as many sources of money income as possible within the country in question. It is, to be sure, an error to hold that the mercantilistic thinkers and statesmen confused ownership of the precious metals with national wealth. They knew well enough that the source of this wealth is the tax paying power, and all that they did in the way of retaining in the country the money which threat-
ened to disappear through the commerce was done exclusively with a view to increasing this taxable capacity. A second point in the program of mercantilism, in obvious immediate connection with the power-seeking policy characteristic of the system, was to promote the largest possible increase in the population; in order to sustain the increased numbers, the endeavor was to secure to the greatest extent external markets; this applied especially to those products in which a maximum quantity of domestic labor was embodied, hence finished manufactures rather than raw materials. Finally, trade was to be carried on as far as possible by the merchants of the country, in order that its earnings should all accrue to the taxable capacity. On the side of theory, the system was supported by the doctrine of the balance of trade, which taught that the country would be impoverished if the value of imports exceeded that of exports; this theory was first developed in England in the 16th century.

England is distinctively the original home of Mercantilism. The first traces of the application of mercantilistic principles are found there in the year 1381. Under the weak king Richard II, a money stringency arose and Parliament appointed an investigating commission which for the first time dealt with the balance of trade concept in all its essential features. For the time being it produced only emergency measures, including prohibitions of importation and stimulation of exportation, but without giving to English policy a truly mercantilistic character. The real turning point is generally dated from 1440. At that time, in one of the numerous Statutes of Employment, which were passed for the correction of alleged abuses, two propositions were laid down which indeed had been applied before, but only in an incidental way. The first was that foreign merchants who brought goods to England must
convert all the money which they received into English goods; the second that English merchants who had dealings abroad must bring back to England at least a part of their proceeds in cash. On the basis of these two propositions developed gradually the whole system of mercantilism down to the Navigation Act of 1651, with its elimination of the foreign shipping.

Mercantilism in the sense of a league between the state and the capitalistic interest had appeared under two aspects. One was that of class monopoly, which appears in its typical form in the policy of the Stuarts and the Anglican church,—especially that of Bishop Laud who was later beheaded. This system looked toward a class organization of the whole population in the Christian socialist sense, a stabilization of the classes with a view to establishing social relations based on Christian love. In the sharpest contrast with Puritanism, which saw every poor person as work-shy or as a criminal, its attitude toward the poor was friendly. In practice, the mercantilism of the Stuarts was primarily oriented along fiscal lines; new industries were allowed to import only on the basis of a royal monopoly concession and were to be kept under the permanent control of the king with a view to fiscal exploitation. Similar, although not so consistent, was the policy of Colbert in France. He aimed at an artificial promotion of industries, supported by monopolies; this view he shared with the Huguenots, on whose persecution he looked with disfavor. In England the royal and Anglican policy was broken down by the Puritans under the Long Parliament. Their struggle with the king was pursued for decades under the war cry "down with the monopolies" which were granted in part to foreigners and in part to courtiers, while the colonies were placed in the hands of royal favorites. The small entrepreneur class which in the meantime
had grown up, especially within the guilds though in part outside of them, enlisted against the royal monopoly policy, and the Long Parliament deprived monopolists of the suffrage. The extraordinary obstinacy with which the economic spirit of the English people has striven against trusts and monopolies is expressed in these Puritan struggles.8

The second form of mercantilism may be called national; it limited itself to the protection of industries actually in existence, in contrast with the attempt to establish industries through monopolies. Hardly one of the industries created by mercantilism survived the mercantilistic period; the economic creations of the Stuarts disappeared along with those of the western continental states and those of Russia later. It follows that the capitalistic development was not an outgrowth of national mercantilism; rather capitalism developed at first in England alongside the fiscal monopoly policy. The course of events was that a stratum of entrepreneurs which had developed in independence of the political administration secured the systematic support of Parliament in the 18th century, after the collapse of the fiscal monopoly policy of the Stuarts. Here for the last time irrational and rational capitalism faced each other in conflict, that is, capitalism in the field of fiscal and colonial privileges and public monopolies, and capitalism oriented in relation to market opportunities which were developed from within by business interests themselves on the basis of saleable services.

The point of collision of the two types was at the Bank of England. The bank was founded by Paterson, a Scotchman, a capitalist adventurer of the type called forth by the Stuarts’ policy of granting monopolies. But Puritan business men also belonged to the bank. The last time the bank turned aside in the direction of speculative capitalism was in connection with the South Sea Company.
Aside from this venture we can trace step by step the process by which the influence of Paterson and his kind lost ground in favor of the rationalistic type of bank members who were all directly or indirectly of Puritan origin or influenced by Puritanism.

Mercantilism also played the role familiar in economic history. In England it finally disappeared when free trade was established, an achievement of the Puritan dissenters Cobden and Bright and their league with the industrial interests, which were now in a position to dispense with mercantilistic support.
CHAPTER XXX

THE EVOLUTION OF THE CAPITALISTIC SPIRIT

It is a widespread error that the increase of population is to be included as a really crucial agent in the evolution of western capitalism. In opposition to this view, Karl Marx made the assertion that every economic epoch has its own law of population, and although this proposition is untenable in so general a form, it is justified in the present case. The growth of population in the west made most rapid progress from the beginning of the 18th century to the end of the 19th. In the same period China experienced a population growth of at least equal extent—from 60 or 70 to 400 millions, allowing for the inevitable exaggerations; this corresponds approximately with the increase in the west. In spite of this fact, capitalism went backward in China and not forward. The increase in the population took place there in different strata than with us. It made China the seat of a swarming mass of small peasants; the increase of a class corresponding to our proletariat was involved only to the extent that a foreign market made possible the employment of coolies ("cooly" is originally an Indian expression, and signifies neighbor or fellow member of a clan). The growth of population in Europe did indeed favor the development of capitalism, to the extent that in a small population the system would have been unable to secure the necessary labor force, but in itself it never called forth that development.

Nor can the inflow of precious metals be regarded, as
Sombart suggests, as the primary cause of the appearance of capitalism. It is certainly true that in a given situation an increase in the supply of precious metals may give rise to price revolutions, such as that which took place after 1530 in Europe, and when other favorable conditions are present, as when a certain form of labor organization is in process of development, the progress may be stimulated by the fact that large stocks of cash come into the hands of certain groups. But the case of India proves that such an importation of precious metal will not alone bring about capitalism. In India in the period of the Roman power, an enormous mass of precious metal—some twenty-five million sestertii annually—came in in exchange for domestic goods, but this inflow gave rise to commercial capitalism to only a slight extent. The greater part of the precious metal disappeared in the hoards of the rajahs instead of being converted into cash and applied in the establishment of enterprises of a rational capitalistic character. This fact proves that it depends entirely upon the nature of the labor system what tendency will result from an inflow of precious metal. The gold and silver from America, after the discovery, flowed in the first place to Spain; but in that country a recession of capitalistic development took place parallel with the importation. There followed, on the one hand, the suppression of the communeros and the destruction of the commercial interests of the Spanish grandees, and, on the other hand, the employment of the money for military ends. Consequently, the stream of precious metal flowed through Spain, scarcely touching it, and fertilized other countries, which in the 15th century were already undergoing a process of transformation in labor relations which was favorable to capitalism.

Hence neither the growth of population nor the importation of precious metal called forth western capitalism. The
external conditions for the development of capitalism are rather, first, geographical in character. In China and India the enormous costs of transportation, connected with the decisively inland commerce of the regions, necessarily formed serious obstructions for the classes who were in a position to make profits through trade and to use trading capital in the construction of a capitalistic system, while in the west the position of the Mediterranean as an inland sea, and the abundant interconnections through the rivers, favored the opposite development of international commerce. But this factor in its turn must not be overestimated. The civilization of antiquity was distinctively coastal. Here the opportunities for commerce were very favorable, (thanks to the character of the Mediterranean Sea,) in contrast with the Chinese waters with their typhoons, and yet no capitalism arose in antiquity. Even in the modern period the capitalistic development was much more intense in Florence than in Genoa or in Venice. Capitalism in the west was born in the industrial cities of the interior, not in the cities which were centers of sea trade.

Military requirements were also favorable, though not as such but because of the special nature of the particular needs of the western armies. Favorable also was the luxury demand, though again not in itself. In many cases rather it led to the development of irrational forms, such as small work shops in France and compulsory settlements of workers in connection with the courts of many German princes. In the last resort the factor which produced capitalism is the rational permanent enterprise, rational accounting, rational technology and rational law, but again not these alone. Necessary complementary factors were the rational spirit, the rationalization of the conduct of life in general, and a rationalistic economic ethic.¹

At the beginning of all ethics and the economic relations
EVOLUTION OF CAPITALISTIC SPIRIT

which result, is traditionalism, the sanctity of tradition, the exclusive reliance upon such trade and industry as have come down from the fathers. This traditionalism survives far down into the present; only a human lifetime in the past it was futile to double the wages of an agricultural laborer in Silesia who mowed a certain tract of land on a contract, in the hope of inducing him to increase his exertions. He would simply have reduced by half the work expended because with this half he would have been able to earn twice as much as before (sic). This general incapacity and indisposition to depart from the beaten paths is the motive for the maintenance of tradition.

Primitive traditionalism may, however, undergo essential intensification through two circumstances. In the first place, material interests may be tied up with the maintenance of the tradition. When for example in China, the attempt was made to change certain roads or to introduce more rational means or routes of transportation, the perquisites of certain officials were threatened; and the same was the case in the middle ages in the west, and in modern times when railroads were introduced. Such special interests of officials, landholders and merchants assisted decisively in restricting a tendency toward rationalization. Stronger still is the effect of the stereotyping of trade on magical grounds, the deep repugnance to undertaking any change in the established conduct of life because supernatural evils are feared. Generally some injury to economic privilege is concealed in this opposition, but its effectiveness depends on a general belief in the potency of the magical processes which are feared.

Traditional obstructions are not overcome by the economic impulse alone. The notion that our rationalistic and capitalistic age is characterized by a stronger economic interest than other periods is childish; the moving spirits of
modern capitalism are not possessed of a stronger economic impulse than, for example, an oriental trader. The un- chaining of the economic interest merely as such has pro- duced only irrational results; such men as Cortez and Pizarro, who were perhaps its strongest embodiment, were far from having an idea of a rationalistic economic life. If the economic impulse in itself is universal, it is an inter- esting question as to the relations under which it be- comes rationalized and rationally tempered in such fashion as to produce rational institutions of the character of capitalistic enterprise.

Originally, two opposite attitudes toward the pursuit of gain exist in combination. Internally, there is attachment to tradition and to the pietistic relations of fellow members of tribe, clan, and house-community, with the exclusion of the unrestricted quest of gain within the circle of those bound together by religious ties; externally, there is ab- solutely unrestricted play of the gain spirit in economic relations, every foreigner being originally an enemy in rela- tion to whom no ethical restrictions apply; that is, the ethics of internal and external relations are categorically distinct. The course of development involves on the one hand the bringing in of calculation into the traditional brotherhood, displacing the old religious relationship. As soon as accountability is established within the family com- munity, and economic relations are no longer strictly communistic, there is an end of the naive piety and its re- pression of the economic impulse. This side of the devel- opment is especially characteristic in the west. At the same time there is a tempering of the unrestricted quest of gain with the adoption of the economic principle into the internal economy. The result is a regulated economic life with the economic impulse functioning within bounds.

In detail, the course of development has been varied. In
India, the restrictions upon gain-seeking apply only to the two uppermost strata, the Brahmins and the Rajputs. A member of these castes is forbidden to practice certain callings. A Brahmin may conduct an eating house, as he alone has clean hands; but he, like the Rajput, would be unclassed if he were to lend money for interest. The latter, however, is permitted to the mercantile castes, and within it we find a degree of unscrupulousness in trade which is unmatched anywhere in the world. Finally, antiquity had only legal limitations on interest, and the proposition *caveat emptor* characterizes Roman economic ethics. Nevertheless no modern capitalism developed there.

The final result is the peculiar fact that the germs of modern capitalism must be sought in a region where officially a theory was dominant which was distinct from that of the east and of classical antiquity and in principle strongly hostile to capitalism. The *ethos* of the classical economic morality is summed up in the old judgment passed on the merchant, which was probably taken from primitive Arianism: *homo mercator vix aut numquam potent Deo placere*; he may conduct himself without sin but cannot be pleasing to God. This proposition was valid down to the 15th century, and the first attempt to modify it slowly matured in Florence under pressure of the shift in economic relations.

The typical antipathy of Catholic ethics, and following that the Lutheran, to every capitalistic tendency, rests essentially on the repugnance of the impersonality of relations within a capitalist economy. It is this fact of impersonal relations which places certain human affairs outside the church and its influence, and prevents the latter from penetrating them and transforming them along ethical lines. The relations between master and slave could be subjected to immediate ethical regulation; but
the relations between the mortgage creditor and the property which was pledged for the debt, or between an endorser and the bill of exchange, would at least be exceedingly difficult if not impossible to moralize. The final consequence of the resulting position assumed by the church was that medieval economic ethics excluded haggling, overpricing and free competition, and were based on the principle of just price and the assurance to everyone of a chance to live.

For the breaking up of this circle of ideas the Jews cannot be made responsible as Sombart does. The position of the Jews during the middle ages may be compared sociologically with that of an Indian caste in a world otherwise free from castes; they were an outcast people. However, there is the distinction that according to the promise of the Indian religion the caste system is valid for eternity. The individual may in the course of time reach heaven through a course of reincarnations, the time depending upon his deserts; but this is possible only within the caste system. The caste organization is eternal, and one who attempted to leave it would be accursed and condemned to pass in hell into the bowels of a dog. The Jewish promise, on the contrary, points toward a reversal of caste relations in the future world as compared with this. In the present world the Jews are stamped as an outcast people, either as punishment for the sins of their fathers, as Deutero-Isaiah holds, or for the salvation of the world, which is the presupposition of the mission of Jesus of Nazareth; from this position they are to be released by a social revolution. In the middle ages the Jews were a guest-people standing outside of political society; they could not be received into any town citizenship group because they could not participate in the communion of the Lord’s Supper, and hence could not belong to the comiuratio.
EVOLUTION OF CAPITALISTIC SPIRIT 359

The Jews were not the only guest people (see pages 196, 217); besides them the Caursines, for example, occupied a similar position. These were Christian merchants who dealt in money and in consequence were, like the Jews, under the protection of the princes and on consideration of a payment enjoyed the privilege of carrying on monetary dealings. What distinguished the Jews in a striking way from the Christian guest-peoples was the impossibility in their case of entering into commercium and conubium with the Christians. Originally the Christians did not hesitate to accept Jewish hospitality, in contrast with the Jews themselves who feared that their ritualistic prescriptions as to food would not be observed by their hosts. On the occasion of the first outbreak of medieval anti-semitism the faithful were warned by the synods not to conduct themselves unworthily and hence not to accept entertainment from the Jews who on their side despised the hospitality of the Christians. Marriage with Christians was strictly impossible, going back to Ezra and Nehemiah.

A further ground for the outcast position of the Jews arose from the fact that Jewish craftsmen existed; in Syria there had even been a Jewish knightly class, though only exceptionally Jewish peasants, for the conduct of agriculture was not to be reconciled with the requirements of the ritual. Ritualistic considerations were responsible for the concentration of Jewish economic life in monetary dealings (cf. above page 196). Jewish piety set a premium on the knowledge of the law and continuous study was very much easier to combine with exchange dealings than with other occupations. In addition, the prohibition against usury on the part of the church condemned exchange dealings, yet the trade was indispensable and the Jews were not subject to the ecclesiastical law.

Finally, Judaism had maintained the originally universal
dualism of internal and external moral attitudes, under which it was permissible to accept interest from foreigners who did not belong to the brotherhood or established association. Out of this dualism followed the sanctioning of other irrational economic affairs, especially tax farming and political financing of all sorts. In the course of the centuries the Jews acquired a special skill in these matters which made them useful and in demand. But all this was pariah capitalism, not rational capitalism such as originated in the west. In consequence, hardly a Jew is found among the creators of the modern economic situation, the large entrepreneurs; this type was Christian and only conceivable in the field of Christianity. The Jewish manufacturer, on the contrary, is a modern phenomenon. If for no other reason, it was impossible for the Jews to have a part in the establishment of rational capitalism because they were outside the craft organizations. But even alongside the guilds they could hardly maintain themselves, even where, as in Poland, they had command over a numerous proletariat which they might have organized in the capacity of entrepreneurs in domestic industry or as manufacturers. After all, the genuine Jewish ethic is specifically traditionalism, as the Talmud shows. The horror of the pious Jew in the face of any innovation is quite as great as that of an individual among any primitive people with institutions fixed by the belief in magic.

However, Judaism was none the less of notable significance for modern rational capitalism, insofar as it transmitted to Christianity the latter’s hostility to magic. Apart from Judaism and Christianity, and two or three oriental sects (one of which is in Japan), there is no religion with the character of outspoken hostility to magic. Probably this hostility arose through the circumstance that what the Israelites found in Canaan was the magic of
the agricultural god Baal, while Jahveh was a god of volcanoes, earthquakes, and pestilences. The hostility between the two priesthoods and the victory of the priests of Jahveh discredited the fertility magic of the priests of Baal and stigmatized it with a character of decadence and godlessness. Since Judaism made Christianity possible and gave it the character of a religion essentially free from magic, it rendered an important service from the point of view of economic history. For the dominance of magic outside the sphere in which Christianity has prevailed is one of the most serious obstructions to the rationalization of economic life. Magic involves a stereotyping of technology and economic relations. When attempts were made in China to inaugurate the building of railroads and factories a conflict with geomancy ensued. The latter demanded that in the location of structures on certain mountains, forests, rivers, and cemetery hills, foresight should be exercised in order not to disturb the rest of the spirits.

Similar is the relation to capitalism of the castes in India. Every new technical process which an Indian employs signifies for him first of all that he leaves his caste and falls into another, necessarily lower. Since he believes in the transmigration of souls, the immediate significance of this is that his chance of purification is put off until another re-birth. He will hardly consent to such a change. An additional fact is that every caste makes every other impure. In consequence, workmen who dare not accept a vessel filled with water from each other's hands, cannot be employed together in the same factory room. Not until the present time, after the possession of the country by the English for almost a century, could this obstacle be overcome. Obviously, capitalism could not develop in an economic group thus bound hand and foot by magical beliefs.
In all times there has been but one means of breaking down the power of magic and establishing a rational conduct of life; this means is great rational prophecy. Not every prophecy by any means destroys the power of magic; but it is possible for a prophet who furnishes credentials in the shape of miracles and otherwise, to break down the traditional sacred rules. Prophecies have released the world from magic and in doing so have created the basis for our modern science and technology, and for capitalism. In China such prophecy has been wanting. What prophecy there was has come from the outside as in the case of Lao-Tse and Taoism. India, however, produced a religion of salvation; in contrast with China it has known great prophetic missions. But they were prophecies by example; that is, the typical Hindu prophet, such as Buddha, lives before the world the life which leads to salvation, but does not regard himself as one sent from God to insist upon the obligation to lead it; he takes the position that whoever wishes salvation, as an end freely chosen, should lead the life. However, one may reject salvation, as it is not the destiny of everyone to enter at death into Nirvana, and only philosophers in the strictest sense are prepared by hatred of this world to adopt the stoical resolution and withdraw from life.

The result was that Hindu prophecy was of immediate significance for the intellectual classes. These became forest dwellers and poor monks. For the masses, however, the significance of the founding of a Buddhistic sect was quite different, namely the opportunity of praying to the saints. There came to be holy men who were believed to work miracles, who must be well fed so that they would repay this good deed by guaranteeing a better reincarnation or through granting wealth, long life, and the like, that is, this world's goods. Hence Buddhism in its pure form
was restricted to a thin stratum of monks. The laity found no ethical precepts according to which life should be molded; Buddhism indeed had its decalogue, but in distinction from that of the Jews it gave no binding commands but only recommendations. The most important act of service was and remained the physical maintenance of the monks. Such a religious spirit could never be in a position to displace magic but at best could only put another magic in its place.

In contrast with the ascetic religion of salvation of India and its defective action upon the masses, are Judaism and Christianity, which from the beginning have been plebeian religions and have deliberately remained such. The struggle of the ancient church against the Gnostics was nothing else than a struggle against the aristocracy of the intellectuals, such as is common to ascetic religions, with the object of preventing their seizing the leadership in the church. This struggle was crucial for the success of Christianity among the masses, and hence for the fact that magic was suppressed among the general population to the greatest possible extent. True, it has not been possible even down to today to overcome it entirely, but it was reduced to the character of something unholy, something diabolic.

The germ of this development as regards magic is found far back in ancient Jewish ethics, which is much concerned with views such as we also meet with in the proverbs and the so-called prophetic texts of the Egyptians. But the most important prescriptions of Egyptian ethics were futile when by laying a scarab on the region of the heart one could prepare the dead man to successfully conceal the sins committed, deceive the judge of the dead, and thus get into paradise. The Jewish ethics knows no such sophisticated subterfuges and as little does Christianity. In the Eucharist the latter has indeed sublimated magic
into the form of a sacrament, but it gave its adherents no such means for evading the final judgment as were contained in Egyptian religion. If one wishes to study at all the influence of a religion on life one must distinguish between its official teachings and this sort of actual procedure upon which in reality, perhaps against its own will, it places a premium, in this world or the next.

It is also necessary to distinguish between the virtuoso religion of adepts and the religion of the masses. Virtuoso religion is significant for everyday life only as a pattern; its claims are of the highest, but they fail to determine everyday ethics. The relation between the two is different in different religions. In Catholicism, they are brought into harmonious union insofar as the claims of the religious virtuoso are held up alongside the duties of the laymen as consilia evangelica. The really complete Christian is the monk; but his mode of life is not required of everyone, although some of his virtues in a qualified form are held up as ideals. The advantage of this combination was that ethics was not split asunder as in Buddhism. After all the distinction between monk ethics and mass ethics meant that the most worthy individuals in the religious sense withdrew from the world and established a separate community.

Christianity was not alone in this phenomenon, which rather recurs frequently in the history of religions, as is shown by the powerful influence of asceticism, which signifies the carrying out of a definite, methodical conduct of life. Asceticism has always worked in this sense. The enormous achievements possible to such an ascetically determined methodical conduct of life are demonstrated by the example of Tibet. The country seems condemned by nature to be an eternal desert; but a community of celibate ascetics has carried out colossal construction works in
Lhassa and saturated the country with the religious doctrines of Buddhism. An analogous phenomenon is present in the middle ages in the west. In that epoch the monk is the first human being who lives rationally, who works methodically and by rational means toward a goal, namely the future life. Only for him did the clock strike, only for him were the hours of the day divided—for prayer. The economic life of the monastic communities was also rational. The monks in part furnished the officialdom for the early middle ages; the power of the doges of Venice collapsed when the investiture struggle deprived them of the possibility of employing churchmen for oversea enterprises.

But the rational mode of life remained restricted to the monastic circles. The Franciscan movement indeed attempted through the institution of the tertiaries to extend it to the laity, but the institution of the confessional was a barrier to such an extension. The church domesticated medieval Europe by means of its system of confession and penance, but for the men of the middle ages the possibility of unburdening themselves through the channel of the confessional, when they had rendered themselves liable to punishment, meant a release from the consciousness of sin which the teachings of the church had called into being. The unity and strength of the methodical conduct of life were thus in fact broken up. In its knowledge of human nature the church did not reckon with the fact that the individual is a closed unitary ethical personality, but steadfastly held to the view that in spite of the warnings of the confessional and of penances, however strong, he would again fall away morally; that is, it shed its grace on the just and the unjust.

The Reformation made a decisive break with this system. The dropping of the concilia evangelica by the Lutheran
Reformation meant the disappearance of the dualistic ethics, of the distinction between a universally binding morality and a specifically advantageous code for virtuosi. The other-worldly asceticism came to an end. The stern religious characters who had previously gone into monasteries had now to practice their religion in the life of the world. For such an asceticism within the world the ascetic dogmas of protestantism created an adequate ethics. Celibacy was not required, marriage being viewed simply as an institution for the rational bringing up of children. Poverty was not required, but the pursuit of riches must not lead one astray into reckless enjoyment. Thus Sebastian Franck was correct in summing up the spirit of the Reformation in the words, "you think you have escaped from the monastery, but everyone must now be a monk throughout his life."

The wide significance of this transformation of the ascetic ideal can be followed down to the present in the classical lands of protestant ascetic religiosity. It is especially discernible in the import of the religious denominations in America. Although state and church are separated, still, as late as fifteen or twenty years ago no banker or physician took up a residence or established connections without being asked to what religious community he belonged, and his prospects were good or bad according to the character of his answer. Acceptance into a sect was conditioned upon a strict inquiry into one's ethical conduct. Membership in a sect which did not recognize the Jewish distinction between internal and external moral codes guaranteed one's business honor and reliability and this in turn guaranteed success. Hence the principle "honesty is the best policy" and hence among Quakers, Baptists, and Methodists the ceaseless repetition of the proposition based on experience that God would take care of his own. "The Godless cannot
trust each other across the road; they turn to us when they want to do business; piety is the surest road to wealth." This is by no means "cant," but a combination of religiosity with consequences which were originally unknown to it and which were never intended.

It is true that the acquisition of wealth, attributed to piety, led to a dilemma, in all respects similar to that into which the medieval monasteries constantly fell; the religious guild led to wealth, wealth to fall from grace, and this again to the necessity of re-constitution. Calvinism sought to avoid this difficulty through the idea that man was only an administrator of what God had given him; it condemned enjoyment, yet permitted no flight from the world but rather regarded working together, with its rational discipline, as the religious task of the individual. Out of this system of thought came our word "calling," which is known only to the languages influenced by the Protestant translations of the Bible. It expresses the value placed upon rational activity carried on according to the rational capitalistic principle, as the fulfillment of a God-given task. Here lay also in the last analysis the basis of the contrast between the Puritans and the Stuarts. The ideas of both were capitalistically directed; but in a characteristic way the Jew was for the Puritan the embodiment of everything repugnant because he devoted himself to irrational and illegal occupations such as war loans, tax farming, and leasing of offices, in the fashion of the court favorite.

This development of the concept of the calling quickly gave to the modern entrepreneur a fabulously clear conscience,—and also industrious workers; he gave to his employees as the wages of their ascetic devotion to the calling and of co-operation in his ruthless exploitation of them through capitalism the prospect of eternal salvation, which
in an age when ecclesiastical discipline took control of the whole of life to an extent inconceivable to us now, represented a reality quite different from any it has today. The Catholic and Lutheran churches also recognized and practiced ecclesiastical discipline. But in the Protestant ascetic communities admission to the Lord's Supper was conditioned on ethical fitness, which again was identified with business honor, while into the content of one's faith no one inquired. Such a powerful, unconsciously refined organization for the production of capitalistic individuals has never existed in any other church or religion, and in comparison with it what the Renaissance did for capitalism shrinks into insignificance. Its practitioners occupied themselves with technical problems and were experimenters of the first rank. From art and mining experimentation was taken over into science.

The world-view of the Renaissance, however, determined the policy of rulers in a large measure, though it did not transform the soul of man as did the innovations of the Reformation. Almost all the great scientific discoveries of the 16th and even the beginning of the 17th century were made against the background of Catholicism. Copernicus was a Catholic, while Luther and Melanchthon repudiated his discoveries. Scientific progress and Protestantism must not at all be unquestioningly identified. The Catholic church has indeed occasionally obstructed scientific progress; but the ascetic sects of Protestantism have also been disposed to have nothing to do with science, except in a situation where material requirements of everyday life were involved. On the other hand it is its specific contribution to have placed science in the service of technology and economics.

The religious root of modern economic humanity is dead; today the concept of the calling is a caput mortuum in the
world. Ascetic religiosity has been displaced by a pessimistic though by no means ascetic view of the world, such as that portrayed in Mandeville’s Fable of the Bees, which teaches that private vices may under certain conditions be for the good of the public. With the complete disappearance of all the remains of the original enormous religious pathos of the sects, the optimism of the Enlightenment which believed in the harmony of interests, appeared as the heir of Protestant asceticism in the field of economic ideas; it guided the hands of the princes, statesmen, and writers of the later 18th and early 19th century. Economic ethics arose against the background of the ascetic ideal; now it has been stripped of its religious import. It was possible for the working class to accept its lot as long as the promise of eternal happiness could be held out to it. When this consolation fell away it was inevitable that those strains and stresses should appear in economic society which since then have grown so rapidly. This point had been reached at the end of the early period of capitalism, at the beginning of the age of iron, in the 19th century.
NOTES

PART ONE

CHAPTER I


3. The hide organization has recently been the subject of a controversy closely connected with that regarding the theory of primitive communism. The older view saw in it a result and expression of the communal field system, but later writers contend for a manorial origin. Rübel, again, maintains that it was an institution originally peculiar to the Salian Franks and was spread over all Germany by the Frankish kingdom.


5. But it is not these arrangements which explain the stability
of Indian conditions, as Karl Marx affirmed, but rather the caste system, just as in China it is the clan economy.

6. The principal contrast in agrarian economy between Europe and specifically Asiatic regions goes back to the fact that neither the Chinese nor Javanese peoples knew the use of milk from animals, while on European soil milking is met with as far back as Homer. On the other hand, in India since the middle ages, cattle cannot be slaughtered, and even today the upper castes condemn the eating of meat. Hence milk animals and meat animals are both absent in Asia over wide areas.

CHAPTER II

1. Cp. the right to bear arms, which existed to the time of the Peasants' War. It will be seen that there is a right corresponding to the duty of the freeman to participate in the juridical community.

2. This investigation goes back to J. J. Bachofen, Das Mutterrecht, Stuttgart, 1861. The "matriarchal" (mutterrechtliche) origin of the family asserted by Bachofen was taken over into the works of L. H. Morgan (especially Ancient Society, New York, 1871), and of H. S. Maine (Ancient Law, London, 1861), and became the foundation of the socialistic theory. Cp. the works of Bebel, Engels, and Cunow. E. Grosse (Die Formen der Familie und die Formen der Wirtschaft, Freiburg and Leipsic, 1896) represents the reaction against a one-sided mother-right theory. Indicating the present state of knowledge, and in general free from bias, is Marianne Weber, Ehefrau und Mutter in der Rechtsentwicklung, Tuebingen, 1907.


CHAPTER III

1. The fate of the Israelites in Egypt is thus explained.


NOTES


CHAPTER IV


2. Against the attempt of Dopsch to interpret the Capitulare de Villis as a special dispensation for Aquitania, see G. Baist, Vierteljahrschrift f. Sozial- und Wirtschaftsgeschichte VII (1914), 22 ff. and J. Jud and L. Spitzer, Wörter und Sachen, VI (1914/15), 116 ff.

CHAPTER V


CHAPTER VI


3. See references in Note 5 of Chap. III and Note 1 of Chap IV; also the histories by Ashley, Rogers, and Cunningham.


10. For references see M. Weber’s article in the *Handwörterbuch*, 3d ed., I, 182 ff.

11. See references in Note 5 of Chap. II and Note 1 of Chap. IV.


NOTES

PART TWO

CHAPTER VII


CHAPTER VIII


CHAPTER IX


CHAPTER X

1. Schmoller was one of the leading advocates of this theory; see his Die Strassburger Tücher- und Weberzunft, Strassburg, 1879–81.

CHAPTER XI

CHAPTER XII


CHAPTER XIII


PART THREE

CHAPTER XIV


CHAPTER XV


CHAPTER XVI

1. See the papers of G. von Below: "Grosshändler und Kleinhandel im deutschen Mittelalter"; Über Theorien der wirtschaftlichen Entwicklung der Völker; and, "Der Untergang der mittel-
NOTES

alterlichen Stadtwirtschaft,”—all in the volume, Probleme der Wirtschaftsgeschichte, Tübingen, 1917.


CHAPTER XVII


CHAPTER XVIII


2. Through this requirement the Hanse aroused the persistent antagonism of Danzig, which did not wish to have its shipbuilding industry placed at a disadvantage.

CHAPTER XIX


2. See the estimates, which are in fair agreement, by Soetbeer (in Petermann’s Geographischen Mitteilungen, Ergänzungsband, 1879, p. 54) and W. Lexis (in Jahrbücher für Nationalökonomie und Statistik XXXIV (1880), pp. 361 ff.). The estimates of F. De Laiglesias, however (in Los caudales de Indía en la primera mitad del siglo XVII, Madrid, 1904), lead to a result almost fifty-fold different, in the downward direction.
GENERAL ECONOMIC HISTORY

CHAPTER XX


CHAPTER XXI

1. Moreover, this view is not unknown to the unworldly love doctrine of the earliest Christians. The later prohibition of interest by the Church rested on Luke 6, 35; but according to A. Merx there was a misreading of the text. (*Die vier kanonischen Evangelien nach ihrem ältesten bekannten Texte*, II 2, I, 223 ff.) This misreading, he says, passed into the Vulgate on the authority of Clement of Alexandria, and became the basis of the Church’s later position.

PART FOUR


CHAPTER XXIII

NOTES 379

to 1858, Manchester, 1915; P. Bonnassieux, Les grandes compagnies
de commerce, Paris, 1892.

CHAPTER XXIV

1. General References.—W. R. Scott, The Constitution and Finance
of English, Scottish and Irish Joint Stock Companies to 1720, 3
vols., Cambridge (Eng.) 1910–1912; A. Aftalion, Les crises péri-
odiques de surproduction et leur retour périodique en France, en
Angleterre et aux États-Unis, Paris, 1913; M. Boulatian, Ge-
schichte der Handelskrisen in England, Munich, 1908; N. A. Brisco,

CHAPTER XXV

1. General References.—Sombart, Der moderne Kapitalismus, II,
429 ff.; Articles “Börsenwesen” (by R. Ehrenberg) and “Märkte
und Messen” (by K. Rathgen) in the Handwörterbuch, 3d ed., vols.
III and IV; Article “Post,” (by P. D. Fischer and M. Aschenborn),
Ibid., VI–3; J. C. Hemmeon, History of the British Post Office,
Cambridge (Mass.), 1912; Article “Zeitungen,” by L. Salomon,
Handwörterbuch, 3d ed., vol. VIII.

CHAPTER XXVI

1. General References.—H. Merivale, Lectures on Colonisation
and Colonies, 2d ed., London, 1861; H. E. Morris, History of Colonisa-
tion from Earliest Times to the Present Day, 2 vols., London,
1904; G. L. Beer, The Old Colonial System, 1600–1754, 2 vols.,
New York, 1912; A. Sartorius von Waltershausen, Die Arbeitsver-
fasung der englischen Kolonien in Nordamerika, Strassburg, 1894;
St. B. Weeks, The Southern Quakers and Slavery, Baltimore, 1898.
2. A parallel is found in the fact that the negroes long ago
showed themselves unsuitable for factory work and the operation of
machines; they have not seldom sunk into a cataleptic sleep. Here
is one case in economic history where tangible racial distinctions
are present.
3. The principal supporters of the slave trade were originally
the Arabs, who have maintained their position to the present in
Africa. In the middle ages the Jews and the Genoese divided the
business; they were followed by the Portuguese, the French, and
finally the English.

2. On the other hand the exploitative mining out of the underground wealth must have a limit in time; the age of iron cannot last over a thousand years at most.

CHAPTER XXVIII


2. Otherwise Peking would have to be regarded as a “city” from the beginning, and at a time when nothing of the nature of a city existed in Europe. Officially, however, it is called “the five places,” and is administratively handled in parts as five large villages; hence there are no “citizens” of Peking.

3. In contrast, the officials and princes in Japan resided in castles down to the modernization; places were distinguished according to size.

4. The Indian armies, even in the oldest Greek reports from the time of Alexander the Great, had tactical divisions and organization, but also exemplified the combat between heroes. In the armies of the Grand Mogul, the knights who equipped themselves retained their place alongside the warriors enlisted and equipped by the war-lord, and enjoyed a higher social esteem.

5. The parallelism with the German revolution of 1918 stands out; the soldiers’ councils demanded power to nullify judicial decisions.

CHAPTER XXXIX


2. On Mercantilism, see Article, “Merkantilsystem” in the Handwörterbuch, 3d ed., VI, 650 ff., and the illuminating article, “Bal-
NOTES


CHAPTER XXX

2. Ibid., I, 544.

4. As soon as the Mandarins realized the chances for gain open to them, these difficulties suddenly ceased to be insuperable; today they are the leading stockholders in the railways. In the long run, no religious-ethical conviction is capable of barring the way to the entry of capitalism, when it stands in full armor before the gate; but the fact that it is able to leap over magical barriers does not prove that genuine capitalism could have originated in circumstances where magic played such a role.


6. In a general way, though with necessary reservations, the contrast may be formulated by saying that Jewish capitalism was speculative pariah-capitalism, while Puritan capitalism consisted in the organization of citizen labor. Cp. M. Weber, Gesammelte Aufsätze zur Religionssoziologie, I, 181 ff., Note 2.

### INDEX OF NAMES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acciajuoli, Florentine banker family</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albuquerque</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander the Great</td>
<td>97, 319, 321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander I, of Russia</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander II, of Russia</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alfonso X</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcibiades</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amerigo Vespucci</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andre Doria</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anne, Queen of England</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arkwright</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boris Gudonow (Czar)</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bright, John</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddha</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cæsar</td>
<td>16 f., 245, 333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calvin</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caracalla</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cartwright</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catherine II, of Russia</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cato</td>
<td>80, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charlemagne</td>
<td>155, 246, 345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles Martel</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles I, of England</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles II, of England</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles V, Emperor</td>
<td>299, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles VI, of Austria</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles Frederick, of Baden</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleisthenes</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clement of Alexandria, Chap.</td>
<td>XXI, note 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cobden</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colbert</td>
<td>171, 349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columella</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conrad II, Emperor</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantine the Great</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copernicus</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cortez</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassus</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dante</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demosthenes</td>
<td>127, 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deutero Isaiah</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diocletian</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elizabeth, Queen of England</td>
<td>183, 216, 306 f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezra</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferdinand I, Emperor</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francis I, of France</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franck, Sebastian</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frederick Barbarossa</td>
<td>182, 345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frederick II, Emperor</td>
<td>284, 345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frederick the Great</td>
<td>103, 342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frederick William I, of Prussia</td>
<td>87, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frederick III, of Prussia</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuggers, German bankers</td>
<td>154, 206, 208, 260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George I, of England</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gracchi</td>
<td>282, 257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregory IX</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hadrian</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hammurabi</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hanssen, G.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hapsburgs</td>
<td>198, 283, 284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry II, Emperor</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herodotus</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hohenstaufens</td>
<td>182, 319, 329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homer</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Igibi (Babylonian banker family)</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John, King of England</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joseph II, of Austria</td>
<td>102, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justinian</td>
<td>205, 340</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Lao-tse, 362.
Laud, Bishop, 349.
Lavelaye, E. de, 3, 24.
Law, John, 286 ff.
Leonardo da Vinci, 311.
Leopold I, Emperor, 101, 282.
Liebig, Justus von, 306.
Livia, Roman empress, 125.
Louis XIV, of France, 264.
Louis the Rich, of Bavaria, 217, 346 f.
Luther, 150, 368.
Lysias, 127.
Mago, 80.
Maimonides, 268.
Mandeville, 369.
María Theresa, 87, 101, 103.
Marx, Karl, 162, 270, 352.
Maurer, G. von, 3.
Medici, 226, 259.
Meitzen, A., 12.
Melanchthon, 368.
Mommsen, Th., 328.
Montgelas, Bavarian statesman, 99.

Nehemiah, 320 f., 359.
Nero, 245.
Newton, Sir Isaac, 249, 252.
Nicias, 180.
Nicholas I, of Russia, 106.

Paterson, William, 350.
Paul, Apostle, 137, 322.
Peel, Robert, 85.
Peruzzi, Florentine banker family, 259.
Peter the Great, 63, 87.
Peter, Apostle, 322.
Pizarro, 356.

Plato, 317.
Pliny, 129, 180.
Ptolemies, see Subject Index, Egypt.

Rietschel, S., 29.
Rodbertus, 131.
Roger I, of Sicily, 182.

Salmasius, 271.
Shi-Huang-Ti, Chinese Emperor, 95.

von Schoen, 104.
Sigismund, Emperor, 346.
Sinzendorff, Counts of, 172.
Smith, Adam, 347.
Solon, 97.
Sombart, W., 300, 308, 323, 353, 358.

Stevin, Simon, 275.
Stolypin, Russian statesman, 19.
Stuarts, Eng. royal house, 284, 349, 350, 367.
Sully, French statesman, 296.

Tacitus, 17, 116, 217.
Thomas Aquinas, 317.
Thurn und Taxis, German family, 295.

Varro, 80, 209.
Vasco da Gama, 249.

Wallenstein, 59.
Wellesers, banker family, 226, 228.
William the Conqueror, 332.
William of Orange, 264.
Witte, Count, Russian statesman, 18.
SUBJECT INDEX

Accounting (Bookkeeping) 224 ff.; prerequisite of capitalism, 275.  
Actor, trader of antiquity, 197.  
Administration (see State, Law), 338 ff.  
Almende, Chapter I. See Common pasture.  
Alpine husbandry, 11.  
Ancestor worship (China), 48.  
Andreaon, 40.  
Animals, use of, 24, 38. See Horse.  
Antiquity (Europe) Coastal character of civilization, 55 f., 81, 97 f., 140, 354; feudal relations disappear near large cities, 96 f.; easy collapse of money economy, 60, 131; oikos or estate craft work, 126-30; living standards, 130 f.; guilds, 136 f.; slavery obstacle to factory industry, 176 f.; shipping organization, 203-5; money, 244 ff.; banking, 254 f., 256; growth of cities comp. w. middle ages, 323 f.; war the normal condition, 331. See Greece, Rome.  
Anti-semitism, 217.  
Apparatus, and machine, 302.  
Apprenticeship, regulation by guilds, 143; apprentices organize, 143; Statute of Apprentices, 306.  
Appropriation, forms, 26 ff. See Property.  
Arabic notation, 223 f.  
Argerarii (Roman bankers), 256.  
Art, a city product, 316.  
Arti maggiori and minori, 327.  
Asceticism and economic life, 364 ff.  
Association, forms of in development of capitalism, 280 ff.  
Assyria, irrigation culture, 57.  
Astronomy and navigation in late middle ages, 201.  
Austria, dissolution of feudalism with protection of peasantry, 100-03; early factories, relation to guilds and state, 172.  
Avunculate, 29, 40.

Babylon, Babylonia, sacerdotal prostitution, 32; irrigation culture, 57; monetary history, 244; banking, 257; traces of citizenship idea, 315.  
Balance, in capitalistic accounting, 275, 282.  
Banalité (Bannrecht, socage right), 68, 72; shipping, 211.  
Banat, see South Slavs.  
Banjari, Indian trading caste, 231 f.  
Bank money, 250 f.  
Banking, in the pre-capitalistic age, 254-66 (Chap. XX). Original functions, exchange and safe deposit, 254 f.; banker as lender peculiar to Babylon, 255; in Rome, account-current business, 256; temple and state banks typical of antiquity, 256 ff.; medieval banking, 258 ff.; state finance operations, 259 ff.; liquidity, 260 f.; bill of exchange, evolution of, 261 ff.;
banking in England, 263 ff.; outside of Europe, 265 f.
Banya, Indian trading caste, 196, 197.
Bayaderes, 32. See prostitution, sacerdotal.
Bazaar-shop, 119.
Benefice, beneficium, 62, 67.
Bifang, primitive landholding, 9.
Bill of exchange, evolution of, 261 ff.
Blast furnace, 304.
Bookkeeping, 224 f.; of Roman bankers, 256; balance, 275, 282.
Breweries, brewing-compulsion (forerunner of factory), 166 f.
Broker, brokerage, medieval, 214, 218.
Buddhism, relation to guilds and castes, 231; type of Hindu prophecy, monk vs. mass ethics, 363 ff.; in Tibet, 365.

Communism, agrarian, 3 ff., 24. See Agrarian organization, and various countries.
Cadets, Russian, land policy, 19.
Campagna, Roman, land division, 6; latifundia of, 84.
Campsores, medieval money changers, 258.
Capital, conflict of export and mercantile, 156; see Investment, Capitalism. C. accounting, in the commenda, 206 f.
Capitalism, aspects, presuppositions and history, Part IV passim (see Table of Contents). Germs in pre-capitalistic age, see Commenda, Domestic System, Factory, Guilds, Mining, Shop industry. Stages in development of, C., 302-3; summary and analysis of character and causes, 312-14; diverse forms in ancient vs. modern times, 334 ff.; spirit of and its development, 352-69 (Chap. XXX); causes, summary, 352-4; primitive traditionalism, 354 f., can- not be overcome by economic interest alone, 355 f.; internal and external ethics, 356; development in India, 356 f.; antipathy of older Christian ethic to C., 357 f.; position of Jews in Christendom, 358 ff.; Judaism, hostility to magic, 360 f.; Hindu vs. Jewish-Christian prophecy, 362 ff.; asceticism and rationality, 364 f.; class vs. mass ethics, in India, 362, in Catholicism, 364, 365; significance of the Reformation, disappearance of ethical dualism, 365 ff.; American sects, 366 f.; Puritanism and the calling, 367, effectiveness in producing capitalistic individuals, 368; Renaissance vs. Reformation attitude toward science, 368; world-outlook left by decay of religiosity, 368 f. See also Accounting, Computation, Rationality, Labor, Technology.
Capitano del popolo, 234.
Capitulare de villis, 67.
Captives, originally slaughtered, later enslaved, 52.
Caravans, Caravan trade, 199, 208, 210.
Caravansary, 213.
Carthage, money in, 326 f., 242.
Caste, and marriage (India), 35; C. relations of whites and blacks in U. S. A., 83 f.; development from ethничal relations (India), 123 f.; relation to guilds, 136 f.; prevents domestic system, 161; prevents factory development, 175 f. See India.
Catholicism. See Asceticism. Capitalism, Christianity, Church.
Caursines, 217; in medieval banking, 258, 359.
Cattle loan, 268.
Cavalier loan, of Leopold I, 282 f.
Celts, primitive economic system of, 16.
Centuria fabrum, 136.
INDEX

Champagne, fairs of, 220 ff. See Commerce.

Chieftain, role in genesis of feudalism, 51.

Chieftain trade, regulation and monopolization, 55; gives rise to town nobility, 55; disintegration of in ancient states, 58 ff.

China, early agrarian organization, 22; clan economy, 22, 45; abolition of feudalism, 95; oikos craft work, 125; guilds, 136 f., 161; clans an obstacle to growth of factories, 176; prevalence of shop industry, 176; development of mercantile guild out of tribal trade, 230, 231; weights and measures and money, 231, 242, 250; banking, 254, 259, 265 f.; citizenship idea absent, 316; cities in western sense absent, 318; army organization, 320 f.; administration contrasted with rational state, 338 f., 343; economic policy of state, 344; geographical obstacles to economic development, 354; rational prophecy absent, 362.

Christianity, and slavery, 83, 300 f.; growth of C. in cities, 317; Pentecostal miracle, fellowship with non-Jews, relation to citizenship and city growth, 322 f.; role in economic history, a plebeian religion, 363 ff.; reduces sway of magic, largely by ethical not ceremonial means, 363 f.; partial dissolution of primitive ethical dualism under Catholicism, 365; dropping of consititia evangelica by Protestantism, decay of asceticism, 365 ff.; Protestantism, Puritanism and the concept of the calling, 366 ff.

Church, role in trade of fairs, 221 f.; policy regarding interest taking, 269 ff.

Ciompi, 327.

City, role in development of rational administration, 279, 282 f.

City and citizenship, analysis and evolution of, 316-337 (Chap. XXVIII); peculiar to the occident, 313; meaning of city, 315; contributions to culture, 316 ff.; reasons for absence in the orient, defense, 320 f., magic 322 f.; geographical distinctions in the occident, 323 ff., in antiquity vs. middle ages, 323-31; south vs. north Europe, 331-3; relation to capitalism, 333-7; submergence of the city in the state, 336 f. See also Town.

Clavis, in Champagne fairs, 221.

Clan, composition and property relations, 27; evolution, 43 ff.; meaning of word, 43; forms, 43 ff.; in Athens, 44; relation to land holding, 44; position of elder, 44; later history, west vs. east, 44 f.; disintegration in west, religious and political forces, 45 f.; agniclue clan and patriarchate, 47 ff.; female clan and free marriage, 49.

Clan economy in China, 22, 45 (see also China).

Class relations in ancient vs. medieval cities, 328 ff.

Coal, in middle ages, 190 f., 304 ff.; use for smelting iron, 304 ff.

Coinage, technique, 242, 247, 250 (see also Money); C. and banking, 254, 258, 265 f.

Colonial policy, 298-301 (Chap. XXVI).

Colonial proprietorship, 61.

Colonies, slavery in, 299 ff.

Colonizing companies, role in evolution of capitalism, 281 f.

Colons, colonate, 54.

Commandite, 229.

Commenda, 206; and capital accounting, 225 ff.; in S. vs. N. Europe, 229; C. and interest on money, 269.
INDEX

Commendation, 53, 63.
Commence, beginnings and early development, 195-8 (Chap. XIV); originally between ethnic groups, 195; forms, 195 ff.; caste and, 195 f.; outcast peoples (Jews), 196; seigniorial trade, 196 f.; gift trade, 197; trade of princes, 198; transportation, 199-201 (Chap. XV); forms of organization, 202-222 (Chap. XVI); the alien trader, 202-15; earliest times, 202; antiquity, 203 ff.; volume of C. in middle ages, 203, finance, 205 f.; volume of land trade, 209 f.; legal arrangements, 212 ff.; resident merchant, 215 ff., struggles, 216 ff.; the fairs, 220 ff.; forms of enterprise, 223 ff. (Chap. XVII); computation and accounting, 223 ff.; the commendam, 225 f.; separation of household and business, 228 ff.; S. vs. N. Europe, 228 f. See also Guilds, mercantile, Money.

Commercialization of life, relation to capitalism, 277 f.
Commission trading, 292 f.
Common pasture, in early agriculture, 5 ff. (Chap. I passim); appropriation by lords, 71 f.
Communism, agrarian, theory of, 3, 24; of fiscal origin, see China, India, Russia.
Communalization of work, two types, 39.
Compania communis (Venice), 232.
Compass, nautical, 200 f.
Compulsion, see Mills, Breweries (Factory forerunners), Banalités.
Computation, 223 ff.
Concubinage, 34.
Consignment trading, succeeds the fair, 293.
Constitutum usus, 206.
Corpo della compagnia, 228.

Cottager in primitive Agr. village, 9.
Cotton, divergent effects of industry in Eng. and U. S.A., 82; decisive role in development of capitalism in Eng., 303 ff.
Cowry shell money, 239.
Craftsmen, wandering, and Christianity, 137.
Craft work, defined, 116. (See Guilds). Developed by oikos system in ancient east, 126; organization in antiquity, 126-30; in medieval Europe, 130-34.
Crises, speculative, 286-91 (Chap. XXIV); Mississippi Company, 287 f.; South Sea Company, 288 f.; later history of C., 290 f.; and socialism, 290 f.; speculation and C., 294.
Croatia, see South Slavs.
Curia, 208. See Church.
Custodes nudinorum, in Champagne fairs, 221.
Cyrenaica, chieftain trade, 55.
Cyyvar, in Scotch husbandry, 15.

Dare ad proficuum de mari, 209.
Debt, public, relation to commercialization and capitalism, 279 ff., 286 f.
Demesne farming, absent in orient, 60, 73.
Demiurgical labor, in India, 22.
Democracy in ancient, vs. medieval cities, 324 ff.; of ancient city a political guild, 331.
Demos (δῆμος), 97, 324, 328.
Dependence, personal, result of conquest, exploited communally in Sparta, 52; result of commendation, 53, of land settlement, 53; servility to prince under irrigation culture, 57.
Domestic system (putting-out system), 118; displaces guilds, 153-161 (Chap. XI); appearance of in guilds, 142; course of development, 153 ff.; in tex-
tile industry, 155 ff.; growth alongside guild industry, 158 f.; stages, 159 f.; basis of permanence the unimportance of fixed capital, 160; later stages confined to west, 160; limited development with free workers outside Europe, 160 f.; not displaced by early factories, 173.


deschaina, Indian trading sect, 196, 232.

Duc-duc, 40.

Dues and fees, feudal, 73.

Dutch East India Company, agrarian system, 21 f.; organization, 281 f.

Egypt, disintegration of clan by political forces, 46; chieftain trade, 55; irrigation culture, 56 f.; officialdom of state, 57; öla, 57; grain banks, 58; craft work for the state, 125; early shipping, 202; monetary history, 244; banking, 254, 257; law prohibiting interest, 267 f.

E. 135.

Εμποροι, 203.

Enclosure of land, in Germany, 14; in England, see Estate Economy.

Encomienda, 61.

Endogamy, 29, 35; a phenomenon of regression, 36.

England, Germanic land settlement form, 10; condition of peasantry prior to capitalism, 77 f.; effect of strong state of Normans on feudalism, 78; pastoral and cereal estates, 85 f.; no formal abolition of feudalism, 96; guild masters separate from craft work, 152, 153; guild development, contrast w. Germany, 153 f., 156-8; significance of representation of towns in Parliament, 157; guilds and early factories, 172; struggle over mining rights, 182 f.; mercantile guilds (Guild Merchant), 232 f.; separation of wholesale and retail trade, 233; monetary history, 249, 251 f.; banking history, 263-5 (see Bank of England); policy toward slavery, 300 f.; type of N. European city, 333 f.; mercantilism in, 348 f.; Church of E., economic policy, 349.

Enterprise, and capitalism, 275; forms of commercial, 223 ff. (Chap. XVIII). See Commerce.

Erbes (free-holding farmer) in Westphalia, 11; in India, 23.

Ergasterion, 119 f.; (fabrica), 162.

Estate economy, 84-92; definition, forms, 84; for stock raising, 84 f.; in England, 85 f.; in Russia, 86 f.; in Germany, 87-92; Poland and White Russia, 92. See Oikos-Economy.

Estates General (France), 75.

Ethics, internal and external, 312; rational E. peculiar to west, 312 f.; attitude of classical E. antagonistic to capitalism, 357, based on impersonality of relations, 357 f.; Roman E. characterized by caveat emptor, 357; internal vs. external E., 356; breakdown of dualism, 313, 356 ff.; dualism maintained by Jews, 350 f.

Exchange, the, as an institution, 293 f.; exch. quotations requisite for consignment trading, 293.

Exchequer, English, 283.

Exogamy, basis of, 36.

Faber (fabri), 147, 328.

Fabrica (ergasterion), workshop, universally found, 162.

Factor (Verlieger) and factor system. See Domestic System, Putting-Out System. F. under slavery, 126; rise of, 153 ff.

Factory, meaning, prerequisites and development, 162-77 (Chap. XII). See also technology
INDEX

(Chap. XXVII, pp. 302 ff.)
Definition, factory and shop, 162 f.; prerequisites, large and steady market, 163; free labor, 164; forerunners, communal mills, ovens, breweries, foundries, iron works, 165-7; early factory, ergasterion with free labor, in England, 168 f.; suppression by the state, 169; new development through labor specialization and power, 169 f.; coiners, weapon and uniform factories, 170; market, luxury demand, 170 f.; legal relations of early factories, 171 ff.; development alongside, not out of, craft work and domestic system, 173; not called forth by machines, 174; social effects of, 174 f.; why undeveloped outside W. Europe, 175 ff.; stages in England, 302 f.; recruiting of labor, 306 f.; market, 307 ff.; rationalism in labor organization, science and the state, 312 ff.

Fairs and fair trade, 220 ff. (see Commerce); other than Champagne, 222; F. displaced by consignment trading, 292; relation to the exchange, 293 f.

Family, small-family, 28; and property relations, 37 ff.; modern, of restricted scope, 111, (See Mother-right, Matriarchate, Patriarchate, Marriage.) F. as business unit, evolution into the company, 225-29.

Father-right, patriarchate, 30.

Feudalism. Chapters III, IV, V and VI, passim; see Table of Contents; also under various countries; also topics, Manor, Peasantry, Seigniorial proprietorship. Military significance of F., 52, 63 f.

Fideicommissum (trust) in Byzantine and Moslem world, England and Germany, 100.

Fiefs, money and grain, 54; land, 62.

Firma burgi, 232.

Fiscus, 67.

Flanders, putting-out system, 155; woolen industry, 155, 221. See Netherlands.

Florence, banking, 250 f.; classical guild city, 326 ff. See City and Citizenship.

Fondaco, 213 f., F. dei Tedeschi (Venice) 218.

Forest culture (vs. irrigation type), 56. Deforestation in England, and modern technological development, 304 f.

Forestalling, 140, 218.

Forging, mechanical, 304.

Foundries, relation to artillery, forerunner of factory, 167.

Freedom and unfreedom of persons under feudalism, 66 ff.; effacement of distinction, 66. See Dependence, Peasantry, Slavery.

France, condition of peasantry prior to capitalism, 74 f.; emancipation of serfs, 12th and 13th centuries, 74; peasant unions, 74; evolution of nobility into courtiers, 74; sweeping away of feudalism at the Revolution with expropriation of lords, 99 f.; early factories (manufactures royales) 171 f., 309 ff.; struggle over mining rights, 182; monetary history, 250, 252; John Law speculation, 286 ff.; economic policy of the state (Colbert), 349.

Fraternitates, and guilds, 146.

“Freed mountain” (Germany, mining), 183.

Genoa, trading nobility, 55; Banca di San Giorgio, 259, 261.

Geographical factors in Mediterranean economic development, contrast with China and India, 354.
German settlement form, character and area, 3 ff.; spread and modification, 10 f.; origin, 12; disintegration, 13 f.

Germany, land enclosures, 14; condition of peasantry prior to capitalism, 75-77; in southwest, 75 f.; in northwest, 75 f.; in east, 77; development of estates in post-medieval period, east vs. west, 87 f.; position of peasantry in the east, 89 f.; Peasants' War, 89; gradual abolition of feudalism after Wars of Liberation, in the west, 99 f.; in the east, 100-106; guild development, contrast w. England and France, 153, 156-8; G. out of main stream of capitalistic development, 158; early factories on municipal soil, 178; mining, in the middle ages, 181 ff., 184 ff.; mercantile guilds, 233 f.; monetary history, 249, 250, 252; delay in developing capitalism, 304.

Gift trade, 197.

Gold. See Money, Coinage, Mining.

Goldsmith bankers (England), 263 f.

Grain banks (Egypt), 58.

Greece, marriage by exchange of wives, 42; abolition of feudal tenure (Athens), 96 f.; primitive shipping, 202; early history of money, 241 f.; banking, 254, 257. See Antiquity.

Guilds, craft. Forms and policies, 136-143 (Chap. IX); Origin and development, struggles, 144-152 (Chap. X); disintegration, displacement by domestic system, 153-161 (Chap. XI); definition, 136; unfree G. in antiquity, 136; ritualistic, 137; free association the type in the west, 137 ff.; beginnings in antiquity, 137; G. in Islam, 138; internal policy, livelihood in interest of equal opportunity, 139 f.; external policy monopoly policy, 142 f.; later developments, 142 f.; masterpiece, 142; limitation of marriage, 143; manorial law theory of origin, 144 f.; criticized, 145 f.; G. and fraternitates, 146; relation to territorial dominion, 146 f., to towns, 147 f.; continuity in Italy, 148; acquisition of lords' prerogatives, 148 f.; struggle to establish monopoly, 149 f.; struggle vs. competitors, 150, vs. laborers, 150 f., vs. merchants, 150 f.; between guilds, 151 f.; lines of disintegration, England vs. Germany, 153 f.; developments in the textile industry, 155 f.; later history, England, France and Germany, 156-8; displacement by domestic system, 158 f.; legal relation to early factories, 171; not displaced by factors until 19th century, 173; role of G. in growth of medieval cities, 326 ff.


Gynicum (women's house, γυναικεῖον), 125, 126, 127.

Hamlet system of land settlement, 12.

Hand-workers, in primitive agricultural village, 8. See Craft work, Liturgical labor.

Hansards, Hanseatic League, 207, 216, 232; policies, 234 f.

Hansgraf, 230.

Hide (Hufe), Hide-man (Hufner), 5, 7 f.; military theory of origin of the hide, 12.

Hieroduli (Sacerdotal prostitution), 29.

Horse, 38; and other pack animals, 199.

Hostage in medieval trade, 213, 218.
Hoe-culture, 24 f.; 37 f.
Household, House-community, structure and property relations, 26, 28 ff.; evolution of, 46 ff.; property relations in, 46 f.; development into oikos, 47, into Zadruga, 47; modern changes, 111; industry in, 122. See also Family.
Hungary, dissolution of feudalism, 101, 102; struggle over mining rights, 182.
Hypergamy (India), 35 f.

Istia (Egypt), 57, 61, 335.
Immunity (immunitas), 65 f.; failure of lords to achieve in Moslem lands, success in the west, 65 f.
India, early agrarian organization, 22 f.; sacerdotal prostitution, 32; position of clan, 45; later history of manorial system, 96; oikos craft work, 125; trading caste and caste trade, 195 f.; “Arabic” notation, 223 f.; mercantile guilds, 231; coinage, weights and measures, 232; banking, 254, 265 f.; citizenship idea absent, 316; no cities in western sense, 320 ff.; military organization, 320 f.; caste an obstacle to growth of cities, 322; economic policy of the state, beginnings killed by caste system, 344 f.; obstacles to capitalism, restrictions on gain seeking, 357; peculiarity of caste as eternal, 358 ff.; caste and capitalism, 361; character of Hindu prophecy, 382 f. See Caste, Buddhism.
Indians, American, efforts to enslave, 82.
Industry, defined, 115; forms of organization, 115 ff. (Chap. VII; see Organization); stages in development, 122 ff. (Chap. VIII; see Stages.) See also Guilds, Shop Production, Factory, Capitalism, Technology, Labor, Investment. Tribal industry, 122; I. in house community, 122.
Inheritance, collateral, a survival of clan organization, 28; I. law, England vs. France, 108; Germany, 108; fideicommissum and primogeniture results in large estates in British Isles, parts of E. Germany and former Austria-Hungary, 109.
Inst-people, 90.
Interest, 204, 206. History of prior to capitalism, 267-70 (Chap. XXI); early law of, intra-group vs. external, 267; military and religious basis of suppression within groups, 267; among Jews, in Islam, Brahminism, China, India, Rome, 268; process of breakdown of prohibition, 268 f.; evasion in Christian middle ages, 269; attitude of the Church, 260 ff.; role of the Jews, 270 f.; Protestantism and I., 271.
Inurbamento, 333.
Inventions and modern technology, 302 ff.; three lines of significance, 305 f., 311 ff.; new character in 18th century, 311; spread from art and mining to industry, 312; first rational patent law (Eng.), 312.
Investment, fixed, in industry, ownership, 120.
Iron, charcoal and coal, in relation to the modern technological development, 304 ff.
Irrigation culture, characteristic of the east, 56 ff.; relation to military organization and growth of cities, 321.
Islam, guilds in, 138; citizenship idea absent, 315.
Italy, condition of peasantry prior to capitalism, 75; early abolition of servitude, establishment of share tenancy,
INDEX 393

75; abolition of feudal tenure by city republics, 98; mercantile guilds, 233; banking, 250 ff.; beginnings of Occidental city (Venice), 319; growth, 324 (Florence), 326 ff.

Japan, prostitution, 33; feudalism, 69; abolition of feudalism in 19th century, 96; state economic policy, 344.

Jerusalem, sacerdotal prostitution, 32.

Jews, disintegration of clan organization by religious forces, 46; an outcast trading people, 196; anti-semitism in middle ages, 217; in medieval banking, 258; and interest-taking, 267 ff., 270 ff.; traces of citizenship idea in Josherim, 315; granted trading privileges in India, 344; role in Western economic development, 358-61; significance of Judaism, 359 ff.

Joint liability, of peasants in the Russian mir, 20; in the guild, 149; in early modern company development, 227 ff.; in late Rome, 335.

Josherim, germ of idea of citizenship among Jews, 316.

Journeymen, in the guild system, organize, 143; forbidden to marry, 150.

Judaism, relation of prophecy to decay of magic and growth of cities, 322 ff.; maintained ethical dualism, 350 ff.; role in development of capitalism, suppression of magic, 360, 362, 363 ff.

Judicial authority, of lords in Western feudalism important, 65 ff.

Kamerun, regulated chieftain trade, 55.

Kinship, in modern family, 28; among Indian peoples, 29.

Κλέρος, 328.

Kulak, Russian village bourgeois, 18.

Kustar (Russia), 122, 161.

Kuxe, German mining share, 186, 190.

Labor, division of between sexes, 38 ff., 116 ff., in guilds, insistence on finished product basis, 139, 154; skill absent in first specialization, 117; skill and magic, 117; demiurgical labor, 115, 124; communalf, 39 ff., 117; itinerant or wandering, 119; oikos craft work, 120, 124 ff.; supply of free labor prerequisite to factory, 164, 167 ff., 306 ff., source in England, 164, 306; position of labor in early factories, 168, 175 ff.; in medieval German mining, 183 ff.; free market for free labor essential to capitalism, 277; limitations of labor removed by steam engine, 305 ff.; labor relations and regulation in 18th century England, 307; rational organization of labor a crucial achievement of capitalism, 312. See also Craft work, Industry, Peasantry, Slavery.

Lagemorgen, land division antecedent to open field system, 12 f.

Lamani, Indian trading caste, 231 f.

Land. See Agrarian organization, Manor, Property.

Land settlement lease, 67.

Landed aristocracy, England and other countries, 110.

Law. Manorial law, 68. Roman Law and the position of the peasantry, 76, 341; English law and the peasant, 77 ff.; calculable law a requisite for capitalism, 277; Rational law, peculiar to the occident, 313; origin on the formal side in Roman law, 339; law after
the fall of the Roman Empire, rationalization of procedure, 340 ff.; formalistic vs. material law, 342; development of law and administration, 343.
Leiturgical vs. taxation principle of state organization, China, 95, Rome, 95, 130 f.; L. guilds (Rome), 136 f., 203 f., 336.
Letters, postal service, 295 f.
Levirate, 29, 42.
Lex Rhodia de iactu, 204.
Lex Salica, 147.
Licentia fodiendi, 182.
Litiera aperta, and litiera clausa, 262.
Livery companies, 153.
Living standards, ancient vs. modern, 130 f.
Lombards, in medieval finance and banking, 217, 258.
Lords, See Seigniorial proprietorship, Manor, etc. Powers in medieval towns, 147-8.
Luxury demand, relation to early capitalism, 170 f., 309 ff.

Machines, not the cause of early factories, 174; character and role, 302 ff. See Factory, Inventions, Technology.
Magic, as basis of totemic clan, 27; copulation a form of, 31; as source of seigniorial property, 54; in relation to early skilled work, 117; traditionalism, obstacle to growth of domestic system in India, China, 161; in relation to growth of cities in east vs. west, 322 ff.; intensifies primitive traditionalism, 355; role of rational prophecy in destroying, preparation of capitalism, significance of Judaism and Christianity, 300 ff.
Manor, the, 65 ff. (Chap. IV); three elements in the lord’s power, 65; “immunity,” 65; free and unfree persons, effacement of differences, 66; status and tenure, 60 f.; effects of consolidation of holdings, 68; policy of princes, 70, its economic effects, 70 ff.; dominance of rent method of exploitation in the west, 72 f.; capitalist development, 70 ff. (Chap. VI); two forms of development, 79; plantation, 79-84 (see Plantation); estate, 84-92 (see Estate); dissolution of manorial system, 92-111; possible processes of liberation, 92 f.; motives operating, internal, 93, external, town interests, 93 f.; course of events, China, 95 f., India, 96, Near East, 96, Japan, 96, Mediterranean region, Greece, 95 f., Rome, 97 f., England, 98, France, 98 f., Germany, west, 98 f., east, 99 ff., Austria, 101-3, Prussia, 103-6, Russia, 106 f., Poland, 107; influence of inheritance laws, 108; modern land tenure, in Moslem world, 108 f., in England, 109; results, landed aristocracy, England, E. Germany, 110 f.
Manorial law, manorial court, 68; M. L. theory of guild origin, 144 f., criticized, 145 ff.
Mansi ingenuiles, 67, manst serviles, 67.
Mark, common, 8; mark association, 8, 27; appropriation of mark by lords, 71.
Market, concessions, 55, 132, 214; production for, 122 ff., development of, 126-34; extension of in antiquity vs. middle ages, 131; regular mass demand prerequisite to factory, 163 f., 169 ff., 307 ff.; freedom of, aspect of capitalism, 276; character of precapitalistic limitations, 276 f.; war demand, 307 f.; luxury demand,
INDEX

308 f.; these two demands outside Europe, 308 ff.

Marriage, socialistic theory of evolution of M. and family, 28 ff.; group M. 29; by capture, 30, 36, 39; contractual, 30; M. and property, 30; temporary, 33; legitimate, 36 ff., 39; polyandry and polygamy, 42; M. by exchange of sisters, 42; with dowry and without, 50. See also Clan, Endogamy, Exogamy, Family.

Masterpiece, guild, 142.

Matriarchate, 30, 37, 39.

Meat, use of, 38.

Medicine man, first profession, 117. See Magic.

Mediterranean Sea, in economic development, 354.

Men's house, 39 ff.

Mercator (equivalent to citizen), 147; as resident merchant, 215.


Mercies, 135.

Merchant, dominance of production by, 154, 156; in export trade, 155. See Commerce, Guilds, mercantile.

Merchant Adventurers, the, 216, 233.

Metals, as money, 241 ff.; precious, not primary cause of capitalism, 352 f. See Mining, Money.

Middle Ages, oikos craft work, 125; obstacles to development of factory industry, 177; mining, 181 ff.; shipping, 204 ff.; roads, 209; monetary problems and policies, 246 ff.; banking, 258 ff.; interest on money and ideas regarding, 269-71; compared with antiquity as to growth of cities, 323 ff. See topics and countries.

Miles, in Champagne fairs, 221.

Military demand, and capitalism, 354. See Factory.

Military organization, relation to growth of cities, east vs. west, 320 f., 324 f., 328 f., 331 f.

See also Interest, Agrarian organization, Peasant protection, Seignorial proprietorship.

Milking, 24 (Chap. I, note 6), 38.

Mills, mill-compulsion, 165 f.

Mining, source of impulse to mechanization, 177, 312. History of prior to capitalism, 162-191 (Chap. XIII); methods, primitive and early, 178; legal relations, 178 f.; pars fundi vs. regale, 179; Greco-Roman conditions, 179 f.; middle ages, 180 ff.; struggle of crown and lords, Germany, Hungary, France, England, 181 ff.; organization, epochs, 183 ff.; differentiation in personnel, 187 ff.; role of capital, 187 ff.; analogy to guild history, 189 f.; smelters and ore dealers, 190; coal in the middle ages, 190 f.; union of coal and iron, 191.

Mir (Russia), 17 ff.; origin, 19; destruction, 18.

μυστικός, 135.

Mississippi Company, 287 ff.

Mohammedanism, and prostitution, 30; and sexual freedom, 33.

Money, and Chinese guilds, 231; nature and history, 236-53 (Chap. XIX); father of private property, 236; origin, 236; functions and order of their appearance, 236 ff.; early forms, 238 ff.; relation and value of forms, 239 ff.; metals and coinage, 241 ff.; technique of coinage 242 f.; standards,
243 ff.; value of gold and silver, 244; M. in middle ages, 246 ff.; effects of influx of metals in 16th century, 248 ff., 352 f.; coinage defects cause use of bank money, 250 f.; policy of modern nations, 251 ff.

Money economy, princely, 58 f.
Monopoly policy of princes, role in evolution of rational administration, 284 f.

Montes pietatis, 270.
Morgen (Acre), 6.
Mother-law, Mother-right, 29 f.
See Matriarcbate.

Nadyel, in Russian land system, 17 ff.
Nautical instruments, 200 f.
Naviculnrii, 136.
Navigation, 200 f.
Near east, feudalism in, 96.

Negotiable paper and capitalism, 278, 279 f. See Bill of Exchange, Speculation.

Negotiator, medieval trader, 126, 197.
Netherlands, early factories, 172. See Flanders.
News service, newspapers, 294 ff.

Nezi (peon), 54.

Norway, spread of Germanic settlement system to, 10; failure of feudalism to develop, 69.

Obsequium, 63.
Occident, capitalistic development peculiar to, 312; city and citizenship peculiar to, 318, reasons, 320 ff.; development of city and citizenship, 319-23; economic policy in town, Church and state, 345 ff.

"Oddal" peasantry (Norway), 69.
Oikos-economy, 48, 58, 124 f., 131, 146, 162, 185. See Estate economy.

"Older men" in English guilds, 153.

Open field (Gewann) in Agr. village, 5.

Organization, forms of in industry, 115-21 (Chap. VII); house-community and village, 115; production for sale, 116; communal and invitation work, 118; domestic or putting-out system, 118 f.; relation to place of work, 119; ownership of fixed investment, 120 f. See also Agrarian system, Commerce, Military organization.

Orgy, 28 ff.

Orient, army organization in relation to political constitution 321; basis in irrigation, 321 f.; role of magic, 322 f. See Irrigation-culture, Babylon, China, Egypt, India, Japan.

Origo (Rome), 336.

Ovens, oven-compulsion, 166.

Overlordship, of land and person, 27. See Guild, Manor, Market, Seigniorial proprietorship, Town.


Pars fundi (mining), 179.

Parsees, in Indian trade, 232.

Pasture, common, 5, 11, 16; appropriation of by lords, 71, 76; enclosures, 85. See Manor.
Patriarchate, 30, 37, 41 ff., 45 ff.; disintegration of, 48 ff.

Peasantry, origin of dependent position, 13 ff.; protection by princes, 70, 76, 90; absent in Eng., 164; relation of Roman law to position of, 71; attachment to soil, 71; rights of in land, 71; position of before entrance of capitalism, 74 ff. (Chap. V); in France (unions), 74 f., Italy, 75, Germany, 75-77, England, 77 f. See Agrarian system, and various countries.

Peasant Wars, in Germany, 72, 89.

Peddling trade, 195, 216.
INDEX 397

Peons (nexti), 54.
Persia, persistence of feudalism, 96.
Persian Empire, money in, 237, 242.
Phenicians, primitive shipping, 202; commerce non-monetary, 242.
Piracy, 199, 208.
Plantation economy, 79-84; definition, 79; semi-plantation, 79, in S. Am. and New Eng., 79 f.; two classical developments of P. E., Carthage-Rome and U. S. A., 80; problem of slave labor, 80, of slave supply, 81 f., of land supply, 82 f.; abolition of slavery, 83 f.
Plow, primitive, in general vs. in Germany, 5 f.
Plow association (Scotland), 15 f.
Poland, estate economy, 92; dissolution of feudalism, 107 f.
Polyandry, and polygamy, 42.
Popolo grasso, 327.
Population growth in west and in China, not the cause of capitalism, 352.
Postal service, 255 f.
Power, relation to early factories, 169. See Technology.
Precaria, 67.
Price revolution of 16th and 17th centuries, 311. See also Money.
Price work, 118, 134 f.
Proletarius, proletariat, 328.
Promiscuity, in socialistic theory of marriage history, 29 f.
Property systems and social groups, 26-50 (Chap. II); forms of appropriation, 26 ff.; forms of groupings, 26 f.; house community and clan, socialistic theory of marriage and property, 28-37; evolution of the family, survey of primitivistic economic life and institutions, forms of family and of property, 37-43; the clan and its property relationships, 43-46; the house-community and its property relationships, 46-50; property in land, established by dissolution of feudalism, 111; in position of guild master, 143; money the father of P., 263; P. in means of production, aspect of capitalism, 276. See Communism, Investment.
Prophecy, and disruption of the clan, 45; relation to capitalism, 362 ff.
Prostitution, 30 ff.; sacerdotal, 31 ff.; status of contractual, 31; struggle of religious against, 32 f.; P. in middle ages, 33.
Protestantism, and interest taking, 271; relation to growth of capitalism, 365 ff.
Proxenia, in medieval trade, 213.
Prussia, dissolution of feudalism with compromise of peasant interests, 103-6.
Puritans, and corn-law repeal, 86; attitude toward labor and economic policy, 349, 351. See also Bank of England, Protestantism.
Putting out system (domestic system), 118, 153 ff.
Quadrant, nautical, 201.
Quakers, and slavery, 83, 300.
Railways, 295 ff.
Rationality and capitalism, 275; R. organization of labor peculiar to capitalism, 312; rational state, 338 ff. (see Law, State); rational ethic, 312 f.; commerce first field of R., 223; R. in technology and science, 313 ff.; in ethics and conduct of life, 354 ff.; process of development, 356 ff. See Capitalism.
"Real dependency," 68.
Reformation. See Protestantism.
Regale, mining, 179 ff.
Regulated company, 281.
Religion, and prostitution, 32 ff.;
a product of the city, 317;
role in development of cities,
322; R. and capitalism. See Capitalism. See also Buddhism,
Christianity, Islam, Judaism, Magic.
Reprisal, in medieval trade, 212.
Resident trader, 215 ff. See Commerce.
Richerzhefe (Cologne), 234.
Risk, in early factories, 168;
shipping R., in antiquity, 204,
in middle ages, 205, 206.
Roads, in primitive Germanic agrarian organization, 4, 14,
Roman, medieval, 209; modern development, 296 f.
Rolling of iron, 304.
Rolling holdings (walzende Ack-
er), 9.
Rome, types of seigniorial relations, 53; disintegration of national economy by delegation,
60 f.; preparation for feudalism, 63; abolition of feudal tenure, 97; re-establish-
ment under Empire, 98; primitive shipping, 203 f.; monetary history, 242, 244-46; banking,
254, 256, 258; rational capitalism in, 335, displaced by leiturgi-
gical organization, 336. See also Campagna.
Roman law, relation to peasant rights, 71; role in development of rational law and capitalism, 339 ff., 341 ff.
Runridge system, in Scotch husbandry, 15.
Russia, agrarian system, 17 ff.;
stratification of peasantry, 19;
harshness of serfdom, its ori-
gin, 20; feudal system of, 63;
late establishment of serfdom,
80 f.; liberation of peasants after Crimean War, 106 f.; es-
tablishment of serfdom to the mir, 20, 107; failure of fac-
tories with unfree workers,
129; failure of free guilds to develop, 147.
Sachsenspiegel, 71.
Salvum in terra, 269.
Sample trading, 292 f.
Science, its displacement of tradi-
tion a factor in capitalist development, 306; vs. philos-
ophy, an occidental achieve-
ment, 313; a product of the city, 316 f.; attitude of Cathol-
icism and Protestantism to-
ward, 368. See Rationality, Technology.
Scotland, agrarian system, 15 f.;
stock-raising estates, 84 f.
Sea loan, 205.
Seigniorial proprietorship and feudalism, 51 ff. (Ch. III);
chieftainship as source of differ-
entiation in wealth, 51;
bearings of military specialization, 52; conquest and subju-
gation, 52 f.; voluntary sub-
mission, commendation, 53;
feudal land settlement, 53; ex-
plotation of seigniorial land,
53 f.; magic, 54; trade, 54;
fiscal sources, 56 ff.; colonial proprietorship, 61; enfeoffment
and feudalism, fief and bene-
fice, 62. Seigniorial power,
three elements, 65. Seigniorial
trade, 196 f.
Sendev, 229.
Serfdom. See Peasant, and va-
rious countries.
Serfs de corps, serfs de main-
morte (France), 74.
Servia, see South Slavs.
Sex, freedom, 33, division of labor between the sexes, 38 ff.;
differentiation of money be-
tween sexes, 238.
Sharing, right of, in guilds, 140;
among merchants, 218 f.
Shekel, 241.
INDEX

Shipping (see Commerce) Relation to war and piracy, 202; inland S. in middle ages, 211 f.; growth of to 18th century, 308.


Silver, see Coinage, Mining, Money.

Simbarius, sensarius, sensal, 215.

Slavery, in middle ages, 60 ff., 69; in plantation economy, 80 ff., Rome, 81, southern states of U. S. A., 82, 83 f.; problem of supply, 81, 82; of management, 83; in ergasterion, 120; slaves as craft workers in antiquity, 125-30; problems of the system, 126 ff.; slaves exploited by rent charges, 129 ff.; reasons for progress of liberation in medieval manors and towns, 130-34; slavery an obstacle to development of factory in antiquity, 176 f.; mine slaves in antiquity, 180; slavery in colonies, 299 ff., abolition of slavery, role of Christian sects and of various nations, 300 f. See Christianity, Quakers.

Smelting, in middle ages, 190.

Socage district (Bannbezirk), 68. S. rights (banalités, Bannrecht), 72.

Social groupings in relation to economic technique, 38 (and Chap. II passim).

Socialism, theory of marriage and family evolution, 28 ff., criticism, 34 ff.; S. and crises, 290 f.

Societas maris, 205.

Sonderbund, 233.

South America, stock-raising estates on pampas of, 84.

South Sea Company, 288 ff.

South Slavs, economic system of, 11 ff. See Zadruja.

Spain, decay of early factories, 175.

Sparta, communal exploitation of subject population, 52.

Spear land, 26, 42.

Specialization, between ethnic groups, 123; geographical, 123, 124; in village and manor, 124 f. See Stages in development of industry.

Speculation, and capitalism, 278; development of, 294 f.; S. and early crises, 294; speculative trade and news service, 294 f. See Crises.

Stages, in economic evolution, 37 f.; in development of industry, 122 ff. (Chap. VIII); primitive tribal and house industry, 122 f.; caste, 123 f.; local specialization, 123, 124; specialization on the manor, 124, on an estate (antiquity), 124 f., in a political unit (Egypt), 125 f.; production for a market, with unfree labor, 126 ff.; by slaves subject to rent charges, 129 f.; development of free craft work in medieval Europe, 130-4.

Staple compulsion, 219.

State, the, absorbs the city in modern west, 336 f.; alliance with capital, 337. The rational state, meaning and development, 338-51 (Chap. XXIX); peculiar to the west, 338; contrast with China, 338 f.; rational law and Roman law, 339 ff.; economic policy of S., 343-47; a modern phenomenon, 343; why absent in the east, in antiquity and the middle ages, 344 f.; germs of protectionism, 346 f.; mercantilism (q.v.) 347-51.

Steam engine, 302, 305 ff.

Steel-yard, Hanseatic branch in London, 230.
INDEX

St. Gothard Pass, trade via, 209.
Strip system of dividing land, relation to form of plow, 5 ff.
Street rights, street compulsion (medieval trade), 219.
Subsistence policy, absent in ancient cities, 323. See Guilds.
Syrians, in medieval finance, 217.

Tael (China), 242, 250.
Tax farming, 58 ff, 338, 359; in India, 59; in China, 59; delegation of tax collection to soldiers (Arabia), 59; tax exemption of nobility, 70; Taxation vs. Liturgical state, 95, 344; T. collection by Eng. guilds, 232; public finance in middle ages, 282.
Technology, rational, a requisite of capitalism, 277; development of modern, and relation to capitalism, 302-315 (Chap. XXVII); England as the type, 302 ff. (see under Factory).
See also Inventions.
Temple banks, 256 ff.
Terra indominicata, terra salica, 67.
Textiles, main seat of domestic system, 155 ff.
Thesaurus (money as a store of wealth), 237 ff.
Three-field agriculture, 6 ff.
Tibet, asceticism and economic achievement, 364 ff.
Tokens as money in primitive society, 239.
Totemic clan, 27; totemism and the men's house, 39.
Towns, medieval, beginnings as speculative ventures of princes, 132; role in development of freedom "town air liberates" 132, 329; encouragement by princes in opposition to lords, 133; status of inhabitants, 133 ff.; role in development of free craftsmen, 146; mixed status of population, 147; power of lords, 148 f.; town regulations against guilds, 149; political position of towns in Eng. vs. Germany, 157; town and guild policy, 234, 327 ff. See City, Guilds.
Trade (See Commerce). Tribal, 195; trading caste, 195 f.; wholesale and retail trade in middle ages, 215 ff., in England, 233; development of wholesale trade, 292-97 (Chap. XXV); separation from retail trade in 18th century, 292; auction and consignment trading replace the fair, 292; sample trading, 292 f.; the fair and the exchange, 293 f.; speculation, 294; news service and newspaper, 294 ff.; development of transportation, roads, 296 f.; trade opportunities, essential role in growth of western cities, 323.
Traditionalism, original basis of all ethics, 354 ff.; intensification through economic interest and magic, 355. Breakdown, 355 ff. See Capitalistic spirit, Magic, Prophecy.
Transportation, technical requisites for, 199-201 (Chap. XV); primitive T., 199 f.; on land, 199, by sea, 199 f.; medieval shipping, 200 f. See also Commerce, Railways, Roads, Shipping, Trade.
Trip-hammer, early use, 304.
Tulip craze (Holland), 286.
Turkey, feudalism of, 62, (Near (East)), 96.

Ukraine, land system, 17.
United States of America, plantation system and slavery, 80, 82-84; caste relations and debt-slavery as aftermath, 84; (colonies) attempt to enslave Indians fails, importation of Negroes, 199; indentured serv-
ants, 199; Californian gold discoveries, 252; religious denominations and economic life, 366.

Vassal vs. freeman, 67.
Vengeance, duty of clan, 27.
Venice, trading nobility, 55; form of guild, 232; Rialto bank, 251; prototype of occidental city, 319 ff.
Victrarius, 208.
Village, primitive agricultural, sketch of Germanic, 4; description, 5 ff. See Agrarian organization, India, Russia.
Villains, See England, Peasants. Villicus, villification system, 73, 75.

Wage work vs. price work, 118, 119, 134 ff.
Wander years, in guild system, peculiar to Germany, 143.

Wandering trade, 122.
War, demand for military goods, relation to early capitalism, 170, 307 ff.
War loans, a modern phenomenon, 280.
Wardship, status of early mediaval craftsmen, 147 ff.; guild struggles against, 149.
Wedderleginge, 229.
Wespahalia, settlement form, 11.
White Russia, land system, 17; estate economy, 92.
Wild field grass husbandry, 16.
Woolen industry in development of capitalism, 303.

Zadruga, of South Slavs, 12, 47.